Contents

0.1 Alphabetical Index 2
1.1 Maintenance 21
1.2 USA Warranty 86
2.1 Safety First 122
3.1 Controls and Equipment 202
3.2 Tips and Advice 320
3.3 Technical Data 420
3.4 Premium Sound System 434

Volkswagen

Owner's Manual



0.1 Alphabetical Index

Jetta

Model year 2006

Key Words

Enclosed you'll find an extensive and comprehensive alphabetcial index of following booklets: Safety First, Controls and Equipment, Tips and Advice and Technical Data.

Each booklet has a two-digit number in the lower right corner. This number will help you to find a booklet and return a booklet to its correct location if you remove it from the Owner`s Literature binder.

This index will help you to find information quickly by using key words. ◀

Exampleofakeyword

Battery 3.2: 24, 3.1: 35

You will find information about battery in booklet 3.2 on page 24 and booklet 3.1 on page 35. ◀

Alphabetical index

A

ABS 3.2: 3
  Warning light 3.1: 27
Accessories
  What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? 3.2: 27
Acoustic signal 2.1: 14
Acoustic warning 3.1: 93
Activating the switchable locking feature 2.1: 62
Additional storage compartment 3.1: 73
Address of NHTSA 2.1: 12, 3.2: 90
Address of Transport Canada 3.2: 81
Adjusting safety belt height 2.1: 24
Adjusting the compass variance zone 3.1: 19
Advanced Airbag System 2.1: 31
  Airbag deployment zone 2.1: 37
  How the components work together 2.1: 35
Advanced Airbag System components 2.1: 34 1
Advanced front airbag system: 2.1 32
After changing a wheel 3.2: 67
Air conditioning
  Condensation 3.1: 89
  Important notes 3.1: 88
  Malfunctions 3.1: 88
  Unpleasant odor 3.1: 89
Air conditioning system 3.1: 81
  Climatronic 3.1: 84
Air recirculation mode
  2C-Climatronic 3.1: 83, 88
Airbag deployment zone 2.1: 37
Airbag system 2.1: 27
  Care 2.1: 42
  Components (front airbags) 2.1: 34
  Components (side airbags) 2.1: 44
  Components (side curtain protection™ airbag) 2.1: 49
  Curtain airbags 2.1: 48
  Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 2.1: 29
  Disposal 2.1: 42
  Front airbags 2.1: 31
  How it works? 2.1: 46, 49
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 2.1: 34, 44, 49
  Importance of sitting properly 2.1: 27
  Importance of wearing safety belts 2.1: 27
  Important things to know 2.1: 27
  Indicator light 2.1: 39
  Monitoring : 2.1 39
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 2.1: 39
  Repairs 2.1: 42
  Side airbags 2.1: 44
  When must the system be inspected? 2.1: 39
  Where are my airbags located? 2.1: 31, 44, 48
Alarm system 3.1: 36
  Switching off 3.1: 36
Alcantara
  Cleaning 3.2: 25
Alloy wheels
  Cleaning 3.2: 21
Anti-freeze 3.2: 43
Anti-lock brake system
  Warning light 3.1: 27
  What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 3.2: 3
Anti-Slip Regulation 3.1: 92
Anti-theft alarm system 3.1: 36
  Switching off 3.1: 36
Anti-theft wheel bolts 3.2: 71
Armrest
  Front center armrest 3.1: 66
  Storage compartment 3.1: 70
ASR 3.1: 92
Auto Safety Hotline 2.1: 12
Auto Safety Hotline 3.2: 90

Automatic belt retractor 2.1: 19
Automatic car washes 3.2: 17
Automatic mode
Climatronic 3.1: 85
Automatic switch-off of electrical components 3.1: 93
Automatic transmission
Direct shift gearbox 3.1: 98
Safety interlock for ignition key 3.1: 94
Selector lever lock 3.1: 99
Tiptronic 3.1: 98
Automatic transmission with Tiptronic 3.1: 101
Average fuel consumption 3.1: 9
Average speed 3.1: 9

B

Background lighting 3.1: 521
BAS 3.2: 2
Battery
Charging 3.2: 50
How often should I replace my engine battery? 3.2: 50
Important information to know before disconnect the battery 3.2: 49
Replacing 3.2: 50
What you must do after reconnect the battery 3.2: 49
Winter conditions 3.2: 49, 50
Battery acid level
Checking 3.2: 50
Before driving 2.1: 3
Belt pretensioner
Disposal 2.1: 26
Service 2.1: 26
Bonnet 3.2: 36
Booster seats 2.1: 59
Brake assist system 3.2: 2
Brake booster 3.2: 2
Brake fluid
Changing 3.2: 48
How often should the brake fluid be changed? 3.2: 47
Warning light 3.1: 11
What is the correct brake fluid level? . 3.2: 47
What kind of brake fluid should I use? 3.2: 48
Brake pad
Warning message 3.1: 11
Brake pad wear indicator
Warning light 3.1: 26
Brake pads 3.2: 8
Brake servo 3.2: 8
Brake system
Warning light 3.1: 28
Brake system 3.2: 47
Brakes 3.2: 8
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 3.2: 8
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 3.2: 3
Braking distance 3.2: 8
Break-in period
Engine 3.2: 7
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? 3.2: 7
Breaking in
Brake pads 3.2: 7
Tires 3.2: 7
Breaking in tires 3.2: 7
Bulb change 3.2: 81
Bulb defective
Warning light 3.1: 24
Bumper
Cleaning 3.2: 18
Bumper cover
Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb 3.1: 105
Buzzer 3.1: 50, 93

C

Calibrating the compass 3.1: 18
California Proposition 65 Warning 3.2: 34, 49
Car washes 3.2: 17
Catalytic converter 3.2: 10
CB radio 3.2: 29
Cell phone 3.2: 29
Cellular phone 3.2: 29
Central locking
Individual unlocking 3.1: 34
Central locking button 3.1: 34
Central locking system 3.1: 34
Changing a bulb 3.2: 81
Changing a wheel 3.2: 73

Changing brake pads 3.2: 7
Changing units 3.1: 16
Changing windshield wiper blades 3.2: 46
Chassis 3.2: 22
Checking engine oil level 3.2: 39
Child restraint on the front seat 2.1: 29
Child safety 2.1: 51
Child safety locks 3.1: 35
Child seats 2.1: 51
  Booster seats 2.1: 59
  Convertible child seats 2.1: 57
  Infant seats 2.1: 56
  Lower anchorages 2.1: 67
  Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 2.1: 68
  On the front passenger seat 2.1: 29
  Safety instructions 2.1: 54
  Tether anchors 2.1: 65
  Tether strap 2.1: 65
Chrome
  Cleaning 3.2: 21
Cleaning
  Alloy wheels 3.2: 21
  Automatic car wash 3.2: 17
  Bumper 3.2: 18
  chassis 3.2: 22
  Cloth seat covers 3.2: 23
  Electronic parking assistance sensors 3.1: 106
  Engine compartment 3.2: 22
  Exterior 3.2: 17
  Fabric trim 3.2: 23
  Instrument panel 3.2: 23
  Leather 3.2: 23
  Outside mirrors 3.2: 19
  Plastic parts 3.2: 23
  Safety belts 3.2: 26
  Washing the vehicle 3.2: 17
  Windows 3.2: 19
  Windshield 3.2: 19
  Windshield wiper blades 3.2: 20
  Wooden trim 3.2: 23
Cleaning and protection 3.2: 16
Climatic 3.1: 82
  Malfunctions 3.1: 88
Climatronic
  Important notes 3.1: 88
  Malfunctions 3.1: 88
Clock 3.1: 5
Closing
  Rear lid 3.1: 38
Cloth seat covers
  Cleaning 3.2: 23
Clothes hook 3.1: 71
Code number
  For anti-theft wheel bolts 3.2: 67
Coming home function 3.1: 47
Compass
  Adjusting 3.1: 19
  Calibrating 3.1: 18
Compass function 3.1: 12
Condensation 3.1: 89
Controls
  Power windows 3.1: 39
Convenience closing 3.1: 41, 43
Convenience menu 3.1: 17
Convenience opening 3.1: 41
Convenience operation (electric windows) 3.1: 18
Convertible child seats 2.1: 57
Coolant
  Warning light 3.1: 11
Coolant 3.2: 43
  Level 3.2: 44
  Loss 3.2: 44
Coolant level
  Warning 3.1: 24
Coolant temperature
  Gauge 3.1: 6
  Warning 3.1: 24
Cooling the glove compartment 3.1: 69
Crash recorders 3.2: 6
Cruise control 3.1: 107
  Warning light 3.1: 29
Cup holders
  In the rear armrest 3.1: 72
Cup holders in the center console 3.1: 72
Current fuel consumption 3.1: 9
Curtain airbags 2.1: 48
Customer CARE Center 2.1: 27

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 2.1: 29
Day time running lights
  Warning light 3.1: 30

Daytime driving lights 3.1: 46
Deactivating the switchable locking feature 2.1: 63
Diesel engine
Adding engine oil 3.2: 41
Changing engine oil 3.2: 41
Engine oil 3.2: 41
Engine oil specifications 3.2: 37
Diesel fuel 3.2: 33
Winter operation 3.2: 33
Differential lock 3.2: 4
Digital clock 3.1: 5
Display 3.1: 7, 12
Displays
One-color display 3.1: 12
Distance between driver and steering wheel 2.1: 4
Distance travelled 3.1: 9
Door release handle 3.1: 3
Doors
Warning light 3.1: 26
Drain the battery 3.1: 52
Driving economically 3.2: 14
Driving outside of the U.S.A. or Canada
Precautions 3.2: 91
Driving safety 2.1: 3
Driving time 3.1: 9
Driving with an automatic transmission 3.1: 99
Driving with children 2.1: 51
Driving with respect for the environment 3.2: 14
Dust filter 3.1: 88

E

EDL 3.2: 4
EDS
Warning light 3.1: 27
Electric seat adjustment
See Seat adjustment
Electrical accessories 3.1: 73
Electrolyte level
Checking 3.2: 50
Electro-mechanical power steering system
Warning light 3.1: 29
Electronic Differential Lock
Warning light 3.1: 27
Electronic differential lock 3.2: 4
Electronic immobilizer 3.1: 94
Warning light 3.1: 23
Electronic parking assistance 3.1: 106
Electronic Power Control (EPC)
Warning light 3.1: 23
Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)
How it works 3.2: 5
Electronic Stabilization Program 3.1: 28, 91
Warning light 3.1: 28
Emergency flasher 3.1: 48
Emergency warning lights
Warning light 3.1: 24
Engine
Break-in 3.2: 7
Engine compartment
Cleaning 3.2: 22
Precautions you should take when working inside the engine compartment 3.2: 34
Working in the engine compartment 3.2: 34
Engine coolant 3.2: 43
Additives 3.2: 43
Can I add plain water to the engine coolant? 3.2: 44
Coolant losses 3.2: 45
Engine fault
Warning light 3.1: 23
Engine hood
Warning light 3.1: 26
Engine hood 3.2: 36
How do I unlock the engine hood? 3.2: 36
Engine malfunction
Warning light 3.1: 23
Engine management
Warning light 3.1: 23

Engine oil 3.2: 37
Adding 3.2: 40
Additives 3.2: 40
Checking level 3.2: 39
Consumption 3.2: 38
Diesel engine 3.2: 41
Dipstick 3.2: 39
Grades 3.2: 38
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? 3.2: 38
Identification symbol 3.2: 39
Oil change 3.2: 42
Specifications 3.2: 37
Specifications Diesel engine 3.2: 37, 41
Specifications gasoline engine 3.2: 37
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? 3.2: 37
When should I check the engine oil level? 3.2: 38
Where is the oil dipstick 3.2: 39
Engine oil pressure
Warning light 3.1: 11, 25
Environment
Avoiding pollution 3.2: 18, 31
Cleaning the engine compartment 3.2: 22
Driving economically 3.2: 14
Vehicle care products 3.2: 16
Environmental information
Fuel economy 3.1: 6
Environmental tip
Fuel economy 3.1: 77
ESP 3.1: 91, 3.2: 5
Event Data Recorder 3.2: 6
Examples of improper seating positions 2.1: 8
Exhaust warning light
Warning light 3.1: 22
Extender for the safety belts 2.1: 22
External aerial 3.2: 29

F

Fabric trim
Cleaning 3.2: 23
Fastening
Booster seats 2.1: 59
Convertible child seats 2.1: 57
Infant seats 2.1: 56
Safety belt extender 2.1: 23
Safety belts 2.1: 19
First-aid kit 3.1: 74
Floor mats 2.1: 9
Fog lights 3.1: 46
Foot brake
Warning light 3.1: 30
Front airbag system 2.1: 31
Airbag deployment zone 2.1: 37
The basics 2.1: 31
Front airbags
Description 2.1: 31
Front center armrest 3.1: 70
Front passenger seat backrest
Folding forward 3.1: 61
Front seats 3.1: 60
Electrical adjustable 3.1: 62
Manual adjustable 3.1: 60
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics 2.1: 15
Fuel filler cap
Warning light 3.1: 29
Fuel gauge
Display 3.1: 7
Fuel level 3.1: 7
Fuel reserve
Warning light 3.1: 26
Warning message 3.1: 11
Fuel tank 3.1: 7
Fuse box 3.2: 79
Fuses 3.2: 77

G

Garage door opener 3.1: 44
Gaskets 3.2: 20
Gasoline 3.2: 32
Blends 3.2: 32
Containing alcohol 3.2: 32
Octane rating 3.2: 32
Petrol 3.2: 32
Premium 3.2: 32
Regular 3.2: 32
Unleaded 3.2: 32
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? 3.2: 32
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? 3.2: 32
Winter or summer tips 3.2: 32
Gasoline additives 3.2: 33
General illustration 3.1: 3

Generator
Warning light 3.1: 24
Glove compartment
Front passenger side 3.1: 69
Glove compartment light 3.1: 50
Glow plug system
Warning light 3.1: 23
Guide fixtures for lower anchorages 2.1: 68

H

Hat shelf 3.1: 79
Hazard lights 3.1: 48
Head restraints
Adjusting 3.1: 58, 59
Correct adjustment 2.1: 7
Removing 3.1: 59
Headlight flasher 3.1: 49
Headlights 3.1: 46
Fog lights 3.1: 46
Switching 3.1: 46
Washer system 3.1: 55
Heated front seats 3.1: 65
Heating 3.1: 80
Heavy clothing and safety belts 2.1: 17
High beam 3.1: 49
Warning light 3.1: 29
High beam lever 3.1: 49
HomeLink Universal Transmitter 3.1: 44
Horn 3.1: 3
How could I damage the catalytic converter? 3.2: 10
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? 3.2: 38
How do I unlock the engine hood? 3.2: 36
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 3.2: 8
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 2.1: 34, 44, 49
How often should I check my tire pressures? 3.2: 57
How often should I replace my engine battery? 3.2: 50
How often should I wax my car? 3.2: 19
How often should the brake fluid be changed? 3.2: 48
How to install the upper tether strap to the anchorage 2.1: 66
Hubcaps 3.2: 69
Hydroplaning 3.2: 60

I

Ignition key 3.1: 93
Ignition switch 3.1: 93
Immobilizer 3.1: 23
Warning message 3.1: 11
Importance of sitting properly 2.1: 27
Importance of wearing safety belts 2.1: 27
Important information for vehicles with Diesel engine when adding or changing engine oil 3.2: 49
Important information to know before disconnect the battery 3.2: 49
Important things to do before driving 2.1: 3
Improper seating positions 2.1: 8
Improperly worn safety belts 2.1: 25
Indicator light
Airbag system 2.1: 39
Indicator lights
Airbag system 2.1: 49
Mirror 3.1: 55
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 2.1: 39
Indirect ventilation 3.1: 86
Individual unlocking 3.1: 17, 34
Infant seats 2.1: 56
Information texts in the display 3.1: 11
Inside mirror
Indicator light 3.1: 55
Installing
Child restraint with a safety belt 2.1: 60
CRS using the LATCH system 2.1: 69
Instrument cluster 3.1: 5
Instrument cluster illumination 3.1: 3, 48
Instrument panel 3.1: 2, 71
Cleaning 3.2: 23
Instruments 3.1: 5
Interior lights
Front 3.1: 50
Intermittent wipe 3.1: 53

J

Jack 3.2: 72
Jump starting 3.2: 84
Jumper cables 3.2: 84

K

Key tag 3.1: 31
Keys 3.1: 31
Kick-down function 3.1: 103

L

Lane change flash function 3.1: 17
Language in display 3.1: 16
Leather
  Cleaning 3.2: 23
Leather seats
  Pressure marks 2.1: 67
Leaving home function 3.1: 47
Lifting platform 3.2: 89
Lifting the vehicle 3.2: 89
Light change 3.2: 81
Lights & Vision
  Menu 3.1: 17
Lights 3.1: 46
Lock cylinders 3.2: 21
Locks 3.2: 21
Low beam 3.1: 46
Lower anchorages 2.1: 67
Luggage compartment 2.1: 10, 3.1: 74

M

Main menu - Multi-Function Indicator 3.1: 9
Manual mode
  Climatronic 3.1: 87
Manual transmission 3.1: 97
Menu for convenience functions 3.1: 17
Menu for Lights & Vision 3.1: 17
Menu for vehicle status 3.1: 15
Menus
  Example of use 3.1: 13, 14
MFI 3.1: 9
Mileage (kilometer) display 3.1: 8
Miles (kilometers) to empty 3.1: 9
Mirrors
  Inside mirror 3.1: 55
  Make-up mirrors 3.1: 52
  Outside mirrors, electrical 3.1: 56
Mirrors lowered function 3.1: 18
Modifications 3.2: 28
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 2.1: 39
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 2.1: 68
Multi-Function Indicator 3.1: 9
Multi-function steering wheel 3.1: 4

N

New tires and wheels 3.2: 61
NHTSA 2.1: 12, 3.2: 81
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 3.2: 6
Number of seats 2.1: 13

O

Occupant seating positions 2.1: 4
Oil 3.2: 37
  Oil change 3.2: 42
Oil dipstick 3.2: 39
One-touch opening and closing
  Power windows 3.1: 40
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 3.2: 91
Orientation lighting 3.1: 47
Outside mirrors
  Cleaning 3.2: 19
Outside temperature display 3.1: 10
Overview
  Instruments 3.1: 5
  Multi-function steering wheel 3.1: 4
  Warning lights 3.1: 20

P

Paint
  Polishing 3.2: 19
  Waxing 3.2: 19
Panic button 3.1: 32
Park assist 3.1: 106
Parking 3.1: 105
  Automatic transmission 3.1: 99
  Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb 3.1: 105
  Low bumper cover, spoilers and suspension 3.1: 105
  When parking on slopes 3.1: 105

Parking 3.1: 108
Driver 2.1: 4
Front passenger 2.1: 5
Occupants 2.1: 4
Rear passengers 2.1: 6
Parking aid 3.1: 106
Parking Assistance
Cleaning sensors 3.2: 18
Parking brake 3.1: 104
Warning light 3.1: 28, 104 1
Parking distance warning system 3.1: 106
Parts 3.2: 27
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 2.1: 39
Pedals 2.1: 9
Physical principles of a frontal collision 2.1: 15
Pinch protection
Power roof 3.1: 43
Windows 3.1: 41
Plastic parts 3.2: 19
Cleaning 3.2: 23
Pollen filter 3.1: 88
Pollution filter 3.1: 88
Power
Roof 3.1: 42
Power outlet 3.1: 73
Power roof 3.1: 42
Power steering
Warning light 3.1: 29
Power steering 3.2: 6
Power washer 3.2: 18
Power windows 3.1: 39
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 2.1: 21
Premium Gasoline 3.2: 32
Pressure marks 2.1: 67
Proper adjustment of head restraints 2.1: 7
Proper occupant seating positions 2.1: 4
Proper safety belt position 2.1: 20

R

Rain sensor 3.1: 54
Raising the vehicle with the jack 3.2: 72
Reading lights
Front 3.1: 51
Rear armrest 3.1: 70
Rear interior light 3.1: 52
Rear lid 3.1: 37
Closing 3.1: 38
Escape handle 3.2: 76
Warning light 3.1: 26
Rear seat backrest
Folding forward 3.1: 66
Raising into place 3.1: 67
Rear seat bench 3.1: 66
Rear ventilation 3.1: 86
Rear view mirror 3.1: 55
Rear window 3.1: 37
Rear window heating
Heating element wires 3.2: 20
Rear window heating 3.1: 80, 81
Rear wiper 3.1: 53
Refueling 3.2: 30
Regular Gasoline 3.2: 32
Remote control
Vehicle 3.1: 32
Remote control key
Buttons 3.1: 32
Replacing the battery 3.1: 32
Synchronizing 3.1: 33
Removing the ignition key 3.1: 94
Repairs
Airbag system 2.1: 42
Repairs 3.2: 28
Replacement keys 3.1: 31
Replacing the battery
Remote control key 3.1: 32
Reporting safety defects 2.1: 12
Canada 3.2: 90
United States 3.2: 90
Retractor 2.1: 19
Reverse
Automatic transmission 3.1: 102
Roof carrier mounts 3.1: 76
Roof load 3.1: 77
Roof rack 3.1: 76, 77
Rubber gaskets 3.2: 20

S

Safe driving 2.1: 2
Safety belt extender 2.1: 22
Safety belt height adjustment 2.1: 24

Safety belt position 2.1: 20
Adjusting safety belt height 2.1: 24
Pregnant women 2.1: 21
Safety belt pretensioners 2.1: 25
Safety belt warning light 2.1: 14
Safety belts 2.1: 13, 19
Cleaning 3.2: 26
Extender 2.1: 22
How can I adjust the height of my safety belt? 2.1: 24
How do you put on your safety belt correctly? 2.1: 19
Improperly worn 2.1: 25
Installing child restraint 2.1: 60
Not worn 2.1: 16
Safety belt position 2.1: 20
Safety instructions 2.1: 17
Special considerations for pregnant women 2.1: 21
Switchable locking feature 2.1: 62
Unfastening safety belts 2.1: 24
Warning light 2.1: 14
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? 2.1: 16
Why assume the correct seating position? 2.1: 27
Why safety belts protect? 2.1: 17
Why wear safety belts? 2.1: 15, 27
Safety belts protect 2.1: 17
Safety equipment 2.1: 2
Safety instructions
Belt pretensioners 2.1: 26
Child restraint on the front seat 2.1: 29
Child seats 2.1: 54
Coolant temperature 3.1: 25
Loading the luggage compartment 2.1: 10
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 2.1: 41
Proper seating position for passengers in rear seats 2.1: 6
Proper seating position for the driver 2.1: 4
Proper seating position for the front passenger 2.1: 5
Safety belt extender 2.1: 22
Safety belts 2.1: 17
Side airbags 2.1: 46
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags 2.1: 50
Seat adjustment 3.1: 57, 60
Seat heating
Front 3.1: 65
Seat markings 2.1: 67
Seating capacity 2.1: 13
Seating position
Distance between driver and steering wheel 2.1: 4
Driver 2.1: 4
Front passenger 2.1: 5
Improper seating positions 2.1: 8
Occupants 2.1: 4
Rear passengers 2.1: 6
Seats
Number of seats 2.1: 13
Securing load 3.1: 77
Selector lever lock 3.1: 99
Selector lever positions 3.1: 102
Self-dimming inside day-night mirror 3.1: 55
Service interval display 3.1: 8
Service position 3.1: 53
Set up menu 3.1: 16
Setting the clock 3.1: 16
Settings
Menu 3.1: 16
Shopping bag hook 3.1: 78
Side airbags 2.1: 44
Description 2.1: 44
How they work? 2.1: 46
Safety instructions 2.1: 46
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags
Description 2.1: 48
How they work? 2.1: 49
Safety instructions 2.1: 50
Snow chains 3.2: 66
Socket 3.1: 73
Spares 3.2: 27
Speed Rating Letter Code 3.2: 62
Speed warning 3.1: 9
Starting the diesel engine
With the ignition key 3.1: 96
Starting the gasoline engine
With the ignition key 3.1: 95
Starting with jumper cables 3.2: 84
Steering 3.1: 90
Steering lock 3.1: 93
Steering wheel
Distance to the driver 2.1: 4
Steering wheel height adjustment 3.1: 90

Stopping the engine 3.1: 97
Storage area
Other storage areas 3.1: 71
Roof 3.1: 71
Storage compartment 3.1: 69
Front center armrest 3.1: 70
Rear armrest 3.1: 70
Storage for the vehicle literature 3.1: 69
Storing seat positions 3.1: 64
Stowing luggage in the luggage compartment 2.1: 10
Sun visor 3.1: 52
Sunroof 3.1: 42
Sunshade
Power roof 3.1: 42
Switch lighting 3.1: 3
Switchable locking feature
Activating 2.1: 62
Deactivating 2.1: 63
Switches
Emergency flasher 3.1: 48
Light switches 3.1: 46
Power outside mirrors 3.1: 56
Power roof 3.1: 42
Power windows 3.1: 39
Switching off the engine
With the ignition key 3.1: 97

T

Tachometer 3.1: 6
Tank
Filling the tank 3.2: 30
Fuel gauge 3.1: 7
Opening the fuel filler flap 3.2: 30
Technical modifications 3.2: 28
Tether anchors 2.1: 65
Tether strap 2.1: 65
Tie-down hooks 3.1: 78
Tie-downs 2.1: 11
Tire and wheels 3.2: 51
Tire pressure 3.2: 56
Tire pressure monitoring system 3.1
Warning light 3.1: 30
Tires
Service life 3.2: 59
Speed Rating LetterCode 3.2: 62
Tire manufacturing date 3.2: 62
Tire specifications 3.2: 62
Tread depth 3.2: 59
Uniform tire quality grading 3.2: 64
Winter tires 3.2: 65
Tires and wheels
Dimensions 3.2: 51
New 3.2: 61
Snow chains 3.2: 66
Wheel bolts 3.2: 66
Winter tires 3.2: 65
Tools 3.2: 67
Torn or frayed safety belts 2.1: 17
Towing 3.2: 77
General notes 3.2: 87
When can your vehicle not be towed? 3.2: 88
Towing eye 3.2: 86
Trailer towing
Brakes 3.2: 11
Driving tips 3.2: 13
Operating instructions 3.2: 12
Safety chains 3.2: 11, 12
Technical requirements 3.2: 10
Tire pressure 3.2: 12
Towing tips 3.2: 13
Trailer lights 3.2: 11
Trailer weight 3.2: 12
Trailer turn signals
Warning light 3.1: 51
Transport Canada 3.2: 90
Transporting long items 3.1: 62, 69
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) 3.2: 59
Trunk 2.1: 10
Trunk lid 3.1: 37
Turn signal and high beam lever 3.1: 50
Turn signals 3.1: 50
Warning light 3.1: 24, 51

U

Underbody sealant 3.2: 22
Unfastening
Safety belts 2.1: 24
Unidirectional tires 3.2: 51, 73
Uniform tire quality grading 3.2: 64

Unpleasant odor 3.1: 83
Upholstery
Pressure marks 2.1: 67

V

Veh. status 3.1: 15
Vehicle
Lifting 3.2: 89
Vehicle battery 3.2: 49
Vehicle care
Exterior 3.2: 17
Vehicle care products 3.2: 16
Vehicle control modules 3.2: 6
Vehicle electric system 3.1: 24
Vehicle phone 3.2: 29
Vehicle status 3.1: 15
Vehicle tool kit 3.2: 67
Ventilation slots 2.1: 11
Volkswagen Service Repair Manuals 3.2: 91

W

Warning light
Electronic Power Control (EPC) 3.1: 23
Warning lights 3.1: 20
Emergency flasher 3.1: 48
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 2.1: 39
Safety belts 2.1: 14
Turn signals 3.1: 49
Warning texts in the display 3.1: 11
Warning triangle 3.1: 74
Warranty coverages 3.2: 15
Washer fluid 3.2: 45
Washing by hand 3.2: 17
Washing the vehicle 3.2: 17
Washing with power cleaners 3.2: 18
Waxing
How often should I wax my car? 3.2: 19
Wear indicator 3.2: 59
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 3.2: 3
What happens if you do not wear your safety belt? 2.1: 16
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 2.1: 20
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? 2.1: 16
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? 3.2: 32
What impairs driving safety? 2.1: 3
What is LATCH? 2.1: 64
What is the correct brake fluid level? . 3.2: 47
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? 3.2: 7
What kind of brake fluid should I use? 3.2: 48
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? 3.2: 37
What should I do after changing a wheel? 3.2: 57, 74
What should I do after replacing wheels? 3.2: 57
What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? 3.2: 27
What should I do if I want to modify my vehicle? 3.2: 28
What should I do if I want to repair my vehicle? 3.2: 28
What should I do if the brake warning light comes on? 3.2: 47
What types of CRS anchors are available and how are they related to child safety? 2.1: 64
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? 3.2: 32
What you must do after reconnect the battery 3.2: 49
What you should know when driving with children? 2.1: 51
Wheel bolt caps 3.2: 69
Wheel bolts 3.2: 71
Torque 3.2: 66
Wheel changing 3.2: 68
Wheels 3.2: 51
When can your vehicle not be towed? 3.2: 88
When must a safety belt be replaced? 2.1: 17
When must the airbag system be inspected? 2.1: 39
When parking on slopes 3.1: 105
When should I adjust the tire pressures? 3.2: 57
When should I check the engine oil level? 3.2: 38
When should I check the tire pressures? 3.2: 57
When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 3.1: 7

When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 3.2: 31
Where are lower anchorages located? 2.1: 67
Where are my airbags located?
Front airbags 2.1: 31
Side airbags 2.1: 44
Side curtain protection™ airbags 2.1: 48
Where are tether anchors located? 2.1: 65
Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? 3.2: 56
Where can I get additional information about CRS application and usage? 2.1: 70
Where is the oil dipstick 3.2: 39
Why safety belts protect? 2.1: 17
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 2.1: 7
Windows 3.1: 39, 40
Cleaning 3.2: 19
Windshield wash 3.2: 45
Windshield washer fluid
Warning light 3.1: 26
Warning message 3.1: 11
Windshield wiper and washer system 3.1: 53
Windshield wiper blades
Cleaning 3.2: 20
Windshield wipers 3.1: 53
Changing blades 3.2: 46
Rain sensor 3.1: 54
Service position 3.1: 53
Winter operation 3.1: 54, 55
Winter tires
Speed warning 3.1: 16
Winter tires 3.2: 58
All-wheel drive 3.2: 65
Wooden trim
Cleaning 3.2: 23

Working in the engine compartment 3.2: 34

Afterword

Volkswagen works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen de México.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen de México. Subject to altera-tion and amendment.

Printed in Mexico

© Volkswagen de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

0.1 General Index | Jetta
Print status: 04.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.551.JGI.21 | englisch Nordamerika 05.2005



1.1 Maintenance

Touareg, Phaeton,
New Beetle, Jetta
Model year 2006

Table of contents

Warranty Voucher 2

Warranty Voucher 2
Odometer Replacement and other dealer stamps 3
Service Information 4

WHEN DO I BRING MY CAR IN FOR SERVICE? 6
SERVICE SCHEDULE 8
SERVICE SCHEDULE 22

Warranty Voucher

Warranty Voucher

Present this voucher to an authorized dealer if warranty service is required.

Warranty begins on the month of first use of the vehicle or its delivery to the first retail purchaser, namely on:

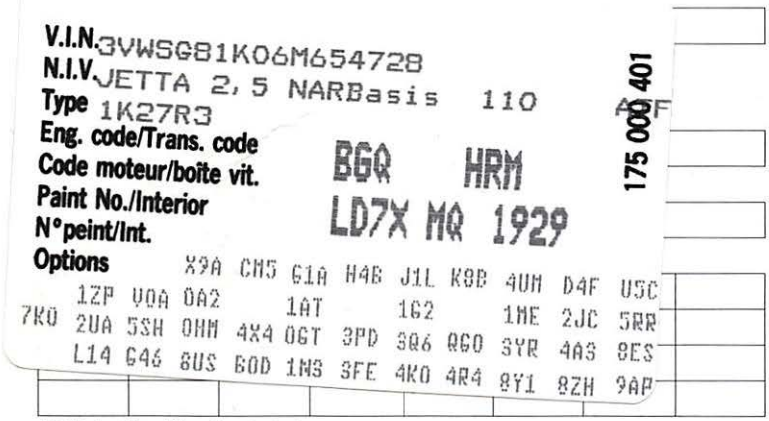
11	12	05
Month	Day	Year

(to be filled in by Volkswagen)

Mayer of Westchester Inc.
2001 Boston Post Road
Larchmont, NY 10538
Stamp of authorized Volkswagen Dealer

408344

3052965=6



Vehicle Identification Label

1. Vehicle Identification No. / Engine Code
2. Type / Engine / Transmission
3. Transmission Code / Paint No. / Interior / Engine / Engine Code
4. Optional Equipment

Odometer Replacement and other dealer stamps

Air Conditioner
Warranty Registration Certificate
(except factory installation)

Attach here (for dealer use only)

Federal Law requires that a label be affixed to the left door frame when the replacement odometer does not indicate the actual vehicle mileage (kilometers) after repair or replacement.

Genuine Volkswagen replacement odometers are supplied with a label

Odometer Replacement

Month Day Year

(to be filled in by authorized Volkswagen Dealer)

At mileage / km

Stamp of authorized Volkswagen Dealer

Service Information

Dealer Service

There are nearly 800 authorized Volkswagen dealers in North America. They have Volkswagen trained technicians, proper workshop equipment and parts to give you expert service.

Volkswagen dealers are committed to quality service.

- Your authorized Volkswagen dealer offers many services for your convenience, such as extended service hours, early bird service, body repairs, to name just a few. Ask about them.
- Arrange your service with your dealer when it is convenient for you.
- Ask your Service Advisor about the service you need and discuss the cost involved.
- Leave word where you can be reached during the day and when you would like to pick your car up.
- Keep all receipts of maintenance and repairs performed. Your service record is important when making use of your warranty.
- Maintenance services performed by your authorized dealer at the intervals specified, will also be documented in this booklet.
- Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer always has the most current Service and Maintenance information for your Volkswagen model. It is possible that this information may differ from the check points listed in this booklet. Your Volkswagen Service Advisor can answer any questions you may have. ◀

Do-It-Yourself Service

Your Owner's Manual contains many helpful hints on what you can service yourself.

- You can check tires for wear or damage and correct tire pressure, including the spare.
- You can check the windshield washer container.
- You can check your car's interior and exterior lighting system for correct functioning.
- You can check the engine oil level with every fuel filling.
- You can perform these simple checks once a week. They save time, trouble and expense later.

Your technician will not check the above mentioned items in each case during regular service and maintenance visits. ◀

Emission Control Maintenance

1 A clean environment is of concern to all of us. Volkswagen has built into your vehicle an efficient emission control system, using genuine Volkswagen parts, in conformance with the Federal Clean Air Act in the United States and Canadian Emission Standards, respectively. To help keep our air clean, you can do your part by providing regular maintenance for the emission control system in your vehicle.

2 **Maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components may be performed by any qualified automotive service and repair establishment or individual without affecting the Emission Control System Warranty, provided that such repairs are performed to manufacturer's specifications, and that replacement parts are at least equivalent to genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability. Warranty repairs and replacements, however, must be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.**

3 If other than genuine Volkswagen replacement parts are used, the owner should make sure that such parts are warranted by their manufacturer and that they are at least equivalent to genuine Volkswagen replacement parts in emission performance and durability. To be certain that the emission control system functions as designed, regular maintenance is necessary for all components of the vehicle which influence exhaust emissions.

Why Service?

- An untuned engine wastes fuel.
- An emission control system not maintained properly can increase pollution.
- A minor adjustment now may prevent a repair later.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and make in-between checks. This way you help keep your car dependable and safe.
- The intervals shown in the table on the following pages are based on vehicles operating under normal conditions. In the case of severe conditions, such as extremely low temperatures, excessive dust etc., it is necessary for certain operations to be carried out in between the given intervals. This applies particularly to engine oil changes and the cleaning or replacing of the air cleaner filter element.
- If you have questions about how to maintain your vehicle or about your Maintenance Services, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers are ready to serve you and are committed to quality service and customer care. ◀

WHEN DO I BRING MY CAR IN FOR SERVICE?

Service Interval Schedule

- **1.8L Turbo Gasoline Engine (GTI)**

If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Oil Change Service
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
15,000 miles (24,000 km)	Oil Change Service
20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
25,000 miles (40,000 km)	Oil Change Service
30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
35,000 miles (56,000 km)	Oil Change Service
40,000 miles (64,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
45,000 miles (72,000 km)	Oil Change Service
50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
55,000 miles (88,000 km)	Oil Change Service
60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
Services should be performed at the scheduled mileage (kilometer) intervals, or 12 months after the last Service, whichever occurs first. Your Service advisor will fill in the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance booklet each time you bring in your vehicle for Service. At this time, the Service advisor will also inform you when the next Service is due. Therefore, it is important that you follow the Service schedule.	
The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers).	

Service Interval Schedule

Gasoline Engines

If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

-
- 2.0L Gasoline Engine (Golf, Jetta Wagon)
- 2.5L Gasoline Engine (Jetta, Golf, New Beetle)
- 2.0L TFSI Gasoline Engine (Jetta, GTI, Passat)
- 4.2 V8 Gasoline Engine (Phaeton, Touareg)
- 6.0L W12 Gasoline Engine (Phaeton)
- VR6 Gasoline Engine (Touareg)
- 3.6L VR6 Gasoline Engine (Passat, Touareg)

Diesel Engine

- 1.9L TDI-PD Diesel Engine (Jetta, New Beetle, Golf)

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Oil Change Service
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
40,000 miles (64,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
70,000 miles (112,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
Services should be performed at the scheduled mileage (kilometre) intervals, or 12 months after the last Service, whichever occurs first. Your Service Advisor will fill in the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance booklet each time you bring in your vehicle for Service. At this time, the Service Advisor will also inform you when the next Service is due. Therefore, it is important that you follow the Service schedule.	
The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers).	

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Delivery Inspection

- Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will fill out the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance book to confirm that the necessary services have been performed.
- Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer always has the most current Service and Maintenance information for your Volkswagen model.

It is possible that this information may differ from the check points listed in this booklet. Your Volkswagen Service Advisor can answer any questions you may have.

- If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

Delivery Inspection	
Before your vehicle is delivered to you, it is inspected according to factory guidelines. The Delivery Inspection was performed on: 11/11/05	
Next Service:	Mayer of Westchester Inc. 2001 Bos... ad Larchmont, NY 10538 408544
Date: 5/11/06	
Miles/km:..... 5000	
whichever occurs first	whichever occurs first Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

First Service at 5,000 miles (8,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 10,000 miles (16,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary (**where applicable**).

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 15,000 miles (24,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 20,000 miles (32,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)** : Replace
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints and tie rod ends; check tie rods
- Headlights: Adjust
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 25,000 miles (40,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 30,000 miles (48,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 35,000 miles (56,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 40,000 miles (64,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Water separator: Drain **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- V-belt: Check tension and condition; adjust if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission final drive oil: Check level and for leaks; add if necessary
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear

- Headlights: Adjust
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Brake fluid: Replace every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Spark plugs: Replace **(all models except 2.0L TFSI)**
- Air cleaner: Replace filter element
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Ribbed belt: Check condition
- Power Steering: Check fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints, tie rod ends; check tie rods
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Automatic transmission: Check ATF
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Convertible top: Check function and check roll-over protection with convertible top open (New Beetle Convertible only)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.
- Underbody: Check for damage
- Wiper blades: Check condition
- DSG transmission: Change transmission fluid and filter **(New Beetle, new Jetta)**

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 45,000 miles (72,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 50,000 miles (80,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary (**where applicable**).

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 55,000 miles (88,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Spark plugs: Replace **(2.0L TFSI only)**
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Timing belt: Check condition (4 cylinder gasoline engine only)
- Automatic transmission final drive: Check fluid level and for leaks
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Front axle: Check dust seal on ball joints and tie rods; check tie rods
- Headlights: Adjust
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 65,000 miles (104,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 70,000 miles (112,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 75,000 miles (120,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 80,000 miles (128,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Water separator: Drain **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Spark plugs: Replace
- Air cleaner: Replace filter element
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Timing belt: Check condition (4 cylinder gasoline engine only)
- V-belt: Check tension and condition; adjust if necessary
- Ribbed belt: Check condition
- Spark plugs: Replace **(all models except Passat 2.0L TFSI)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Automatic transmission final drive oil: Check level and for leaks; add if necessary
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Headlights: Adjust
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Power steering: Check fluid level
- Brake fluid: Replace every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints, tie rod ends; check tie rods
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Automatic transmission: Check ATF
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Convertible top: Check function and check roll-over protection with convertible top open (New Beetle Convertible only)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.
- Underbody: Check for damage
- Wiper blades: Check condition
- DSG transmission: Change transmission fluid and filter **(New Beetle, new Jetta)**

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 85,000 miles (136,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 90,000 miles (144,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Timing belt: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 95,000 miles (152,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 100,000 miles (160,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints and tie rod ends; check tie rods
- Headlights: Adjust
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- Timing belt: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Timing belt and timing belt tensioning roller: Replace **(New Beetle 1.8T engine only)**

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Brake fluid replacement record

The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers).

The first brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Afterword

It has always been Volkswagen's policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

All rights reserved.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Text and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without consent of Volkswagen de México.

Printed in Mexico

© 2005 Volkswagen de México

For the sake of environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

1.1 Maintenance | Touareg, Phaeton, New Beetle, Jetta
Print status: 05.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.554,MAT.21 | englisch Nordamerika 05.2005



1.2 USA Warranty

Touareg, Golf,
Jetta, New Beetle
Model year 2006

Dear Owner,

This booklet contains the warranties applicable to your new Volkswagen. Please read these warranties carefully to determine your warranty rights and obligations.

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty includes virtually bumper to bumper coverage for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first and limited powertrain coverage for 5 years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. Your vehicle is also warranted against corrosion perforation for a period of 12 years irrespective of mileage.

In addition, your vehicle is covered by emissions warranties mandated by Federal law. If you are a resident of California, Massachusetts, Vermont, or Maine and have purchased a California emissions equipped vehicle, you may also have rights under California mandated emissions warranties. Please consult these warranties whenever a repair to your emission control system is required to determine whether it is covered by warranty. Your satisfaction in understanding the warranties that apply to your Volkswagen is important to us. Any questions concerning warranty coverage should be directed to:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you have a concern or you are not satisfied with the service that you receive from your dealer, we suggest that you discuss it with the Service Manager at your dealership. If it is not resolved through your dealership, you may call or write to the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a mediation and arbitration service for the resolution of disputes arising under this Limited New Vehicle Warranty. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Arlington, VA 22203-1804

Notice of Address Change
Notice of Used Car Purchase

The "National Traffic & Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966" requires manufacturers to be in a position to contact vehicle owners if a correction of a product defect becomes necessary. If you change your address or buy a used Volkswagen, complete one of the postcards in the middle of this booklet. You need not use this card if you purchased your Volkswagen through an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Table of contents

Limited New Vehicle Warranty .. 2
What is covered 2
What is not covered 4

Limited ...wertrain Warranty 7
What is c... ...ed 7
What is n... ...overed 8

Limited ...arranty Against Corros...n Perforation 10
What is ...overed 10
What is ... covered 11

24 H... Roadside Assistance 13
The V... ...vagen 24 Hour Roadside Assist... ...e program 13

Fed... ...l Emissions Warranties ... 14
Gene... 14
Fede... ...missions Control System Defect Warr... 15
Fede... ...missions Performance Warranty 16

California Emissions Warranties . 20
California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement: 20
CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT 20
California Emissions Control System Defect Warranties 22
For 3 years / 50,000 miles 22

Customer CARE 28
Dealer assistance 28
When to notify the manufacturer 28
Repairs not covered by warranty 29

BBB AUTO LINE 30
BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services 30

Service Publications 31
Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center 31

Tire Manufacturers 32
List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles 32

Limited New Vehicle Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The New Vehicle Warranty period is 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship except wheel alignment, tire balance, and the repair or replacement of tires. The repair or replacement of wear and tear items, **such as** manual transmission clutch friction material, brake pads worn below manufacturer specifications, light bulbs (excluding Halogen headlights, instrument panel bulbs, and Xenon headlights, unless damaged by outside influence), seat covers, carpeting and replacement of rubber wiper blade inserts, replaced for wear and tear, are covered up to one year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Batteries are covered 100% parts and labor for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, for defects in material or workmanship.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material and workmanship, are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited New Vehicle Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with **a new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

Emergency repairs

If an emergency repair was performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility, keep all receipts, repair orders, and parts removed from your Volkswagen.

You will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer.

A statement of the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer, together with the paid receipts, repair orders, and replaced parts must be submitted to your authorized Volkswagen dealer in order to be considered for reimbursement. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services

If you are not satisfied with the warranty service you receive, you may wish to follow the steps set forth ⇒ page 30.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a **mediation** and **arbitration** service for the resolution of warranty and other product related disputes. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, you may call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

We encourage you to use BBB AUTO LINE before you decide to seek remedies in a court of law.

In some states you may be required to use BBB AUTO LINE before you can assert your rights in a court of law.

The BBB AUTO LINE service is free of charge and permits you to present your case without an attorney. Additional information on BBB AUTO LINE can be found ⇒ page 30. ◀

What is not covered

Tires

Tires are not covered by this warranty, but are separately warranted by the tire manufacturer. To assist you in obtaining related Warranty information, a list of tire manufacturers and addresses is provided at the end of this booklet. Verify with the tire manufacturer what is covered under their warranty. ◀

Maintenance services and mechanical adjustments

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants, fluids, or air conditioner refrigerant charge, unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material or workmanship are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). This warranty does not cover wheel alignment or tire balancing. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems; or
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations; or
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet.

Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, floodwater, windstorms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Glass

This warranty does not cover glass breakage, unless due to a defect in manufacturer's material or workmanship. ◀

Odometer tampering

These warranties do not cover repairs on a Volkswagen on which the odometer has been altered or on which the actual mileage cannot readily be determined.

If the speedometer unit is replaced, a "Speedometer Replacement Record" must be filled out by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging[1]**.**

This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state. ◀

[1] Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state.

Other terms

This warranty is issued by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (VWoA). This warranty does not apply to Volkswagen vehicles or parts and accessories not imported or distributed by Volkswagen.

This warranty, the Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation, the Limited Powertrain Warranty and the Emissions Warranties are the only express warranties made in connection with the sale of this Volkswagen. Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so, the above limitation may not apply to you.

Volkswagen of America, Inc. reserves the right to make improvements or change the design of any Volkswagen model at anytime with no obligation to make similar changes on vehicles previously sold.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Limited Powertrain Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for **5 years or 60,000 miles** whichever occurs first, from the date the vehicle was first placed in service.

This warranty does not apply to vehicles used for commercial purposes such as taxi, limousine and rental vehicles.

If a commercial vehicle is sold to a subsequent retail owner, this warranty still does not apply.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

The Limited Powertrain Warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship for the following Volkswagen parts and components:

Engine

Cylinder block and all internal parts, cylinder head and all internal parts, valve train, spur belt, flywheel, oil pump, water pump, manifolds, all related seals and gaskets.

Transmission

Case and all internal parts, torque converter, all related seals and gaskets.

Drivetrain

Differential and all internal parts, drive shafts and constant velocity (CV) joints. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected only under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company car", on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

The Limited Powertrain Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

What is not covered

Maintenance services

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service. Scheduled maintenance services are described in your Volkswagen Maintenance Booklet.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants or fluids unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems;
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations;
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen;
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Wear and tear items

This warranty does not cover the replacement of any powertrain components that wear as a result of normal use or deterioration. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions which are due to failure to follow recommended maintenance requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet. Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of service or repair orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, tree sap, stones, flood water, windstorm or other similar occurrences. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, or out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging[2)].

The "Other Terms" Presented in The Limited New Vehicle Warranty Also Apply to This Warranty. ◀

[2)] Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for 12 years without mileage limitation.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair or replacement of body sheet metal panels that have been perforated by rust. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. The authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part.

Tips

Your Volkswagen is corrosion protected at the factory. You do not need to purchase rust-proofing when you buy your Volkswagen in order to keep this warranty in effect. ◀

What is not covered

Surface corrosion without perforation

Repairs are covered under this warranty only if there is rust-through condition in the body sheet metal not caused by outside influences. ◀

Perforation of sheet metal due to accident, lack of care, or failure to repair or modifications to the paint/painted surface

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the failure to promptly repair paint damage, damaged undercoating, or surface corrosion.

It does not cover damage due to failure to wash or otherwise regularly care for the vehicle as described in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual.

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from unrepaired collision damage or improper collision repair. ◀

Special exclusion for any aluminum portions that may be part of your Volkswagen vehicle

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation due to failure to perform body repairs in accordance with Volkswagen's specified repair procedures, including use of **non-aluminum alloy parts.**

It does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the use of any inferior rustproofing agent or method.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealership will do its best to match your vehicles original finish, but this warranty does not cover the cost of painting the entire vehicle solely for paint matching. ◀

Environmental damage

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, flood water, wind storms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Corrosion perforation because of failure to rustproof when collision damage is repaired

Body parts that have been repaired or newly installed after a collision must be treated with a rustproofing agent that is compatible with Volkswagen's own factory corrosion protection. If you fail to have your vehicle treated in this way after a collision, Volkswagen will not be responsible for the repair of any resulting rust-through.

Tips

The "Other Terms" presented in the Limited New Vehicle Warranty also apply to this warranty. ◀

24 Hour Roadside Assistance

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program is your assurance that help will be there should your Volkswagen have a mechanical breakdown under normal[3] driving conditions. Whether this happens thousands of miles from home (anywhere in the U.S. or Canada), or in your own driveway, you only have to call one toll-free number and help will be on the way.

1 (800) 411-6688

To identify yourself as a member, simply quote your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This number can be found on your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance membership card, or you can find it on the driver's side of the dashboard visible through the windshield. 24 Hour Roadside Assistance is available to you for the **first four years of your new vehicle ownership.**

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Program includes the following emergency roadside services: emergency towing, battery jump start, flat tire change, emergency fuel service, lock-out service and extrication/winch service.

Other services and benefits include: trip routing services and trip interruption benefits throughout the U.S. and Canada.

Please refer to your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Owner's Guide for specific details on the services provided. ◀

[3] Coverage does not include service to any vehicle willfully driven into non-regularly travelled areas such as unused roads, open fields, construction sites, beaches, mud-filled driveways/laneways/concession roads, vacant lots, or any other area that is inaccessible or hazardous for the Service Operator's vehicle to reach.

Federal Emissions Warranties

General

The Emissions Warranties set out on the following pages are warranties which the manufacturer is required by law to furnish to you at the time you take delivery of your new vehicle. These coverages may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

The warranties required by federal laws apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen) for sale in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The warranties required by the State of California law apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale and registration in the State of California.

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts and the States of Vermont and Maine have adopted warranty requirements that are identical to the California warranties.

The owner of a vehicle certified for sale and registered in California, Massachusetts, Vermont or Maine may, therefore, have warranty rights under both Federal and State mandated emissions warranties. The state of New York has adopted emissions warranty requirements identical to California mandated emissions warranties ONLY for vehicles equipped to meet California's Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV) emissions requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood.

The owner of a new Volkswagen vehicle imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale in states other than California, Massachusetts, Vermont, Maine or New York (as set forth in the above paragraph) has rights only under the Federal Emissions Warranty.

Please read these warranties carefully. If you have any questions concerning the applicability of each warranty to your vehicle or want to know whether a particular repair will be performed free of charge pursuant to these warranties, please write to or telephone:

Customer CARE
Volkswagen of America, Inc.
3800 Hamlin Road
Auburn Hills, MI 48326
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987◀

Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty

For 2 Years or 24,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen), the authorized United States importer of Volkswagen vehicles, warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform at the time of sale with all applicable regulations of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations for 2 years after the date of first use or delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee or until the vehicle has been driven 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to EPA emission standards. The following parts or systems listed, if defective, could cause the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations:

- Evaporative Emission Control System: including fuel tank, filler cap, filler neck and leak detection pump
- Exhaust System: including manifolds, turbochargers, catalytic converters, down pipes and particulate traps
- EGR System: including valves, pipes and coolers
- Fuel Injection System: including control modules, sensors, switches, valves and fuel lines
- Intake System: including camshaft adjuster units, sensors, manifold, pipes and control valves
- Ignition System: including coils and sensors
- OBD System: including Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) and Data Link Connector
- PCV System: including control valves and pipes
- Secondary Air Injection System: including air pump and control valves
- Emission-related hoses, gaskets, clamps and other accessories used with the above components

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge. ◀

For 8 Years or 80,000 miles

If the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, your Volkswagen dealer will repair or replace free of charge the following major emission control components only:

- Catalytic Converter
- Engine Electronic Control Module
- On Board Diagnostic Device ◀

Federal Emissions Performance Warranty

For 2 years or 24,000 miles and 8 years or 80,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc., (Volkswagen) warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee of a **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle and any subsequent purchaser or lessee of the vehicle that if the following conditions are met, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada will remedy any nonconformity, as determined below, free of charge, under the following conditions:

- the vehicle fails to conform at any time during 24 months or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first, to applicable emission inspection standards as determined by an EPA Approved State Inspection and Maintenance Test (I/M), or
- if the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, the vehicle fails an I/M Test resulting from a malfunction of a catalytic converter, engine electronic control module or on- board diagnostic device (OBD), and
- the failure of the I/M Test requires the vehicle owner to bear any penalty or other sanction, including the denial of the right to use the vehicle under local, state or federal law, and
- the vehicle has been maintained and operated in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions for proper maintenance and use. ◀

Performance Warranty claim approval

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed an I/M Test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim.

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim.

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure.

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or workmanship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance.

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely ▶

manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or

- the use of an uncertified part or to noncompliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use, which is not related to the I/M Test failure ◀

Additional Information About Your Federal Emissions Warranties

Warranty period

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original retail purchaser or original lessee, and any subsequent purchaser or lessee or, if the vehicle is first placed in service as a demonstrator or company demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀

Proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. Time and mileage intervals, at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary from model to model.

Volkswagen recommends you keep a record of scheduled maintenance by having your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by the authorized Volkswagen dealer or other service facility that performed the maintenance. If you perform the maintenance yourself, keep all documentation as proof you have performed the maintenance at the approximate time or mileage intervals recommended, that you have used proper parts, and that you were able to perform the maintenance properly.

Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the instruction for proper maintenance may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle according to the instructions or failure to keep a record of maintenance.

Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen Parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effectiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure. ◀

EPA certified replacement parts

Maintenance, repair, or replacement of emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive service and repair establishment or qualified individual using Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) certified replacement parts. ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses, which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. See "Emergency Repairs" for further details. ◀

Parts not scheduled for inspection or replacements

Any part, which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance booklet, is covered by this warranty for the full warranty period. ◀

Scheduled part inspection or replacement

A part scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is covered for the duration of these warranties.

A part installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next scheduled replacement interval or for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Damage to non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀

Emergency repairs

Emergency repairs performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed, and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer. The maximum reimbursement allowable is an amount equal to the cost if your authorized Volkswagen dealer had completed the repair(s). Reimbursement will be considered when you submit the following items to your authorized Volkswagen dealer:

- A statement explaining the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer,
- Paid receipt(s),
- Repair order(s), and
- Part(s) removed from your Volkswagen. ◀

Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, including loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Tips

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this booklet under the title "Customer CARE".

- You may obtain further information regarding the Emissions Performance Warranty or report violation of the terms of the Emissions Performance Warranty by contacting: Manager, Certification and Compliance Division (6405J), Warranty Claims, Environmental Protection Agency, Ariel Rios Building, 1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20460 ◀

California Emissions Warranties

California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement:

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

Your warranty rights and obligations

The California Air Resources Board is pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your **model year 2006** vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Volkswagen must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exits, Volkswagen will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

Manufacturer's warranty coverage:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

If your vehicle fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test , all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Volkswagen to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your short-term Emission Control System DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first

If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your long-term Emission Control System DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV)** requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Owner's warranty responsibilities:

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's Maintenance booklet. Volkswagen recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Volkswagen cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Volkswagen dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Volkswagen may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES, YOU SHOULD CONTACT VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC., CUSTOMER CARE AT 1 (800) 822-8987, OR THE CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD AT P.O. BOX 8001, EL MONTE, CA 91734–2302. ◀

California Emissions Control System Defect Warranties

For 3 years / 50,000 miles

General

Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen), warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen and certified for sale and registered in California:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform with all applicable requirements of the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which cause the vehicle to fail to conform with CARB requirements, including any defect which would cause the vehicle's on-board malfunction indicator to illuminate, for 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to California emission standards.

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with California regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge.

These coverage's may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty. ◀

For 7 years / 70,000 Miles Covering Certain Emission System Parts

The following emissions control system parts marked with "yes" are covered for 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first:

	Jetta, Passat 2.0T FSI	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.5L	Touareg VR6	Touareg 4.2L
Camshaft adjuster unit	no	no	yes	yes
Camshaft adjuster control housing	no	no	no	yes
Fuel tank	yes	yes	yes	yes
Turbocharger	yes	no	no	no
Intake manifold	no	no	yes	yes
Engine control module[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Exhaust manifold	yes	no	yes	no

	Jetta, Passat 2.0T FSI	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.5L	Touareg VR6	Touareg 4.2L
Catalytic converter[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Transmission control module	yes (Jetta only)	no	no	no
Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (covered only when equipped with Driver Information Display)[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Passenger compartment auxiliary heater	no	no	yes	yes
Throttle valve control unit	no	no	no	yes

a) Also covered by the Federal Emissions Warranty for 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

California Emissions Performance Warranty

California maintains a mandatory emissions Inspection and Maintenance program (I/M) requiring motor vehicles to be tested at regular intervals. If your vehicle fails to pass an I/M test performed by a Licensed I/M station pursuant to the California Inspection and Maintenance Program within 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada will perform free of charge any repairs necessary for the vehicle to pass the smog test.

After the 3 year / 50,000 miles performance warranty has expired, an I/M test failure due to a defect in a part which is warranted for 7 years / 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first, is covered. These repairs include diagnosis, replacement, repair, and adjustments.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle** (P-ZEV) requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an I/M test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Performance Warranty claim approval

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed a California I/M test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim.

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim.

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure.

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or workmanship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance.

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to:

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or
- the use of an uncertified part or to noncompliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use, which is not related to the I/M Test failure ◀

Additional Information About Your California Emissions Warranties

Warranty period

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original retail purchaser or original lessee, and any subsequent purchaser or lessee or, if the vehicle is first placed in service as a demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀

Proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. Time and mileage intervals at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary from model to model.

Volkswagen recommends you keep a record of scheduled maintenance performed by having your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, and that you provide these records to the new owner whenever you sell the vehicle.

Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the instruction for proper maintenance may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle according to the instructions or failure to keep a record of maintenance.

Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen Parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effectiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. See "Emergency Repairs" for further details. ◀

Parts not scheduled for inspection or replacement

Any part, which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance booklet, is covered by this warranty for the full warranty period. Any such parts repaired or replaced under warranty are warranted for the remaining warranty period. ◀

Scheduled part inspection or replacement

A part scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is covered for the duration of these warranties.

A part installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next scheduled replacement interval for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Damage to non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀

Emergency repairs

Emergency repairs performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed, and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer. The maximum reimbursement allowable is an amount equal to the cost if your authorized Volkswagen dealer had completed the repair(s). Reimbursement will be considered when you submit the following items to your authorized Volkswagen dealer:

- A statement explaining the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer,
- Paid receipt(s),
- Repair order(s), and
- Part(s) removed from your Volkswagen. ◀

Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, such as loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Tips

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this booklet under the title "Customer CARE". ◀

Customer CARE

Dealer assistance

If you have questions about the service you have received, we suggest that you first discuss them with the service personnel at your authorized Volkswagen dealer. You may want to speak to the Service Manager or directly to the owner of the dealership.

It is their business to be concerned about your satisfaction and goodwill. Since they are closest to the situation, they are in the best position to quickly resolve any concerns you may have. ◀

When to notify the manufacturer

Your satisfaction with our product is very important to us, and we would like to make certain that we have had the opportunity to work with you and your dealer to resolve your concerns.

If your concerns are not resolved to your satisfaction by the dealer, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc., immediately by calling our toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you prefer to write, please use the following address:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309

You can also contact us using our Internet address:

www.vw.com.

Simply click on "Contact Volkswagen of America, Inc."

When you call or write, please provide the following information:

- **Your name, address and telephone number**
- **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)**
- **Vehicle type and mileage**
- **Dealer's name and location**
- **Nature of complaint or problem**
- **Copies of repair orders (retain originals for your records) or pertinent documents if you are writing to us**

A Customer CARE Representative will gather and carefully review all facts relating to your request for assistance. After this review is completed, the Customer CARE Representative will inform you of any assistance that the company will be able to provide.

Please note that as part of our continuing effort to maintain the highest quality of service to our Customers, supervisors will occasionally monitor the quality of telephone calls between our Customers and Representatives. We hope you understand our interest in providing the best possible service. ◀

Repairs not covered by warranty

In some circumstances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer financial assistance toward repairs or expenses not covered by Volkswagen of America, Inc.'s Limited New Vehicle Warranties.

In certain instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may pay for such repairs in accordance with the terms of service action campaigns it will conduct from time to time. In the event of a service action, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will notify you by mail and request that you bring your vehicle to your nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer for repair free of charge.

If you have not recently changed your address and Volkswagen of America, Inc. has your current address on file, you will receive notification automatically. If you are concerned that you may not have received notice concerning a particular service action, please check with your dealer to determine whether your vehicle is eligible for any repair free of charge.

In other instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer assistance with a repair beyond warranty on a case-by-case basis. If you believe that your vehicle needs a repair not covered by warranty which Volkswagen of America, Inc. should pay for in part or in whole, please discuss the request with your dealer. If you are not satisfied with your dealer's decision, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc. Customer CARE by telephone or in writing. Your request should provide the vehicle identification number, the mileage, maintenance history and an explanation of why you believe that the repair should be performed free of charge. Your request should be accompanied by all available maintenance and repair records which you have retained. A Customer CARE Representative will review your request and advise you of our decision. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services

If your dealer or Customer CARE Representative does not resolve your product concern to your satisfaction or if you do not wish to present your concern to either of them, you may take advantage of the mediation and arbitration services of the Better Business Bureau. This program is called BBB AUTO LINE and is available to you free of charge, on a nationwide basis as long as your vehicle has been driven less than 24,000 miles and has not been in use for more than 2 years. Not every claim is eligible; there are some age and mileage limitations, so please check with your local Better Business Bureau ("BBB") regarding your claim.

The BBB AUTO LINE program has two parts. The first part is mediation. Mediation means that the BBB staff will facilitate negotiations between the parties in an effort to bring your claim to a mutually acceptable resolution. You do not have to participate in mediation if you would rather proceed immediately to arbitration. Arbitration is the other part of BBB AUTO LINE. Arbitration is a process by which an impartial person makes a decision on your claim. The arbitrators are not connected with the automobile industry and serve on a voluntary basis.

If you do not agree with the mediated resolution and/or have opted to arbitrate, an arbitration hearing will be scheduled. You may attend the hearing in person, be represented by an attorney, bring witnesses, and give supporting evidence. Instead of appearing personally, you may request a written or even a telephone arbitration hearing.

If you wish to use BBB AUTO LINE, please call the following toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 955-5100

When you call the local office of the "BBB", its staff will need the following information:

- **Your name, address and telephone number**
- **Make, model and Vehicle Identification Number of your vehicle (VIN)**
- **Delivery date and current mileage**
- **Nature of complaint or problem**

The "BBB" will follow-up on your complaint; and if it cannot be mediated, they will arrange an arbitration hearing.

A decision will be made by the arbitrator within 3 days of the hearing (typically a decision is made 40 days from the date you filed your claim with "BBB").

You then have the opportunity to accept or reject the decision. If you accept the decision, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will be bound by the decision and fulfill its obligation within the time specified by the arbitrator.

If you reject the decision:

1 - You are free to pursue other legal remedies available under state and federal law.

2 - The manufacturer will not have to comply with any part of the decision.

California residents

Additional information relating to your rights to arbitrate warranty claims under the BBB AUTO LINE Arbitration Program is provided in the Owner Information about Consumer Protection Laws booklet which is presented to you by your dealer when you take delivery of your new vehicle. ◀

Service Publications

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

Updated service information you can obtain

Volkswagen monitors product performance in the field and regularly sends dealers the latest service information about Volkswagen vehicles. Now you too, can get these bulletins.

Bulletins cover a wide variety of subjects: the proper use and care of your car, costly repairs, inexpensive repairs or adjustments which, if done early, may avoid costly future repairs. Some bulletins describe repairs about new or unexpected conditions. Others describe improved repair procedures or parts improvements. All of this information can also help a qualified technician better service your vehicle.

Most bulletins apply to conditions affecting a small number of vehicles. Your dealer or a qualified technician may have to determine if a specific bulletin applies to your vehicle. You can order Volkswagen bulletins, Volkswagen repair information and Volkswagen Owner's Literature 24 hours / 7 days a week on the Internet from the Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.vw.ddsltd.com

Or if you prefer, you can contact our literature distribution service at:

Telephone: 1 (800) 544-8021
Fax: 1 (800) 572-1438 ◀

What you will also find on the website

- A list of Volkswagen bulletins for 1985 and later model years, covering all North American specification Volkswagen models.
- Ordering and pricing information on how to buy specific bulletins.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Repair Manuals on paper format, CD ROM or DVD.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Electrical Wiring Diagrams.
- Owner's Manuals
- Maintenance Booklets
- Warranty Manuals
- Sound System Manuals

⚠ WARNING

These bulletins are intended for qualified technicians. They are not meant for the CASUAL do-it-yourselfer. Qualified technicians have the equipment, tools, safety instructions, and know-how to do a job properly and safely. Improperly performed repairs or maintenance can adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, possibly leading to accident or injury. They may also impair the economy, durability or reliability of your vehicle and may void the warranty of your car. If you are not sure that you can perform a job properly and safely, you should not risk trying to do so. ◀

Tire Manufacturers

List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act of 1975 and regulations issued pursuant to the act require that a tire warranty pamphlet be placed in every new vehicle prior to sale.

To assist you in obtaining the related warranty information, the following list of tire manufacturers and addresses is being provided.

Tire Manufacturers

Dunlop Tire Corp.
1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
Tel.: 1 (800) 548–4714

Bridgestone/Firestone Inc.
1 Bridgestone Park
Nashville, TN 37214
Tel.: 1 (800) 356-4644

Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co.
1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
Tel.: 1 (800) 321-2136

Continental General
1800 Continental Blvd.
Charlotte, NC 28273
Tel.: 1 (800) 847–3349

Michelin Tire Corp.
P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602-9001
Tel.: 1 (800) 887–0662

Pirelli Tires North America
300 George Street, 5th Floor
New Haven, CT 06511
Tel.: 1 (800) 747-3554

Uniroyal Goodrich Tire Co.
P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602-9001
Tel.: 1 (800) 521-9796 ◀

The "National Traffic & Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966" required manufactures to be in a position to contact vehicle owners if a correction of a product defect becomes necessary.

Please complete one the attached postcards if you change your address or purchase a used Volkswagen.

You need not use this card if you purchased your car through an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

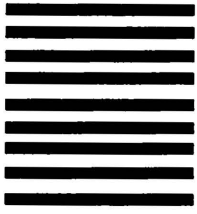
Quote the complete Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) or your Volkswagen. Do not use an abbreviated number.

Locations of the vehicle Identification Number (VIN) are illustrated and explained in the Owner's Manual.

Additional cards can be obtained from any authorized Volkswagen dealer.



NO POSTAGE NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES



BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT 107 PONTIAC, MI

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC.
ATTENTION: RECALL
P. O. BOX 217022
AUBURN HILLS, MI 48321-7022

NOTICE OF ADDRESS CHANGE/USED CAR PURCHASE

Complete Vehicle Identification Number

Last Name | First Name | Initial

Number | Street | Apt. No.

City | State

Zip Code

ADDR CHG VWUS

Please **PRINT** and give complete information

Afterword

It has always been Volkswagen's policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

All rights reserved.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Text and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without consent of Volkswagen de México.

Printed in Mexico

© 2005 Volkswagen de México

For the sake of environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

1.2 USA Warranty | Touareg, Golf, Jetta, New Beetle
Print status: 05.2005
| Art.-Nr.: 261.555.WAT.23 | Ausgabe: englisch Nordamerika 05.2005



1.2 USA Warranty

Touareg, Golf,
Jetta, New Beetle
Model year 2006

Dear Owner,

This booklet contains the warranties applicable to your new Volkswagen. Please read these warranties carefully to determine your warranty rights and obligations.

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty includes virtually bumper to bumper coverage for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first and limited powertrain coverage for 5 years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. Your vehicle is also warranted against corrosion perforation for a period of 12 years irrespective of mileage.

In addition, your vehicle is covered by emissions warranties mandated by Federal law. If you are a resident of California, Massachusetts, Vermont, or Maine and have purchased a California emissions equipped vehicle, you may also have rights under California mandated emissions warranties. Please consult these warranties whenever a repair to your emission control system is required to determine whether it is covered by warranty. Your satisfaction in understanding the warranties that apply to your Volkswagen is important to us. Any questions concerning warranty coverage should be directed to:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you have a concern or you are not satisfied with the service that you receive from your dealer, we suggest that you discuss it with the Service Manager at your dealership. If it is not resolved through your dealership, you may call or write to the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a mediation and arbitration service for the resolution of disputes arising under this Limited New Vehicle Warranty. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Arlington, VA 22203-1804

Notice of Address Change
Notice of Used Car Purchase

The "National Traffic & Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966" requires manufacturers to be in a position to contact vehicle owners if a correction of a product defect becomes necessary. If you change your address or buy a used Volkswagen, complete one of the postcards in the middle of this booklet. You need not use this card if you purchased your Volkswagen through an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Table of contents

Limited New Vehicle Warranty .. 2
What is covered 2
What is not covered 4

Limited Powertrain Warranty 7
What is covered 7
What is not covered 8

Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation 10
What is covered 10
What is not covered 11

24 Hour Roadside Assistance 13
The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program 13

Federal Emissions Warranties ... 14
General 14
Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty 15
Federal Emissions Performance Warranty 16

California Emissions Warranties . 20
California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement: 20
CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT 20
California Emissions Control System Defect Warranties 22
For 3 years / 50,000 miles 22

Customer CARE 28
Dealer assistance 28
When to notify the manufacturer 28
Repairs not covered by warranty 29

BBB AUTO LINE 30
BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services 30

Service Publications 31
Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center 31

Tire Manufacturers 32
List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles 32

Limited New Vehicle Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The New Vehicle Warranty period is **4 years or 50,000 miles**, whichever occurs first.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship except wheel alignment, tire balance, and the repair or replacement of tires. The repair or replacement of wear and tear items, **such as** manual transmission clutch friction material, brake pads worn below manufacturer specifications, light bulbs (excluding Halogen headlights, instrument panel bulbs, and Xenon headlights, unless damaged by outside influence), seat covers, carpeting and replacement of rubber wiper blade inserts, replaced for wear and tear, are covered up to one year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Batteries are covered 100% parts and labor for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, for defects in material or workmanship.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material and workmanship, are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited New Vehicle Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

Emergency repairs

If an emergency repair was performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility, keep all receipts, repair orders, and parts removed from your Volkswagen.

You will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer.

A statement of the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer, together with the paid receipts, repair orders, and replaced parts must be submitted to your authorized Volkswagen dealer in order to be considered for reimbursement. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services

If you are not satisfied with the warranty service you receive, you may wish to follow the steps set forth ⇒ page 30.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a **mediation** and **arbitration** service for the resolution of warranty and other product related disputes. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, you may call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

We encourage you to use BBB AUTO LINE before you decide to seek remedies in a court of law.

In some states you may be required to use BBB AUTO LINE before you can assert your rights in a court of law.

The BBB AUTO LINE service is free of charge and permits you to present your case without an attorney. Additional information on BBB AUTO LINE can be found ⇒ page 30. ◀

What is not covered

Tires

Tires are not covered by this warranty, but are separately warranted by the tire manufacturer. To assist you in obtaining related Warranty information, a list of tire manufacturers and addresses is provided at the end of this booklet. Verify with the tire manufacturer what is covered under their warranty. ◀

Maintenance services and mechanical adjustments

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants, fluids, or air conditioner refrigerant charge, unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material or workmanship are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). This warranty does not cover wheel alignment or tire balancing. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems; or
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations; or
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet.

Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, floodwater, windstorms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Glass

This warranty does not cover glass breakage, unless due to a defect in manufacturer's material or workmanship. ◀

Odometer tampering

These warranties do not cover repairs on a Volkswagen on which the odometer has been altered or on which the actual mileage cannot readily be determined.

If the speedometer unit is replaced, a "Speedometer Replacement Record" must be filled out by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging[1].

This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state. ◀

[1] Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state.

Other terms

This warranty is issued by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (VWoA). This warranty does not apply to Volkswagen vehicles or parts and accessories not imported or distributed by Volkswagen.

This warranty, the Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation, the Limited Powertrain Warranty and the Emissions Warranties are the only express warranties made in connection with the sale of this Volkswagen. Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so, the above limitation may not apply to you.

Volkswagen of America, Inc. reserves the right to make improvements or change the design of any Volkswagen model at anytime with no obligation to make similar changes on vehicles previously sold.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Limited Powertrain Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for **5 years or 60,000 miles** whichever occurs first, from the date the vehicle was first placed in service.

This warranty does not apply to vehicles used for commercial purposes such as taxi, limousine and rental vehicles.

If a commercial vehicle is sold to a subsequent retail owner, this warranty still does not apply.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

The Limited Powertrain Warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship for the following Volkswagen parts and components:

Engine

Cylinder block and all internal parts, cylinder head and all internal parts, valve train, spur belt, flywheel, oil pump, water pump, manifolds, all related seals and gaskets.

Transmission

Case and all internal parts, torque converter, all related seals and gaskets.

Drivetrain

Differential and all internal parts, drive shafts and constant velocity (CV) joints. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected only under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company car", on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

The Limited Powertrain Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

What is not covered

Maintenance services

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service. Scheduled maintenance services are described in your Volkswagen Maintenance Booklet.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants or fluids unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems;
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations;
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen;
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Wear and tear items

This warranty does not cover the replacement of any powertrain components that wear as a result of normal use or deterioration. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions which are due to failure to follow recommended maintenance requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet. Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of service or repair orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, tree sap, stones, flood water, windstorm or other similar occurrences. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, or out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging[2].

The "Other Terms" Presented in The Limited New Vehicle Warranty Also Apply to This Warranty. ◀

[2] Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for 12 years without mileage limitation.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair or replacement of body sheet metal panels that have been perforated by rust. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. The authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part.

Tips

Your Volkswagen is corrosion protected at the factory. You do not need to purchase rust-proofing when you buy your Volkswagen in order to keep this warranty in effect. ◀

What is not covered

Surface corrosion without perforation

Repairs are covered under this warranty only if there is rust-through condition in the body sheet metal not caused by outside influences. ◀

Perforation of sheet metal due to accident, lack of care, or failure to repair or modifications to the paint/painted surface

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the failure to promptly repair paint damage, damaged undercoating, or surface corrosion.

It does not cover damage due to failure to wash or otherwise regularly care for the vehicle as described in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual.

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from unrepaired collision damage or improper collision repair. ◀

Special exclusion for any aluminum portions that may be part of your Volkswagen vehicle

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation due to failure to perform body repairs in accordance with Volkswagen's specified repair procedures, including use of **non-aluminum alloy parts.**

It does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the use of any inferior rustproofing agent or method.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealership will do its best to match your vehicles original finish, but this warranty does not cover the cost of painting the entire vehicle solely for paint matching. ◀

Environmental damage

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, flood water, wind storms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Corrosion perforation because of failure to rustproof when collision damage is repaired

Body parts that have been repaired or newly installed after a collision must be treated with a rustproofing agent that is compatible with Volkswagen's own factory corrosion protection. If you fail to have your vehicle treated in this way after a collision, Volkswagen will not be responsible for the repair of any resulting rust-through.

Tips

The "Other Terms" presented in the Limited New Vehicle Warranty also apply to this warranty. ◀

24 Hour Roadside Assistance

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program is your assurance that help will be there should your Volkswagen have a mechanical breakdown under normal[3] driving conditions. Whether this happens thousands of miles from home (anywhere in the U.S. or Canada), or in your own driveway, you only have to call one toll-free number and help will be on the way.

1 (800) 411-6688

To identify yourself as a member, simply quote your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This number can be found on your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance membership card, or you can find it on the driver's side of the dashboard visible through the windshield. 24 Hour Roadside Assistance is available to you for the **first four years of your new vehicle ownership.**

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Program includes the following emergency roadside services: emergency towing, battery jump start, flat tire change, emergency fuel service, lock-out service and extrication/winch service.

Other services and benefits include: trip routing services and trip interruption benefits throughout the U.S. and Canada.

Please refer to your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Owner's Guide for specific details on the services provided. ◀

[3] Coverage does not include service to any vehicle willfully driven into non-regularly travelled areas such as unused roads, open fields, construction sites, beaches, mud-filled driveways/laneways/concession roads, vacant lots, or any other area that is inaccessible or hazardous for the Service Operator's vehicle to reach.

Federal Emissions Warranties

General

The Emissions Warranties set out on the following pages are warranties which the manufacturer is required by law to furnish to you at the time you take delivery of your new vehicle. These coverages may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

The warranties required by federal laws apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen) for sale in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The warranties required by the State of California law apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale and registration in the State of California.

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts and the States of Vermont and Maine have adopted warranty requirements that are identical to the California warranties.

The owner of a vehicle certified for sale and registered in California, Massachusetts, Vermont or Maine may, therefore, have warranty rights under both Federal and State mandated emissions warranties. The state of New York has adopted emissions warranty requirements identical to California mandated emissions warranties ONLY for vehicles equipped to meet California's Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV) emissions requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood.

The owner of a new Volkswagen vehicle imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale in states other than California, Massachusetts, Vermont, Maine or New York (as set forth in the above paragraph) has rights only under the Federal Emissions Warranty.

Please read these warranties carefully. If you have any questions concerning the applicability of each warranty to your vehicle or want to know whether a particular repair will be performed free of charge pursuant to these warranties, please write to or telephone:

Customer CARE
Volkswagen of America, Inc.
3800 Hamlin Road
Auburn Hills, MI 48326
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987◀

Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty

For 2 Years or 24,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen), the authorized United States importer of Volkswagen vehicles, warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform at the time of sale with all applicable regulations of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations for 2 years after the date of first use or delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee or until the vehicle has been driven 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to EPA emission standards. The following parts or systems listed, if defective, could cause the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations:

- Evaporative Emission Control System: including fuel tank, filler cap, filler neck and leak detection pump
- Exhaust System: including manifolds, turbochargers, catalytic converters, down pipes and particulate traps
- EGR System: including valves, pipes and coolers
- Fuel Injection System: including control modules, sensors, switches, valves and fuel lines
- Intake System: including camshaft adjuster units, sensors, manifold, pipes and control valves
- Ignition System: including coils and sensors
- OBD System: including Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) and Data Link Connector
- PCV System: including control valves and pipes
- Secondary Air Injection System: including air pump and control valves
- Emission-related hoses, gaskets, clamps and other accessories used with the above components

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge. ◀

For 8 Years or 80,000 miles

If the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, your Volkswagen dealer will repair or replace free of charge the following major emission control components only:

- Catalytic Converter
- Engine Electronic Control Module
- On Board Diagnostic Device ◀

Federal Emissions Performance Warranty

For 2 years or 24,000 miles and 8 years or 80,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc., (Volkswagen) warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee of a **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle and any subsequent purchaser or lessee of the vehicle that if the following conditions are met, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada will remedy any nonconformity, as determined below, free of charge, under the following conditions:

- the vehicle fails to conform at any time during 24 months or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first, to applicable emission inspection standards as determined by an EPA Approved State Inspection and Maintenance Test (I/M), or
- if the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, the vehicle fails an I/M Test resulting from a malfunction of a catalytic converter, engine electronic control module or on- board diagnostic device (OBD), and
- the failure of the I/M Test requires the vehicle owner to bear any penalty or other sanction, including the denial of the right to use the vehicle under local, state or federal law, and
- the vehicle has been maintained and operated in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions for proper maintenance and use. ◀

Performance Warranty claim approval

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed an I/M Test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim.

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim.

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure.

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or workmanship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance.

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely ▶

manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or

- the use of an uncertified part or to noncompliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use, which is not related to the I/M Test failure ◀

Additional Information About Your Federal Emissions Warranties

Warranty period

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original retail purchaser or original lessee, and any subsequent purchaser or lessee or, if the vehicle is first placed in service as a demonstrator or company demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀

Proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. Time and mileage intervals, at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary from model to model.

Volkswagen recommends you keep a record of scheduled maintenance by having your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by the authorized Volkswagen dealer or other service facility that performed the maintenance. If you perform the maintenance yourself, keep all documentation as proof you have performed the maintenance at the approximate time or mileage intervals recommended, that you have used proper parts, and that you were able to perform the maintenance properly.

Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the instruction for proper maintenance may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle according to the instructions or failure to keep a record of maintenance.

Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen Parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effectiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure. ◀

EPA certified replacement parts

Maintenance, repair, or replacement of emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive service and repair establishment or qualified individual using Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) certified replacement parts. ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses, which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. See "Emergency Repairs" for further details. ◀

Parts not scheduled for inspection or replacements

Any part, which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance booklet, is covered by this warranty for the full warranty period. ◀

Scheduled part inspection or replacement

A part scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is covered for the duration of these warranties.

A part installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next scheduled replacement interval or for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Damage to non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀

Emergency repairs

Emergency repairs performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed, and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer. The maximum reimbursement allowable is an amount equal to the cost if your authorized Volkswagen dealer had completed the repair(s). Reimbursement will be considered when you submit the following items to your authorized Volkswagen dealer:

- A statement explaining the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer,
- Paid receipt(s),
- Repair order(s), and
- Part(s) removed from your Volkswagen. ◀

Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, including loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Tips

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this booklet under the title "Customer CARE".

- You may obtain further information regarding the Emissions Performance Warranty or report violation of the terms of the Emissions Performance Warranty by contacting: Manager, Certification and Compliance Division (6405J), Warranty Claims, Environmental Protection Agency, Ariel Rios Building, 1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20460 ◀

California Emissions Warranties

California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement:

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

Your warranty rights and obligations

The California Air Resources Board is pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your **model year 2006** vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Volkswagen must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exits, Volkswagen will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

Manufacturer's warranty coverage:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

If your vehicle fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test , all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Volkswagen to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your short-term Emission Control System DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first

If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your long-term Emission Control System DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV)** requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Owner's warranty responsibilities:

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's Maintenance booklet. Volkswagen recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Volkswagen cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Volkswagen dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Volkswagen may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES, YOU SHOULD CONTACT VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC., CUSTOMER CARE AT 1 (800) 822-8987, OR THE CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD AT P.O. BOX 8001, EL MONTE, CA 91734–2302. ◀

California Emissions Control System Defect Warranties

For 3 years / 50,000 miles

General

Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen), warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen and certified for sale and registered in California:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform with all applicable requirements of the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which cause the vehicle to fail to conform with CARB requirements, including any defect which would cause the vehicle's on-board malfunction indicator to illuminate, for 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to California emission standards.

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with California regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge.

These coverage's may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty. ◀

For 7 years / 70,000 Miles Covering Certain Emission System Parts

The following emissions control system parts marked with "yes" are covered for 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first:

	Jetta, Passat 2.0T FSI	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.5L	Touareg VR6	Touareg 4.2L
Camshaft adjuster unit	no	no	yes	yes
Camshaft adjuster control housing	no	no	no	yes
Fuel tank	yes	yes	yes	yes
Turbocharger	yes	no	no	no
Intake manifold	no	no	yes	yes
Engine control module[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Exhaust manifold	yes	no	yes	no

	Jetta, Passat 2.0T FSI	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.5L	Touareg VR6	Touareg 4.2L
Catalytic converter[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Transmission control module	yes (Jetta only)	no	no	no
Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (covered only when equipped with Driver Information Display)[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Passenger compartment auxiliary heater	no	no	yes	yes
Throttle valve control unit	no	no	no	yes

a) Also covered by the Federal Emissions Warranty for 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

California Emissions Performance Warranty

California maintains a mandatory emissions Inspection and Maintenance program (I/M) requiring motor vehicles to be tested at regular intervals. If your vehicle fails to pass an I/M test performed by a Licensed I/M station pursuant to the California Inspection and Maintenance Program within 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada will perform free of charge any repairs necessary for the vehicle to pass the smog test.

After the 3 year / 50,000 miles performance warranty has expired, an I/M test failure due to a defect in a part which is warranted for 7 years / 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first, is covered. These repairs include diagnosis, replacement, repair, and adjustments.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle** (P-ZEV) requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an I/M test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Performance Warranty claim approval

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed a California I/M test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim.

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim.

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure.

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or workmanship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance.

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to:

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or
- the use of an uncertified part or to noncompliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use, which is not related to the I/M Test failure ◀

Additional Information About Your California Emissions Warranties

Warranty period

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original retail purchaser or original lessee, and any subsequent purchaser or lessee or, if the vehicle is first placed in service as a demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀

Proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. Time and mileage intervals at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary from model to model.

Volkswagen recommends you keep a record of scheduled maintenance performed by having your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, and that you provide these records to the new owner whenever you sell the vehicle.

Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the instruction for proper maintenance may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle according to the instructions or failure to keep a record of maintenance.

Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen Parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effectiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. See "Emergency Repairs" for further details. ◀

Parts not scheduled for inspection or replacement

Any part, which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance booklet, is covered by this warranty for the full warranty period. Any such parts repaired or replaced under warranty are warranted for the remaining warranty period. ◀

Scheduled part inspection or replacement

A part scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is covered for the duration of these warranties.

A part installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next scheduled replacement interval for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Damage to non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀

Emergency repairs

Emergency repairs performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed, and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer. The maximum reimbursement allowable is an amount equal to the cost if your authorized Volkswagen dealer had completed the repair(s). Reimbursement will be considered when you submit the following items to your authorized Volkswagen dealer:

- A statement explaining the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer,
- Paid receipt(s),
- Repair order(s), and
- Part(s) removed from your Volkswagen. ◀

Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, such as loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Tips

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this booklet under the title "Customer CARE". ◀

Customer CARE

Dealer assistance

If you have questions about the service you have received, we suggest that you first discuss them with the service personnel at your authorized Volkswagen dealer. You may want to speak to the Service Manager or directly to the owner of the dealership.

It is their business to be concerned about your satisfaction and goodwill. Since they are closest to the situation, they are in the best position to quickly resolve any concerns you may have. ◀

When to notify the manufacturer

Your satisfaction with our product is very important to us, and we would like to make certain that we have had the opportunity to work with you and your dealer to resolve your concerns.

If your concerns are not resolved to your satisfaction by the dealer, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc., immediately by calling our toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you prefer to write, please use the following address:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309

You can also contact us using our Internet address:

www.vw.com.

Simply click on "Contact Volkswagen of America, Inc."

When you call or write, please provide the following information:

- **Your name, address and telephone number**
- **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)**
- **Vehicle type and mileage**
- **Dealer's name and location**
- **Nature of complaint or problem**
- **Copies of repair orders (retain originals for your records) or pertinent documents if you are writing to us**

A Customer CARE Representative will gather and carefully review all facts relating to your request for assistance. After this review is completed, the Customer CARE Representative will inform you of any assistance that the company will be able to provide.

Please note that as part of our continuing effort to maintain the highest quality of service to our Customers, supervisors will occasionally monitor the quality of telephone calls between our Customers and Representatives. We hope you understand our interest in providing the best possible service. ◀

Repairs not covered by warranty

In some circumstances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer financial assistance toward repairs or expenses not covered by Volkswagen of America, Inc.'s Limited New Vehicle Warranties.

In certain instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may pay for such repairs in accordance with the terms of service action campaigns it will conduct from time to time. In the event of a service action, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will notify you by mail and request that you bring your vehicle to your nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer for repair free of charge.

If you have not recently changed your address and Volkswagen of America, Inc. has your current address on file, you will receive notification automatically. If you are concerned that you may not have received notice concerning a particular service action, please check with your dealer to determine whether your vehicle is eligible for any repair free of charge.

In other instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer assistance with a repair beyond warranty on a case-by-case basis. If you believe that your vehicle needs a repair not covered by warranty which Volkswagen of America, Inc. should pay for in part or in whole, please discuss the request with your dealer. If you are not satisfied with your dealer's decision, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc. Customer CARE by telephone or in writing. Your request should provide the vehicle identification number, the mileage, maintenance history and an explanation of why you believe that the repair should be performed free of charge. Your request should be accompanied by all available maintenance and repair records which you have retained. A Customer CARE Representative will review your request and advise you of our decision. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services

If your dealer or Customer CARE Representative does not resolve your product concern to your satisfaction or if you do not wish to present your concern to either of them, you may take advantage of the mediation and arbitration services of the Better Business Bureau. This program is called BBB AUTO LINE and is available to you free of charge, on a nationwide basis as long as your vehicle has been driven less than 24,000 miles and has not been in use for more than 2 years. Not every claim is eligible; there are some age and mileage limitations, so please check with your local Better Business Bureau ("BBB") regarding your claim.

The BBB AUTO LINE program has two parts. The first part is mediation. Mediation means that the BBB staff will facilitate negotiations between the parties in an effort to bring your claim to a mutually acceptable resolution. You do not have to participate in mediation if you would rather proceed immediately to arbitration. Arbitration is the other part of BBB AUTO LINE. Arbitration is a process by which an impartial person makes a decision on your claim. The arbitrators are not connected with the automobile industry and serve on a voluntary basis.

If you do not agree with the mediated resolution and/or have opted to arbitrate, an arbitration hearing will be scheduled. You may attend the hearing in person, be represented by an attorney, bring witnesses, and give supporting evidence. Instead of appearing personally, you may request a written or even a telephone arbitration hearing.

If you wish to use BBB AUTO LINE, please call the following toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 955-5100

When you call the local office of the "BBB", its staff will need the following information:

- **Your name, address and telephone number**
- **Make, model and Vehicle Identification Number of your vehicle (VIN)**
- **Delivery date and current mileage**
- **Nature of complaint or problem**

The "BBB" will follow-up on your complaint; and if it cannot be mediated, they will arrange an arbitration hearing.

A decision will be made by the arbitrator within 3 days of the hearing (typically a decision is made 40 days from the date you filed your claim with "BBB").

You then have the opportunity to accept or reject the decision. If you accept the decision, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will be bound by the decision and fulfill its obligation within the time specified by the arbitrator.

If you reject the decision:

1 - You are free to pursue other legal remedies available under state and federal law.

2 - The manufacturer will not have to comply with any part of the decision.

California residents

Additional information relating to your rights to arbitrate warranty claims under the BBB AUTO LINE Arbitration Program is provided in the Owner Information about Consumer Protection Laws booklet which is presented to you by your dealer when you take delivery of your new vehicle. ◀

Service Publications

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

Updated service information you can obtain

Volkswagen monitors product performance in the field and regularly sends dealers the latest service information about Volkswagen vehicles. Now you too, can get these bulletins.

Bulletins cover a wide variety of subjects: the proper use and care of your car, costly repairs, inexpensive repairs or adjustments which, if done early, may avoid costly future repairs. Some bulletins describe repairs about new or unexpected conditions. Others describe improved repair procedures or parts improvements. All of this information can also help a qualified technician better service your vehicle.

Most bulletins apply to conditions affecting a small number of vehicles. Your dealer or a qualified technician may have to determine if a specific bulletin applies to your vehicle. You can order Volkswagen bulletins, Volkswagen repair information and Volkswagen Owner's Literature 24 hours / 7 days a week on the Internet from the Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.vw.ddsltd.com

Or if you prefer, you can contact our literature distribution service at:

Telephone: 1 (800) 544-8021
Fax: 1 (800) 572–1438 ◀

What you will also find on the website

- A list of Volkswagen bulletins for 1985 and later model years, covering all North American specification Volkswagen models.
- Ordering and pricing information on how to buy specific bulletins.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Repair Manuals on paper format, CD ROM or DVD.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Electrical Wiring Diagrams.
- Owner's Manuals
- Maintenance Booklets
- Warranty Manuals
- Sound System Manuals

⚠ WARNING

These bulletins are intended for qualified technicians. They are not meant for the CASUAL do-it-yourselfer. Qualified technicians have the equipment, tools, safety instructions, and know-how to do a job properly and safely. Improperly performed repairs or maintenance can adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, possibly leading to accident or injury. They may also impair the economy, durability or reliability of your vehicle and may void the warranty of your car. If you are not sure that you can perform a job properly and safely, you should not risk trying to do so. ◀

Tire Manufacturers

List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act of 1975 and regulations issued pursuant to the act require that a tire warranty pamphlet be placed in every new vehicle prior to sale.

To assist you in obtaining the related warranty information, the following list of tire manufacturers and addresses is being provided.

Tire Manufacturers

Dunlop Tire Corp.
1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
Tel.: 1 (800) 548–4714

Bridgestone/Firestone Inc.
1 Bridgestone Park
Nashville, TN 37214
Tel.: 1 (800) 356-4644

Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co.
1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
Tel.: 1 (800) 321-2136

Continental General
1800 Continental Blvd.
Charlotte, NC 28273
Tel.: 1 (800) 847–3349

Michelin Tire Corp.
P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602-9001
Tel.: 1 (800) 887–0662

Pirelli Tires North America
300 George Street, 5th Floor
New Haven, CT 06511
Tel.: 1 (800) 747-3554

Uniroyal Goodrich Tire Co.
P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602-9001
Tel.: 1 (800) 521-9796 ◀

Afterword

It has always been Volkswagen's policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

All rights reserved.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Text and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without consent of Volkswagen de México.

Printed in Mexico

© 2005 Volkswagen de México

For the sake of environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

1.2 USA Warranty | Touareg, Golf, Jetta, New Beetle
Print status: 05.2005
| Art.-Nr.: 261.555.WAT.23 | Ausgabe: englisch Nordamerika 05.2005



2.1 Safety first

Jetta

Model year 2006

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to USA Models only".

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section.**

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Safe driving 2

General notes 2
Proper occupant seating positions 4
Pedal area 9
Stowing luggage 10
Reporting safety defects 12

Safety belts 13

General notes 13
Why safety belts? 15
Safety belts 19
Safety belt pretensioners 25

Airbag system 27

Important things to know 27
Front airbag system – the basics 31
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 39
Side airbags 44
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags 48

Child safety 51

Child Seats 51
Installing child restraint with a safety belt . 60
Additional Information 64
Lower anchorages (Canada vehicles: lower universal anchorage bars) 67
Installing a CRS using the "LATCH" system 69
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 70

Alphabetical index 71

Safe driving

General notes

Dear Volkswagen Driver

Please remember - safety first!

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings which you should read and heed for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that you follow the suggestions and heed the WARNINGS in this Booklet.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

It's in your interest and in the interest of all your passengers.

- **Additional important information that you need to know for your own safety and the safety of your passengers and others is in the other Booklets of your Owner's Literature.**
- **This Owner's Literature must always remain with your Volkswagen whenever you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.** ◀

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident. The following is a listing of just a few of the safety features in your Volkswagen:

- sophisticated safety belts for all seating positions,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats and outboard rear seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners for the front outboard seating positions, for the outboard rear seating positions in combination with optional rear side airbags.
- safety belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags for the front seats,
- Side Curtain Protection ™ airbags,
- LATCH anchorages for child restraints (in Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars" are used to described the system)
- head restraints for each seating position, and
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features can't work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used!

This Booklet provides important information about why these features are important, how they work to help protect you and your passengers and how they must be adjusted and used to get the greatest benefit and reduce the likelihood of injury. The Booklet also contains important WARNINGS that you and your passengers must always read and heed in order to help reduce the risk of personal injury. ▶

Safety is everybody's responsibility! ◀

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job. Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving always:

– Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.

– Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.

– Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.

– Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇒page 10.

– Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.

– Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.

– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.

– Make sure to use the right child restraint and use it correctly to protect children ⇒page 51.

– Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇒page 4.

– Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇒page 13. ◀

What impairs driving safety

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇒⚠. Therefore:

– Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using the sound system or a cellular telephone

– Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).

– Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.

– Always adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.

– Take frequent breaks on long trips. Don't drive for more than two hours at a stretch.

– Do not drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used. ◀

Proper occupant seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

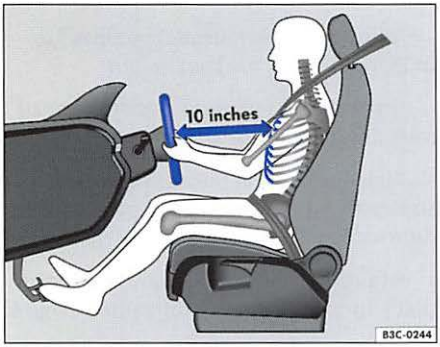


Fig. 1 The correct distance between driver and steering wheel

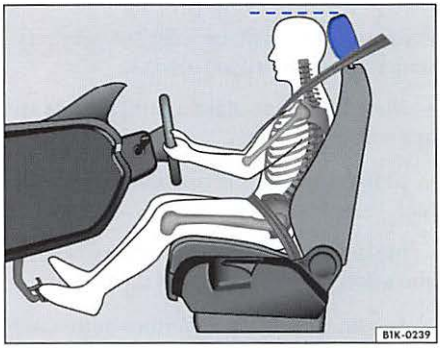


Fig. 2 Correct head restraint position for driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the driver to the following position:

– Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇒⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇒fig. 1. If not possible, see your authorized Volkswagen dealership about adaptive equipment.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.

– Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒fig. 2.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒page 13.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver seat ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
- Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇒page 51.Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ◀

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible. There must be a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between the breastbone and the instrument panel ⇒⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but not lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒page 7.

– Keep both feet flat on the floor in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒page 13.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger seat ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
- Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
- Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.
- Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇒page 51. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ◀

Proper seating position for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

– Make sure that the front seatbacks are securely latched in the upright position.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eye level ⇒page 7. . If a passenger is sitting in the rear center seating position, this compact head restraint is not height adjustable, but it must always been raised whenever the center rear seating position is occupied.

– Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇒page 13.

– Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇒page 51.

⚠ WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

- Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
- Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
- Always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection. ◀

Proper adjustment of head restraints for outboard seating positions

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

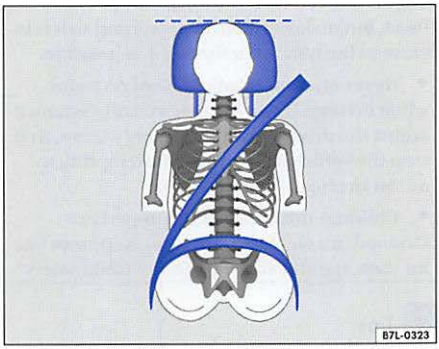


Fig. 3 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the front

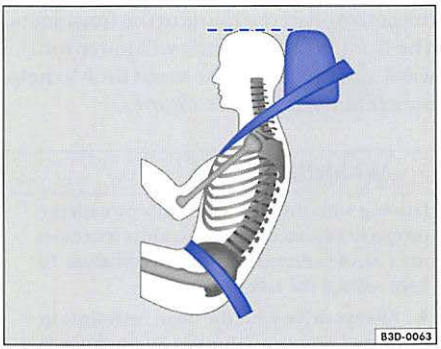


Fig. 4 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the restraint is level with the top of your head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒fig. 3 and ⇒fig. 4. Always raise the head restraint for the rear center seating position whenever the seat is occupied.

Adjusting head restraints ⇒booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.**
- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**
- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Each head restraint must be adjusted according to occupants' size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.**
- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒page 51, "Child safety".** ◀

Active head restraints for the front seats

During a rear end collision the passengers in the vehicle are pressed against the seat backrest. The resulting pressure that the body exerts against the backrest activates the active head restraints in the front seats. The front head restraints will move forward and upward at the same time to help reduce the risk of neck injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted. Remember that the rear center head restraint is not height adjustable and that it must be raised up all the way whenever the center rear seat is occupied.**
- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**
- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Each head restraint must be adjusted according to occupants' size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.

- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size** ⇒page 51, "Child safety".

Tips

The active front head restraints can also activate when a passenger pushes up against the backrest with enough force (for example if you let yourself just fall into the seat abruptly) or if the head restraint is pushed from behind. This is normal and will not damage the head restraint. It will go back to its original position right away. ◀

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never allow anyone to assume an improper seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇒⚠.

The following lists only some of the positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will help make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the rear seat ▶

- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never ride in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.** ◀

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

- **Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!**
- **Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.** ◀

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

– Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇒⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
- Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control. ◀

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Always place and properly secure heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Stow heavy luggage as low as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇒page 11.

– –Make sure that the rear seat back is securely latched in place.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle handle differently.
- Please observe information on safe driving ⇒page 2. ▶

⚠ WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  - Close all windows,
  - Close the power roof*,
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, the power roof*, all windows and rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid or window becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions..

Note

Make sure that the heating wires in the rear window cannot be scraped and damaged by items in the vehicle.

Tips

Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Do not cover ventilation slots because this can prevent stale air from escaping the vehicle. ◀

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇒page 10, "Loading the luggage compartment".

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10 lbs. (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

⚠ WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
- When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down. ◀

Reporting safety defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect, which could cause a crash, injury, or death, you should inform the NHTSA immediately. You should also notify Volkswagen of America, Inc. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

Address of NHTSA

Tel.: 1-888-DASH-2-DOT (1-888-327-4236)

From 8:00 AM to 10:00 PM EST, Monday through Friday

Or have a look at:

http://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/ivoq/

and print out the web form and fax it to (202) 366-7882

Or mail it to:

U.S. Department of Transportation,
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration,
Office of Defects Investigation,
NSA-10.01, 400 7th Street, SW
Washington, D.C. 20590

Applicable to Canada only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, injury or death, you should inform Transport Canada immediately. You should also notify Volkswagen Canada, Inc.

Address of Transport Canada

To contact Transport Canada, you may either call Transport Canada at:

Tel.: Phone: (800) 333-0510 (only from Canada)
Tel.: Phone: (613) 998-8616 (Ottawa region)

Or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, ON
K1B 3V9 ◀

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!



Fig. 5 Occupants wearing safety belts

This Booklet explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

– Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and warnings in this booklet.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving ⇒fig. 5.**
- **Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy. ◀**

Number of seats

Your vehicle has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.**
- **Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.**
- **Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint. ◀**

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 6 Safety belt warning light

Before driving off, always:

– Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.

– Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.

– Protect your children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning sound and see the following message displayed: **Please fasten seatbelt!**

The warning light / display and the warning sound will go out/stop when the driver and front passenger correctly fastens the safety belt.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning tone will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning light in the instrument cluster if either the driver and front seat passenger has not fastened their safety belt. As soon as the driver and front seat passenger have fastened their safety belts, the warning tone and the warning light will stop.

If both the driver and front seat passenger have not buckled-up within about 24 seconds after the warning tone has stopped, the warning tone will sound again for about 6 seconds. The warning tone will sound repeatedly for about 6 seconds at 24 second intervals until both the driver and front passenger have buckled-up. The safety belt warning system is active for about 5 minutes and during this time the warning light in the instrument cluster will stay on.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

Note

If the safety belt extender ⇒page 19 is left attached to the safety belt buckle, the safety belt warning system will sense that the safety belt for that seat is being used and the warning tone will not sound even though the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used. ◀

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

Frontal crashes subject people riding in vehicles to very strong forces.

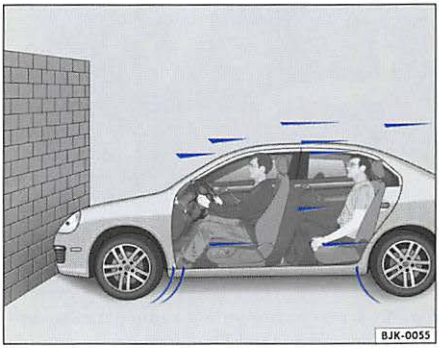


Fig. 7 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall.

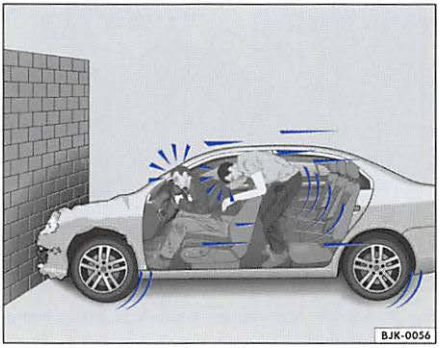


Fig. 8 The vehicle crashes into the wall.

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy "kinetic energy."

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy has to be "absorbed" in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of the vehicle are not using safety belts ⇒fig. 7, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇒fig. 8.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs. or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was traveling just before the crash. Of course the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions. ◀

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts.



Fig. 9 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 10 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇒fig. 9. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash, regardless of whether a seating position has an airbag or not

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇒fig. 10. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger. ◀

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 11 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver.

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in collisions, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crumple zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving in a collision. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Volkswagen. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained! ◀

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

– Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this Booklet.

– Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- **Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.**
- **For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the body.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Never wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the correct use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a collision. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work correctly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇒booklet 3.4 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Cleaning and Protection." ◀

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!

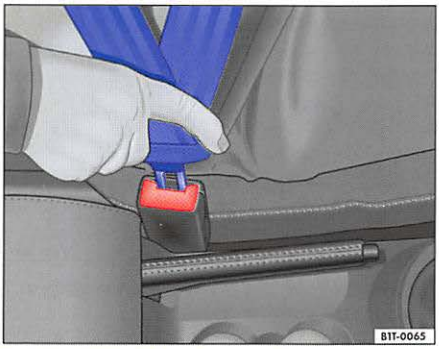


Fig. 12 Belt buckle and tongue for the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇒page 20.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒page 4.

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the safety belt ⇒⚠.

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒⚠.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle for your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒page 19, fig. 12.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in a collision. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Belt pretensioner

The retractors for the driver, front passenger, and rear outboard seating positions are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇒page 39.

Switchable locking feature

Every safety belt except for the one on the driver seat is equipped with a switchable locking feature that must be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇒page 60.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident .

- **Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.**
- **Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used ⇒booklet 3.1. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.**
- **Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.**
- **A passenger who is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.**
- **Always lock the safety belt retractor mechanism when you secure a child seat in the vehicle ⇒page 60.** ◀

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

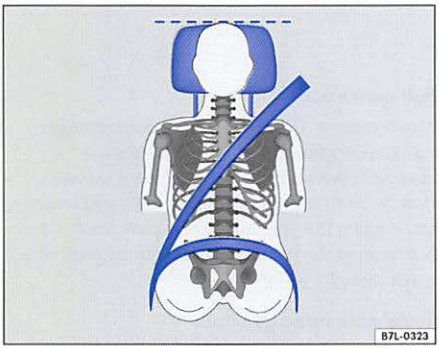


Fig. 13 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the front

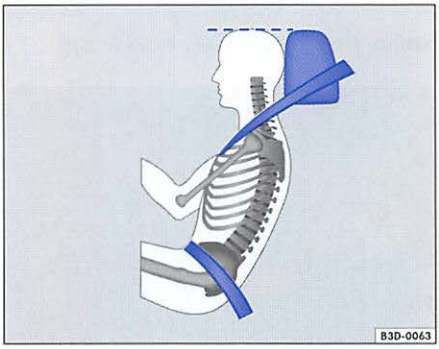


Fig. 14 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the side

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

- belt height adjustment for the front seats
- front seat height adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body ⇒page 20, fig. 13.**
- **The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇒page 20, fig. 14. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.**
- **A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒page 17. ◀**

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 15 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇒page 20.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒page 4.

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt.

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒fig. 15.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle for your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒⚠.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒page 17, "Important safety instructions about safety belts".** ◀

Safety belt extender

A safety belt extender is available if a safety belt is too short for the driver or a passenger.

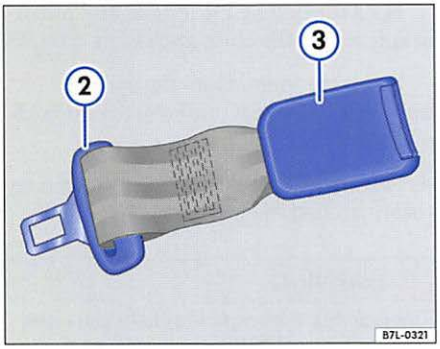


Fig. 16 Safety belt extender

If a safety belt is too short to correctly fit you or one of your passengers, even when the safety belt is pulled out all the way, you can use a safety belt extender ⇒fig. 16. Never use the safety belt extender for any other purpose - including the attachment of a child restraint.

The extender adds about 8 inches (200 mm) to the safety belt. When it is not required, always remove the extender and stow it safely. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance if an extender is re-quired.

How to fasten the safety belt extender properly ⇒page 23, "Fastening the safety belt extender".

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the safety belt extender increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **Using a safety belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury, especially in a collision. Only use when the safety belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the correct seating position. Remove and stow safely when not needed.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender if you can fasten the safety belt without it.**
- **Never use more than one extender with a safety belt. The use of more than one extender can change the way the safety belt passes over the body and can cause serious injury.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave the safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt latch when it is not needed and being used because the airbag control module will not receive the correct signal from the safety belt latch and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.**
- **Never use a safety belt extender from another automobile manufacturer or automotive parts store on your Volkswagen.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender you obtained for your vehicle for any other vehicle, regardless of make, model or model year.**
- **A driver or passenger who is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒page 17, "Important safety instructions about safety belts".**

Note

- Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will cause the safety belt pretensioner and front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions that would normally trigger these systems earlier in the collision to help protect an unrestrained front seat occupant.
- If the safety belt extender ⇒page 19 is left attached to the safety belt buckle, the safety belt warning system will sense that the safety belt for that seat is being used and the warning tone will not sound even though the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used. ◀

Fastening the safety belt extender

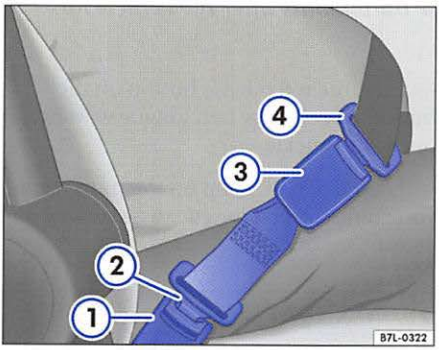


Fig. 17 Attached safety belt extender to the vehicle's safety belt

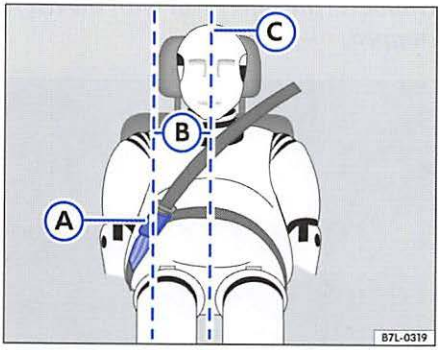


Fig. 18 Measurements

Before fastening the safety belt extender always adjust the front seat and head restraints correctly.

– Insert the metal tongue of the extender into the respective safety belt buckle ⇒fig. 17 ①.

– Grasp the belt tongue of the safety belt ④ and pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.

– Insert the safety belt tongue ④ into the buckle of the extender ③ and push down until it is securely locked with an audible click.

– Make sure the safety belt or the extender is not twisted.

– Pull belt to make sure it is properly latched.

① Safety belt buckle ⇒fig. 17
② Tongue of extender ⇒fig. 17
③ Buckle of extender ⇒fig. 17
④ Vehicle safety belt ⇒fig. 17

Ⓐ Front edge of buckle ⇒fig. 18
Ⓑ Distance of buckle and body centerline, (less than 6 inches (15 cm) ⇒fig. 18
Ⓒ Body centerline ⇒fig. 18

⚠ WARNING

Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **Never use the extender unless it is physically required in order to wear the vehicles safety belt.**
- **Never use the extender if the distance ⇒fig. 18 Ⓑ between the front edge of the extender buckle Ⓐ and the occupant's body centerline Ⓒ to be less than 6 inches (15 cm).**
- **Always make sure the safety belt tongue is inserted into the buckle for the seating position that belongs to the seat where the extender is being used.**
- **Attaching the safety belt to the buckle for another seat could reduce safety belt effectiveness and cause injury.** ◀

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.



Fig. 19 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

– Push the red release button on the buckle ⇒fig. 19. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇒⚠.

– Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with manual safety belt height adjustment

Adjusting safety belt height

Use the safety belt height adjustment to change belt position on the shoulder.

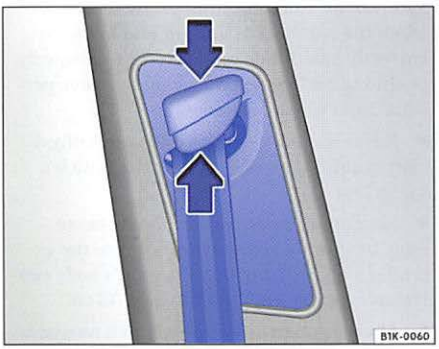


Fig. 20 Location of manual belt height adjuster

The safety belt height adjustment for the front seating positions can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt so that it is positioned correctly.

– Push the upper attachment up and hold it in this position.

– Slide the belt and the upper attachment up or down until it is positioned over the center of the shoulder ⇒page 20.

– Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is correctly engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒page 17. ◀

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇒⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒page 17.** ◀

Safety belt pretensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In a frontal collision, the safety belts for the front and rear outboard seating positions are tightened up automatically.*

The retractors for the driver and front passenger positions (rear outboard seating positions only in combination with optional side airbags for the outboard rear seating positions) are equipped with belt pretensioners. Sensors activate the belt pretensioners in frontal collisions when deceleration is high enough. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

The belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

The belt pretensioner can be activated in a frontal, side or rearend collision. It will not activate in a rollover in which the side airbags do not deploy.

ⓘ Note

Never let the belt remain over a rear seat back that has been folded forward. The rear belt pretensioner* can be activated unnecessarily in a collision and will then have to be replaced.

ⓘ Tips

- When the safety belt pretensioner is activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- Applicable safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
- Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Volkswagen perform this service for you. ◀

Service and disposal of belt pretensioners

The belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belt and installed at the front and rear outboard* seating positions on your vehicle. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent that system from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a belt pretensioner

⚠ WARNING (continued)

from activating when needed or activating unexpectedly:

- **The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.**
- **Safety belt systems including belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.**
- **For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified technician who has a Volkswagen approved repair manual, the training and special equipment necessary.** ◀

Airbag system

Important things to know

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly.

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving always:

– Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇒page 4.

– Adjust the front passenger seat properly ⇒page 5.

– Wear safety belts properly ⇒page 13.

– Always properly use the correct child restraint to protect children ⇒page 51.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇒page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions".For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇒booklet 3.1 "Front seats".

It's especially important that children be properly restrained ⇒page 51, "Child safety".

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Volkswagen work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer, or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. Front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions.. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not neces- ▶

sarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇒page 13, "Safety belts".

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**
- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇒page 19, "Safety belts".**
- **Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.**
- **Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.**
- **Never ride with the backrest reclined.**
- **Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇒page 4.**
- **Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.**

⚠ WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- **Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.**
- **Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle. ◀**

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

– Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇒page 51.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the Requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒page 53.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
- will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇒page 39, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇒page 53), or
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** lights up in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side will deploy if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇒page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions".

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇒page 39, "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light".

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation. ▶

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇒page 51, "Child safety".

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇒page 39, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer immediately
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints. ◀

Front airbag system – the basics

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 21 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 22 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with a dualstage front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. Your vehicle is also equipped with side airbags for the driver and front seat passenger. Your vehicle may also be fitted with optional side airbags for the rear outboard seats. The safety belts for the front and rear outboard seats equipped with optional side airbags have "pretensioners" that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front and outboard rear seats safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇒fig. 21 and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇒fig. 22. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG".

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other booklets that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- **Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.**
- **Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.**
- **Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.**

⚠ WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

- **Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child in one of the child restraints used to certify the Advanced Airbag System is on the front pas-**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

senger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.

- The Advanced Airbag System will deploy in accordance with the "low risk" option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is

⚠ WARNING (continued)

on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with advanced front airbag system

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low risk" "requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇒page 39. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

For "low risk" deployment to occur, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must be off. ⇒page 39 "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System."

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should not come on and should stay off.. When the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is off, the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy depending on the nature of the collision as registered by the electronic control unit.

For example, the airbag may deploy in the "low risk" mode if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child in one of the child restraints with which the Advanced Airbag System was certified ⇒page 53 is on the front passenger seat
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.
- a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
- a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇒page 5

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child ▶

restraints that are listed in the Standard =page 53, "Child restraints and Advanced Airbags."

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

- a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard =page 53,
- weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory. => page 45 =page 39 "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System."

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag =page 27.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front

⚠ WARNING (continued)

airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints in the back seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft ad-

⚠ WARNING (continued)

justment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.

- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire just one or both stages of the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
- A dual-stage Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- A dual-stage Advanced Airbag and gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
- An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒page 39.
- The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light in the center of the instrument panel (⇒page 39, fig. 25) that tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
- A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit "decide" whether the front airbag for the front passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".
- A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
- Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
- Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
- Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
- Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
- Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
- Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.
- Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer. ◀

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front threepoint safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this booklet.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depends on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the driver side

On the driver side, when the electronic control unit registers a low severity crash and the driver's safety belt is being used, the airbag will not deploy. If the driver's safety belt is not being used, the first stage deploys, followed by the second stage after a later time in the crash sequence.

If the electronic control unit registers a crash of higher severity, both stages of the driver airbag will deploy almost at the same time, regardless of whether the safety belts are being used or not.

On the passenger side

On the passenger side, in low severity impacts as registered by the electronic control unit, the Ad- ▶

vanced Airbag System will take the use of the passenger safety belt into account. If the safety belt is being used, the airbag will not deploy. If the safety belt is not being used, the first stage will deploy followed by the second stage at a later time in the crash sequence.

If the electronic control unit registers a crash of higher severity, both stages deploy regardless of whether the safety belt is being used or not.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒page 27, "Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly.".** ◀

More important things to know about front airbags

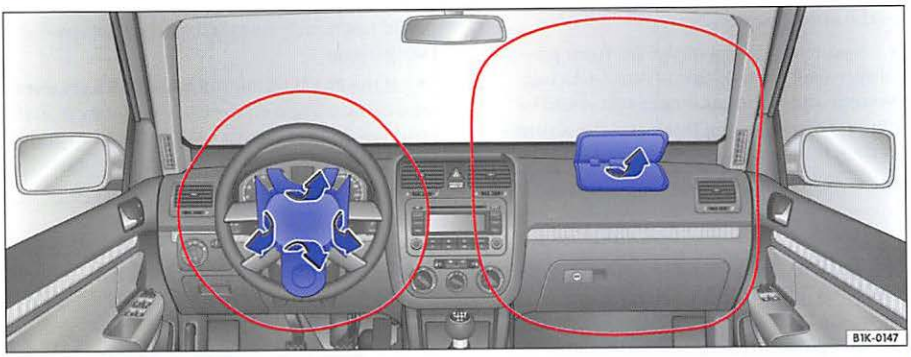


Fig. 23 Front airbag deployment zone ▶

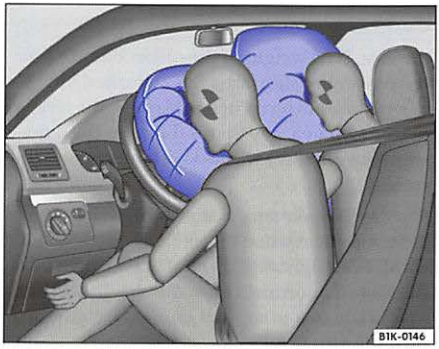


Fig. 24 Inflated front airbags

The areas outlined in red ⇒fig. 23 indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked in red ⇒⚠.

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

- safety belts are worn properly,
- the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
- and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers,
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on).

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

- **To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇒page 27.**

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas ⇒page 36, fig. 23and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
- Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat that will cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to sense that the seat is occupied or is occupied by a person that is heavier than the occupant actually on

⚠ WARNING (continued)

the seat. The weight of the object could cause the passenger side airbag to be turned on when it should be off or could cause the airbag to function in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the added weight.

- Always make sure that nothing on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward. Even light objects could be pushed into the seat cushion and cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to register enough weight to turn the airbag on.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

⚠ WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Tips

If you or a passenger who you will be using your vehicle has a disability that may affect the way the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle works, you can contact Volkswagen Customer CARE at 1 800 822-8987 for information about possible modifications or other steps that help address the situation. ◀

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics) and the text **AIRBAG/BELT TENSIONER** appears in the instrument cluster.

The system must be inspected when the indicator light :

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
- comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on and stay on to catch the driver's attention and serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately. If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- **If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Volkswagen dealer.** ◀

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 25 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇒fig. 25.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

If the bulb for the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light burns out, the airbag monitoring indicator light ⇒page 39 will come on and signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag system. Although the burned out bulb will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light to verify that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Volkswagen dealer.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will blink for up to as long as 9 seconds when

- the ignition is switched on and ▶

- there is a change in the weight measured by the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat that determines whether the Advanced Airbag on the passenger side can deploy or will be turned off.

After the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is proper for the size, age, and weight of the occupant on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened whenever the passenger seat is occupied.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will show the correct status of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if a child up to about one year of age is on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified, is registered by the weight-sensing mat in the seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒page 53,
- will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and

- a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
- a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know" and ⇒page 51, "Child safety."

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

- reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the convertible locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇒page 60.
- make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
- make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat back and forth;
- make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

- take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer immediately. ▶

- move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇒page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions."
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest or holding onto the assist handle on the instrument panel,
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
- accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
- the optional safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat. ◀

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, in a rearward-facing child seat or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- If you must install a rearward- facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.
- A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more a weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not go off when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

- If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will stay on.
- If the optional safety belt extender is left in the buckle for the front safety belt, or the front passenger safety belt itself is buckled and the front passenger seat is not occupied, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on. ◀

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Volkswagen. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury

⚠ WARNING (continued)

and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.

- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

– Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen.

– Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.

– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle. ◀

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by VOLKSWAGEN, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

The Advanced Airbag System in the front passenger seat will not work the way it should if the optional safety belt extender is not removed from the safety belt latch when the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used. Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will cause the safety belt pretensioner and front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions that would normally trigger these systems earlier in the collision to help protect an unrestrained front seat occupant. In addition, the safety belt extender must never be used to secure child restraints to the front passenger seat. For that reason, always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely ⇒page 22.

The sensors in the safety belt buckle for the driver and front passenger seat tell the electronic control module if the safety belt is latched or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of vehicle deceleration than if the safety belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it ▶

is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used. It is important that nothing interfere with the safety belt buckles so that the sensors can send the correct information about safety belt use to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- **Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.**
- **Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by VOLKSWAGEN.**

⚠ WARNING

Leaving the optional safety belt extender attached to the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat when the safety belt is not being used will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly and can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a collision.

- **Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely when it is not being used with the safety belt.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint at any seating position.**

⚠ WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag system from working properly.

- **Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.** ◀

Side airbags

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

Description of side airbags

The side airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 26 Side airbag in driver seat

The side airbags are in the backrest padding in the front seats ⇒fig. 26. Your vehicle may also be equipped with optional side airbags for the rear outboard positions. The general location is identified by the word "AIRBAG" in the upper region of the backrests

The side airbag system basically consists of:

- The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
- The two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
- The airbag warning light in the instrument cluster ▶

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag inflates only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇒page 46, "Important safety instructions for the side airbag system".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection when they inflate. Safety belts also help to keep rear seat passengers in position so that optional rear seat side airbags can provide protection in a side collision in which the side airbag inflates.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒page 13, "Safety belts".

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not be triggered

- if the ignition is switched off,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front, Side Curtain Protection™ and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the correct seating position ⇒page 13, "Safety belts".**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your Volkswagen dealer. The side airbag system may not work properly even when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag. ◀**

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

How supplemental side airbags work

Airbags inflate in the blink of an eye and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

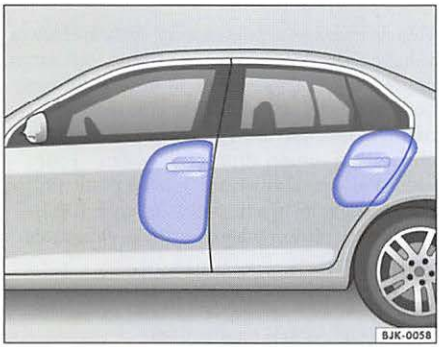


Fig. 27 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle

Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇒fig. 27.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam on the side of the seatback identified by the "AIRBAG" label. It inflates between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒page 51, "Child safety".

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

Important safety instructions for the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions as well as the side airbags that may be installed in your vehicle as optional equipment for the outside rear seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increases the

⚠ WARNING (continued)

risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **To help reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,**
  - **Always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.**
  - **Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.**
  - **Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

– Never let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window.

- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:

  – Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen.

  – Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.

  – Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in a collision by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

  – Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

– Accessories or other objects can become dangerous missiles and cause injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.

– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.

- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealership.

- Always have work involving the side airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.

- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way. ◀

Side Curtain Protection™ airbags

Applies to vehicles: with side curtain protection airbags

Description of Side Curtain Protection™ airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

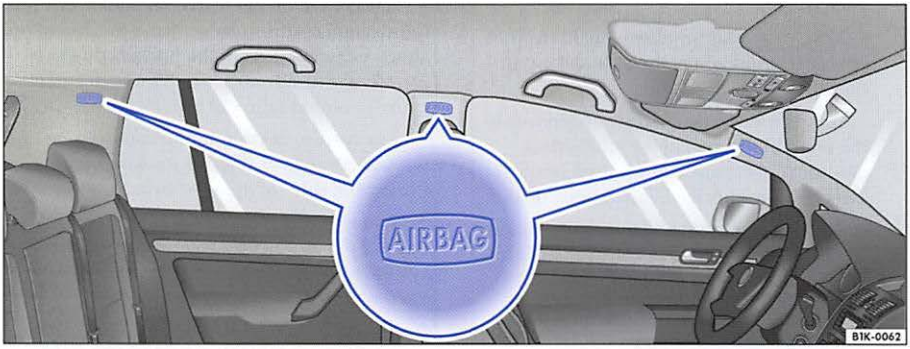


Fig. 28 The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags located above the windows on both sides.

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags are in the header area on both sides of the vehicle ⇒fig. 28. The general location is identified by the word "AIRBAG".

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag inflates only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇒page 49, "How Side Curtain Protection™ airbags work".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the Side Curtain Protection™ airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒page 13, "Safety belts".

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation. It is important to remember that while the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. ▶

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system basically consists of:

- the electronic control module and external side impact sensors,
- the Side Curtain Protection™ airbags above the front and rear side windows,
- the airbag indicator light in the instrument panel.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system is not activated:

- if the ignition is turned off,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front, Side Curtain Protection™ and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇒page 4.**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your Volkswagen dealer. The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag may not work properly even when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with side curtain protection airbags

How Side Curtain Protection™ airbags work

Side Curtain Protection™ airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

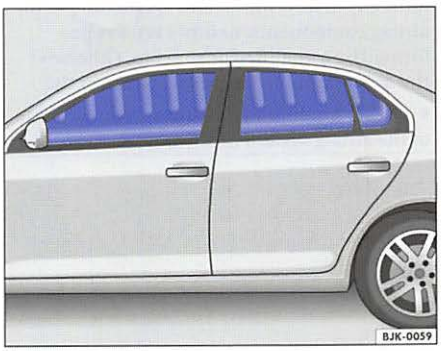


Fig. 29 Inflated Side Curtain Protection™ airbags on the left side

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags inflate between the occupant and the side window on that side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collisions ⇒fig. 29.

When the system is triggered, the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through the header above the front and rear side windows and center door pillar and deploys downwards. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒page 51, "Child safety". Although they are not a soft pillow, Side Curtain Protection™ can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with side curtain protection airbags

Important safety instructions to the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags installed for the front seating and outboard rear positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag inflates.
- Always make sure that the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may

⚠ WARNING (continued)

interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, only genuine Volkswagen sun shades can be used ⇒booklet 3.4, chapter "Accessories, modifications and replacing parts".
- Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the Side Curtain Protection™ airbags can help provide protection.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way. ◀

Child safety

Child Seats

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇒page 15, "Why safety belts?". But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇒page 54, "Important safety instructions for using child seats". Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this booklet.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this booklet about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ WARNING

- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.**
- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.**
- **A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.**

⚠ WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- **A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.

- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a dual-stage front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "lowrisk" requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ◀

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its "footprint", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its "footprint" vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight-sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to "decide", whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off. ◀

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

A. Car beds, manufactured on or after December 1, 1999:

- Cosco Dream Ride 02-719 ▶

B. Rear facing child restraint systems, manufactured on or after December 1, 1999.

(When the restraint system comes equipped with a removable base, compliance has to be certified with or without the base).

- Britax Handle with Care 191
- Century Assura 4553
- Century Smart Fit 4543
- Cosco Arriva 02727
- Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212
- Evenflo First Choice 204
- Graco Infant 8457

C. Forward-facing convertible child restraint systems, manufactured on or after December 1, 1999:

- Britax Roundabout 161
- Britax Expressway ISOFIX
- Century Encore 4612
- Century STE 1000 4416
- Cosco Olympian 02803
- Cosco Touriva 02519
- Evenflo Horizon V 425
- Evenflo Medallion 254
- Safety 1st Comfort Ride 22-400

D. Forward-facing toddler/belt positioning booster systems, manufactured on or after December 1, 1999:

- Britax Roadster 9004
- Century Next Step 4920
- Cosco High Back Booster 02-442
- Evenflo Right Fit 245

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer immediately.** ◀

Important safety instructions for using child seats

Correct use of child seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!



Fig. 30 Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

– Always use the right child seat for each child and always use it properly ⇒page 51.

– Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child seat.

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child seat from moving ⇒page 60.

– Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm). ▶

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Commercially available child seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).**
  - **When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.**
  - **Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Volkswagen does not recommend using child seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.**
  - **Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.**
- **Never allow children under 4 ft 9 in (57 inches, 1.5 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.**
- **Never let more than one child occupy a child seat.**
- **Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.**
  - **Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.**
  - **The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.**
  - **The child and the passenger can also injure each another in an accident.**
- **Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child seats on the rear seat.**
- **If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:**
  - **Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
  - **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**
  - **Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.

– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.

– Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.

- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒page 13, "Safety belts",

⚠ WARNING (continued)

⇒page 27, "Airbag system" and ⇒page 51, "Child safety".

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer immediately. ◀

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old that weigh at least 20 - 22 lbs. (9 - 10 kg) must sit in rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a collision.

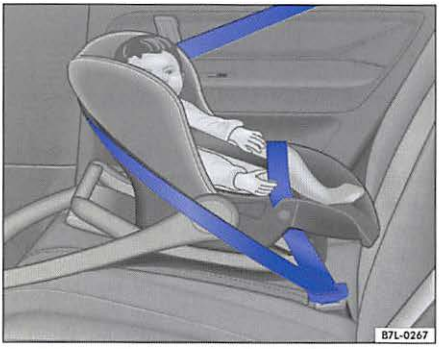


Fig. 31 Rearward-facing infant seat properly installed on the rear seat

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child seat from moving ⇒page 60.

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Infants up to about one year (up to 22 lbs. or 10 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a collision. These child seats can be used safely only on the rear seat of your Volkswagen ⇒fig. 31.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat – even ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.

- Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. These restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒page 27, "Airbag system" and ⇒page 51, "Child safety". ◀

Convertible child seats

Properly used convertible child seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.



Fig. 32 Smaller child in a properly installed forward-facing LATCH child restraint system on the rear seat

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child seat from moving ⇒page 60.

– Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm)..

– Fasten the safety belt that is part of the child restraint system securely and pull it tight so that you can only slip one finger underneath the shoulder belt portion at the child's chest.

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint, if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 22 lbs. (10 kg).

Toddlers and children between one and about four years old and weigh between 22 lbs. (10 kg) and 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child seat certified for their size and weight ⇒fig. 32.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒page 27, "Airbag system" and ⇒page 51, "Child safety".

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children who weigh more than 40 lbs. (18 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in (57 inches, 1.5m) tall in a collision.

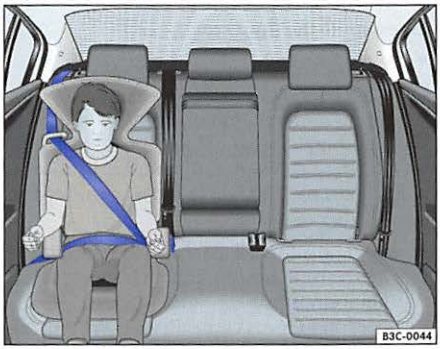


Fig. 33 Child properly restrained in a booster seat on the rear seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches, 1.5m) tall and weigh more than 80 lbs (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the strong parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a collision.

– Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicles safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.

– Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder. If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.

– Always make sure that the shoulder portion never rests against or across the child's neck.

– Always make sure that the child can wear the lap belt portion low across the thighs or pelvis and never over the stomach or abdomen.

Children up to 8 years old (over 40 lbs. or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight ⇒fig. 33. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they should not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

Children who weigh more than about 80 lbs. and are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under should always ride in the rear seat.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat be- ▶

cause of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt over the middle of child's shoulder.
- Never let the shoulder portion of the belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.
- Always make sure the lap belt portion of the three-point belt is worn snug and passes as low as possible across the child's pelvis. Never let the belt pass over the soft abdomen.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation =page 13.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during a collision can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described =page 39.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used =page 13, "Safety belts", =page 27, "Airbag system" and =page 51, "Child safety". ◀

Installing child restraint with a safety belt

Important things to know

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger seat can be locked with the switchable locking feature to properly secure child seats.

The retractors for the rear seat safety belts and the front passenger safety belt have a switchable locking feature for child restraints in addition to the emergency locking feature.

If you need to install a child seat at one of these seating positions, you must first route the safety belt as directed by the manufacturer of the child seat that you are using and then activate the convertible locking feature.

Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for ▶

example, so that it can't tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Rear seat bench."
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle

⚠ WARNING (continued)

is being used ⇒page 51. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know".

⚠ WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

- A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
- A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Activating the switchable locking feature

Use the switchable locking feature to properly secure a child restraint

Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the switchable locking feature:

– Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat ⇒⚠.

– Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer

– Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.

– Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.

– Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight

– Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.

– Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child seat. You should hear a "clicking" noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel of the safety belt retractor. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The switchable locking feature is now active.

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

– Pull on the safety belt to make sure that it is properly fastened and tight.

– Check the child seat for proper installation by pulling on the child seat . The child seat should not move forward or sideways by more than one inch (2.5 cm). ▶

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat back with the child seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of a collision or other emergency situation.
-
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒page 51. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒page 29, "Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know". ◀

Deactivating the switchable locking feature

The switchable locking feature for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor

– Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle ⇒⚠.

– Guide the safety belt back by hand so that it rolls easily onto the retractor and the trim around the retractor will not be damaged.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the switchable locking feature for child restraints.

If the switchable locking feature should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the switchable locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the switchable locking feature for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒page 51. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒page 29. ◀

Additional Information

What types of Child Restraint System anchors are available and how are they related to child safety?

For years, Child Restraint Systems (CRS) have been installed using the safety belts already present in every vehicle.

Since September 1, 1999, CRS manufacturers have been providing tether straps that attach the top of the CRS to the vehicle's structure on most of their forward-facing systems in order to comply with U.S. Federal regulations for CRS performance in a crash. Vehicle manufacturers were required to phase-in tether anchorages for attachment of the tether strap in their U.S. vehicles beginning September 1, 1999.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L** ower **A** nchor and **T** ether for **Ch** ildren".

(The term "ISOFIX" regarding lower anchorages had been used by Volkswagen and other manufacturers in the past, but LATCH is now the standard name for the new child restraint anchorage system.)

Some CRS manufacturers have been providing tether straps on certain models of their CRSs, either as standard equipment or as a retrofit, for several years. Check with the manufacturer of the CRS for tether strap availability.

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the CRS on the vehicle seat, U.S. Federal regulations required the phase-in of lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new CRSs to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

CRS manufacturers will probably offer two kinds of lower anchorages on their child seats

They could come with:

- hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps or
- rigid latches on bars that extend out the back of the CRS and are released with release buttons at the bottom of the CRS.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, both of these child restraint systems use tether straps to help keep the CRS firmly in place. ◀

Tether anchors

Beginning with model year 2000, Volkswagen vehicles have tether anchors as standard equipment.

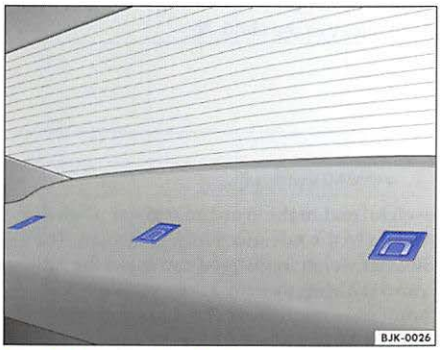


Fig. 34 Tether anchors for the rear seating positions on the hat shelf

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- **Improper use of child restraint anchors (tether anchors) could lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.**
- **Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.**
- **Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Volkswagen.**
- **Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.**
- **Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.**
- **If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.**
- **The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.** ◀

Tether strap

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a CRS to special anchorage points in the vehicle

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the CRS in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing CRSs manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

- **Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child. ◀

Using tethers on rear-facing CRSs

Currently, few rear-facing CRSs come with a tether. Please read and heed the CRS manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.
- A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Volkswagen dealer. ◀

How to install the upper tether strap to the anchorage.

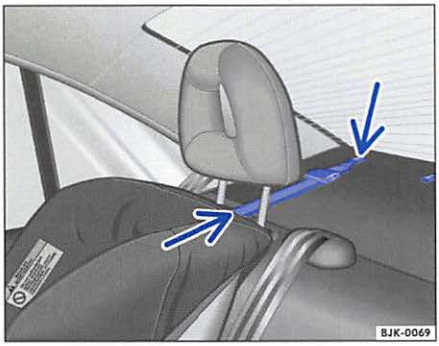


Fig. 35 Properly mounted tether strap

Installing the tether strap

– Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

– Locate the tether anchor on top of the hat shelf.

– Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

– Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged. ▶

– Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions

Releasing the tether strap

– Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage..

Adjusting head restraints ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Seats and storage".

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats. ◀

Lower anchorages (Canada vehicles: lower universal anchorage bars)

Description

The LATCH lower anchorages for the rear outboard seating positions are welded into the vehicle at the factory.

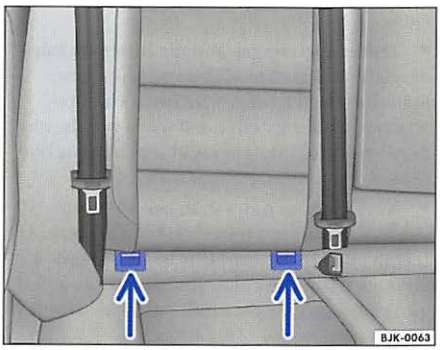


Fig. 36 Location of lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇒fig. 36.

Lower anchorages secure the CRS in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper CRS installation.

All CRSs manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the LATCH system.

However, some CRS manufacturers began to provide lower anchorages for the LATCH system in 2000 before the required date.

Remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of CRSs specifically certified for use with LATCH lower anchorages. CRSs that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed according to the CRS manufacturer's instructions using vehicle safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

- **Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.** ◀

Mounting and releasing hook-on or push-on connectors of CRS that have connectors or other latches attached to adjustable straps

Mounting

– LATCH lower anchorage attachment points are on the vehicle body between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇒page 67, fig. 36.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injuries in a collision.

- Always refer to the CRSs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CRS and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle. ◀

Guide fixtures for LATCH lower anchorages

Guide fixtures permanently attached to the lower anchorages make it easier to install child restraint systems that have rigid latches on bars that extend out the back of the CRS or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

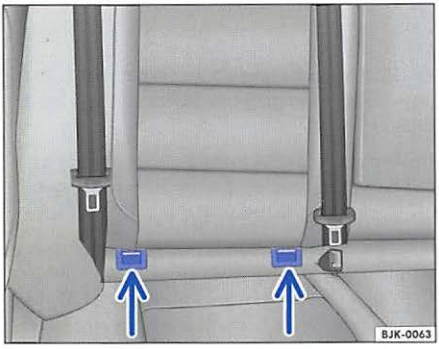


Fig. 37 Guide fixture for the lower anchorages installed in your Volkswagen

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of tether anchorages or lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Always follow the CRS manufacturer's instructions for proper installation and use of child restraint systems.
- Never use the LATCH or tether anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- CRS tether anchorages and the lower anchorages are only designed to secure a CRS

⚠ WARNING (continued)

that has been equipped to use these anchorages.

- Tether anchorages and the lower anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances can they be used safely for adult or child seat belts or harnesses.
- Never mount more than one CRS to a single tether or to a lower anchorage point. Attaching two child restraints to a single anchorage point can cause the anchorage to fail and cause serious personal injury in an accident.
- Never use the tether anchorages and lower anchorages to install three child restraints in your Volkswagen.
- Never use the lower inboard anchorages from the left and right rear seating positions to install a CRS at the center seating position of the rear seat. The distance between the inboard anchors will not allow a CRS to be properly installed to be able to withstand the high forces that are generated in a crash.
- If you must install three child restraints on the rear seat of a Volkswagen with three seating positions in the rear, you must use the ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

vehicle safety belt to install the child restraint in the center seating position.

- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒page 27, "Airbag system" and ⇒page 51, "Child safety". ◀

Installing a CRS using the "LATCH" system

Whenever you install a CRS always refer to the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

There are two possibilities to attach a LATCH-CRS to the lower anchorages for the outboard seating position:

Rigid connectors on bars that extend from the back of the CRS:

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

– Attach the connectors onto the LATCH lower anchorages.

– Make sure you hear the CRS click securely into place.

– Release or deploy the child restraint tether strap.

– Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

– Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

– Pull on both sides of the CRS once you've mounted it to make certain it is secure and properly attached.

Releasing

– Release the lower latch from the LATCH lower anchorages following the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

– Release the tether strap.

Hooks attached to adjustable straps (hook-on connectors)

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

– Press the hook-on connector with the spring catch release onto the lower anchorage so that the connector locks into place.

– Pull on the connector to make sure that it is properly attached to the lower anchorage.

– Attach both straps with hook-on connectors on the CRS securely to the lower anchorages.

– Pull straps tight following the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

– Release or deploy the child restraint tether strap.

– Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

– Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

– Pull on both of the adjustable straps on the CRS and pull also on the tether strap once you've mounted the CRS to make certain it's secure and properly attached. ▶

Releasing

– Loosen the tension on the strap following the CRS manufacturer's instructions

– Depress the spring catch on the hook.

– Hold the spring catch in the depressed position.

– Move the hook in direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the connector from the lower anchorage.

– Release the tether strap

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **These anchors were developed solely for child seats using the "LATCH" system.**
- **Never attach other child seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.**
- **Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

- **Always follow the CRSs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CRS and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of CRSs ⇒page 51, "Child safety". ◀**

Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use?

There are a number of sources of additional information about CRS selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: (888) DASH-2-DOT
www.nhtsa.dot.gov

Program Professionals
Tel.: (734) 324-7550
www.programprofessionals.org

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Volkswagen Customer CARE
Tel.: (800) 822-8987

Transport Canada
Tel.: (888) 675-6863
www.tc.gc.ca ◀

Alphabetical index

A

Acoustic signal 14
Activating the switchable locking feature 62
Address of NHTSA 12
Adjusting safety belt height 24
Advanced Airbag System 31
  Airbag deployment zone 37
  How the components work together 35
Advanced Airbag System components 34
Advanced front airbag system 32
Airbag deployment zone 37
Airbag system 27
  Care 42
  Components (front airbags) 34
  Components (side airbags) 44
  Components (side curtain protection™ airbag) 49
  Curtain airbags 48
  Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 29
  Disposal 42
  Front airbags 31
  How it works? 46, 49
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 34, 44, 49
  Importance of sitting properly 27
  Importance of wearing safety belts 27
  Important things to know 27
  Indicator light 39
  Monitoring 39
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 39
  Repairs 42
  Side airbags 44
  When must the system be inspected? 39
  Where are my airbags located? 31, 44, 48
Auto Safety Hotline 12
Automatic belt retractor 19

B

Before driving 3
Belt pretensioner
  Disposal 26
  Service 26
Booster seats 59

C

Child restraint on the front seat 29
Child safety 51
Child seats 51
  Booster seats 59
  Convertible child seats 57
  Infant seats 56
  Lower anchorages 67
  Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 68
  On the front passenger seat 29
  Safety instructions 54
  Tether anchors 65
  Tether strap 65
Convertible child seats 57
Curtain airbags 48
Customer CARE Center 27

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 29
Deactivating the switchable locking feature 63
Distance between driver and steering wheel 4
Driver
  See Seating position
Driving safety 3
Driving with children 51

E

Examples of improper seating positions 8
Extender for the safety belts 22

F

Fastening
  Booster seats 59
  Convertible child seats 57
  Infant seats 56
  Safety belt extender 23
  Safety belts 19
Floor mats 9

Front airbag system 31
Airbag deployment zone 37
The basics 31
Front airbags
Description 31
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics 15

G

Guide fixtures for lower anchorages 68

H

Head restraints
Correct adjustment 7
Heavy clothing and safety belts 17
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 34, 44, 49
How to install the upper tether strap to the anchorage 66

I

Importance of sitting properly 27
Importance of wearing safety belts 27
Important things to do before driving 3
Improper seating positions 8
Improperly worn safety belts 25
Indicator light
Airbag system 39
Indicator lights
Airbag system 39
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 39
Infant seats 56
Installing
Child restraint with a safety belt 60
CRS using the LATCH system 69

L

Leather seats
Pressure marks 67
Lower anchorages 67
Luggage compartment 10

M

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 39
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 68

N

NHTSA 12
Number of seats 13

O

Occupant seating positions 4

P

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 39
Passengers
See Seating position
Pedals 9
Physical principles of a frontal collision 15
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 21
Pressure marks 67
Proper adjustment of head restraints 7
Proper occupant seating positions 4
Proper safety belt position 20
Proper seating position
Driver 4
Front passenger 5
Occupants 4
Rear passengers 6

R

Repairs
Airbag system 42
Reporting safety defects 12
Retractor 19

S

Safe driving 2
Safety belt extender 22
Safety belt height adjustment 24
Safety belt position 20
Adjusting safety belt height 24
Pregnant women 21
Safety belt pretensioners 25
Safety belt warning light 14

Safety belts 13, 19
Extender 22
How can I adjust the height of my safety belt? 24
How do you put on your safety belt correctly? 19
Improperly worn 25
Installing child restraint 60
Not worn 16
Safety belt position 20
Safety instructions 17
Special considerations for pregnant women 21
Switchable locking feature 62
Unfastening safety belts 24
Warning light 14
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? 16
Why assume the correct seating position? 27
Why safety belts protect? 17
Why wear safety belts? 15, 27
Safety belts protect 17
Safety equipment 2
Safety instructions
Belt pretensioners 26
Child restraint on the front seat 29
Child seats 54
Loading the luggage compartment 10
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 41
Proper seating position for passengers in rear seats 6
Proper seating position for the driver 4
Proper seating position for the front passenger 5
Safety belt extender 22
Safety belts 17
Side airbags 46
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags 50
Seat markings 67
Seating capacity 13
Seating position
Distance between driver and steering wheel 4
Driver 4
Front passenger 5
Improper seating positions 8
Occupants 4
Rear passengers 6
Seats
Number of seats 13
Side airbags 44
Description 44
How they work? 46
Safety instructions 46
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags
Description 48
How they work? 49
Safety instructions 50
Steering wheel
Distance to the driver 4
Stowing luggage in the luggage compartment 10
Switchable locking feature
Activating 62
Deactivating 63

T

Tether anchors 65
Tether strap 65
Tie-downs 11
Torn or frayed safety belts 17
Trunk 10

U

Unfastening
Safety belts 24
Upholstery
Pressure marks 67

V

Ventilation slots 11

W

Warning lights
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 39
Safety belts 14
What happens if you do not wear your safety belt? 16
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 20
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? 16
What impairs driving safety? 3

What is LATCH? 64
What types of CRS anchors are available and how are they related to child safety? 64
What you should know when driving with children? 51
When must a safety belt be replaced? 17
When must the airbag system be inspected? 39
Where are lower anchorages located? 67
Where are my airbags located?
Front airbags 31
Side airbags 44
Side curtain protection™ airbags 48
Where are tether anchors located? 65
Where can I get additional information about CRS application and usage? 70
Why safety belts protect? 17
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 7

Afterword

Volkswagen works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen de México.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen de México.

Printed in Mexico

© 2005 Volkswagen de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.



2.1 Safety first | Jetta
Print status: 04.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.551.JKS.21 | englisch Nordamerika 05.2005





3.1 Controls and Equipment

Jetta

Model year 2006

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions, and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to vehicles with Diesel engine".

® Registered trademarks are marked ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section.**

⇒⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Instrument panel 2

Overview 2
Overview of the control buttons on the multi-function steering wheel 4
Instrument cluster 5
Display in the instrument cluster 7
Menus in the instrument cluster 12
Warning lights 20

Opening and closing Keys 31

Key Set 31
Remote control key 32
Central locking system 34
Anti-theft alarm system 36
Rear lid 37
Windows 39
Power roof 42
HomeLink® Universal Transmitter 44

Lights and a clear view 46

Lights 46
Interior lights 50
Clear vision 52
Windshield wipers 53
Mirrors 55

Seats and storage 57

Why is seat adjustment so important? 57
Head restraints 58
Front seats 60
Rear seat bench 66
Storage 69
Additional storage compartment and electrical sockets 73
Luggage compartment 74
Roof rack 76

Air conditioning system 80

Heating 80
Climatic 81
Climatronic 84
Important notes 88

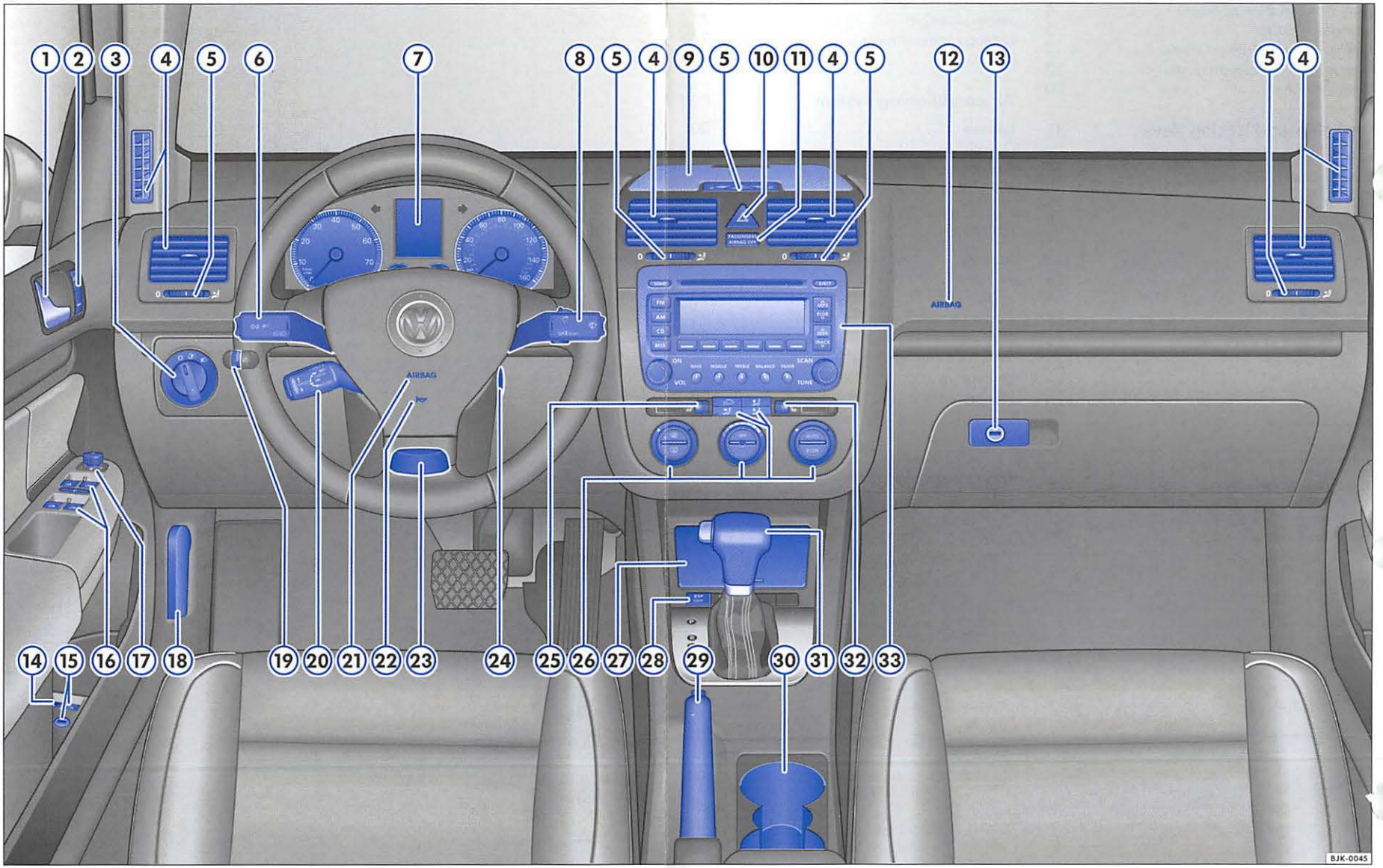
Driving 90

Steering 90
Safety 91
Ignition lock 93
Starting and stopping the engine 95
Manual transmission 97
Automatic transmission / Direct shift gearbox 98
Parking brake 104
Electronic Parking Assistance 106
Cruise control 107

Alphabetical index 109

Instrument panel

Overview



General illustration

This overview will help you to familiarize yourself with the controls and displays quickly.

① Release handle
② Central locking button
③ Light switch 46
④ Air outlets
⑤ Thumb wheel for opening and closing the air outlet
⑥ Turn signal and high beam headlight lever 49
⑦ Instrument cluster:
- Instruments 5
- Displays 7
- Warning lights 20

⑧ Lever for windshield wiper and washer and for Multi-function indicator. 53, 9
⑨ Storage compartment or air outlet for indirect ventilation 86
⑩ Emergency flasher switch 48
⑪ Warning light for front passenger airbag switched off ⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Monitoring the advanced airbag system"
⑫ Front passenger airbag ⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Airbag system"
⑬ Opening lever and lock for glove compartment
⑭ Fuel filler flap release button ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Filling up"
⑮ Rear lid release button and override lock 37
⑯ Power window switches 39
⑰ Switch for adjusting the exterior power mirrors 56
⑱ Engine hood release lever ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Opening the engine hood"
⑲ Instrument cluster illumination switch 48
⑳ Cruise control lever
㉑ Driver airbag ⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Airbag system"
㉒ Horn (works only when the ignition is on)
㉓ Lever for adjustable steering column 90
㉔ Ignition lock 93
㉕ Thumb wheel for left seat heating 65
㉖ Controls for
- Heating and ventilation 80
- Climatic 81
- Climatronic 84

㉗ Additional storage compartment . 73
- Power outlet 73

㉘ ON/OFF button for Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) or Anti-slip regulation (ASR)
㉙ Parking brake release lever 104
㉚ Cup holder 72
㉛ Levers in the center console
- Shift lever (manual transmission) 97
- Selector lever (Automatic transmission/ Direct shift gearbox) . 99

㉜ Thumb wheel for right seat heating 65
㉝ Sound system ⇒booklet 3.4

Tips

- Some features mentioned are standard equipment on some models only and options on others.
- For technical reasons, the arrangement of the switches and indicator/warning lights may differ. The governing factor is the symbol on the switch itself. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with multi-function steering wheel

Overview of the control buttons on the multi-function steering wheel

These controls let you perform various functions without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

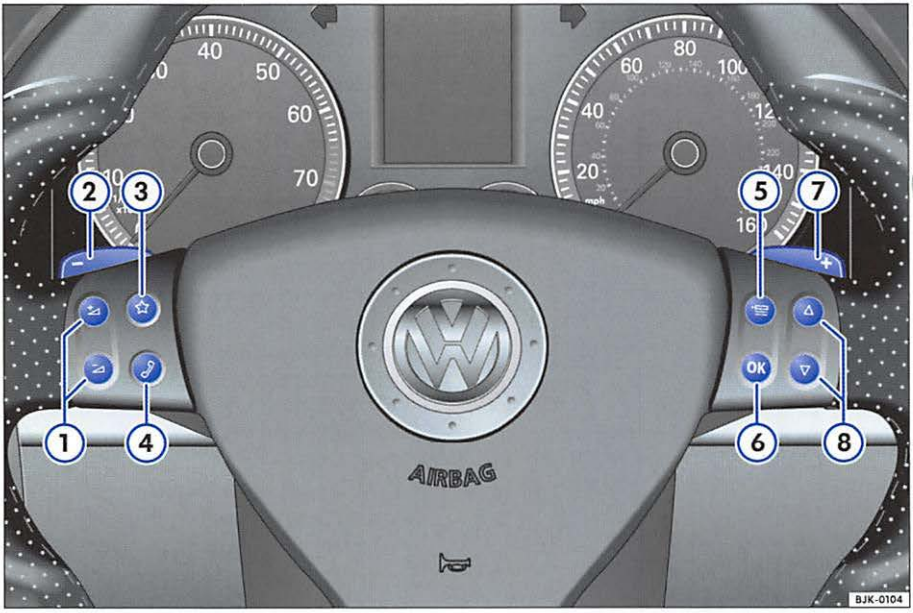


Fig. 1 Multi-function steering wheel with controls

The controls in the multi-function steering wheel ⇒fig. 1 work only when the ignition is switched on. Depending on your model some of the features shown in the illustration may not apply to your vehicle. Always ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer if you are not sure.

① [-] or [+] volume control

② [-] Paddle switch for downshifting on vehicles equipped with Tiptronic®
- Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to downshift when using the Tiptronic®

③ [☆] mute the radio.
- Press this button to silence the sound system

④ [Not applicable]

⑤ Use this button to open the menus in the instrument cluster display and toggle between the menus ⇒page 9 and ⇒page 12

⑥ [OK] Press this button to confirm a menu item or entry.

⑦ [+] Paddle switch for upshifting on vehicles equipped with Tiptronic®
- Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to upshift when using the Tiptronic®

⑧ [△] or [▽] Use these buttons to move the selector bar up or down within a menu in the instrument cluster display ◀

Instrument cluster

Instrument overview

The instrument cluster displays the vehicle operating status.

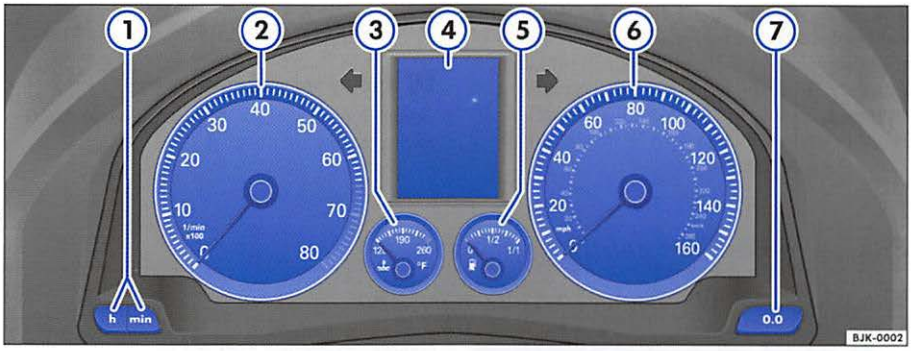


Fig. 2 Detail of instrument cluster

① Setting buttons for the clock ⇒page 5
② Tachometer ⇒page 6
③ Engine coolant temperature gauge ⇒page 6
④ Multi-function indicator ⇒page 9
⑤ Fuel gauge ⇒page 7
⑥ Speedometer
⑦ Reset button for trip odometer ◀

Setting the clock

The clock is located in the instrument cluster.

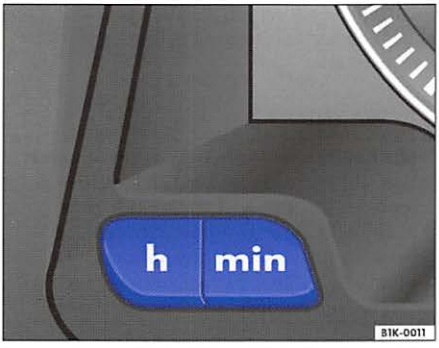


Fig. 3 Section of the instrument cluster: buttons for setting the clock

– Press the left button ⇒fig. 3 [h] to set the hour. The clock will advance to the next hour if you briefly press the button.

– Press the right-hand button [min] to set the minute. The clock will advance to the next minute if you briefly press the button. ◀

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

If, for example, the needle is directly over the 2, this corresponds to an engine speed of 2000 rpm (revolutions per minute).

The red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used briefly when the engine is warm and after it has been broken in properly. However, it is advisable to upshift or move the selector lever to D (or take your foot off the accelerator pedal to slow down) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Note

To avoid damage to the engine never allow the needle in the tachometer to go into the red end of the scale (warning zone)!

For the sake of environment

Upshifting early will help you to save fuel and minimize engine noise. ◀

Engine coolant temperature gauge

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

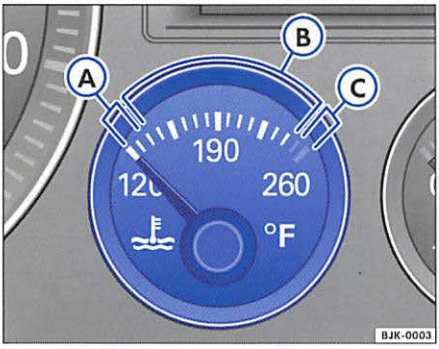


Fig. 4 Section of the instrument cluster: engine coolant temperature gauge

Engine cold (A)

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads ⇒fig. 4.

Normal temperature (B)

Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high outside temperatures. Do not worry if the warning light and a warning message does not appear in the display.

If the symbol and a warning text appear in the display, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Coolant."

Needle in warning zone (C)

If the needle is in the warning zone, the symbol will light up. If your vehicle is equipped with the message display feature, an information text will also appear in the display. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer for more information. Either the coolant temperature is too high, or the coolant level too low. **Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine.** Check the coolant level ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Coolant" ⇒⚠.

Do not continue driving if the coolant level is correct and you have a warning in the instrument cluster telling you there is a problem. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

- Accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. If it is hot outside and you drive with high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating. ▶

- The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. The engine could overheat if the spoiler is damaged, torn off or removed! Have the spoiler repaired or replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Fuel gauge

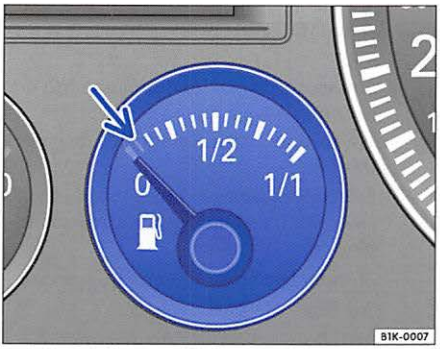


Fig. 5 Section of the instrument cluster: fuel tank gauge

The fuel tank holds about 14.5 gallons (55 liters).

When the needle reaches the low fuel level zone ⇒fig. 5 (arrow), the display lights up. If your vehicle is equipped with the message display feature, **Please refuel!** will also appear in the display. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer for more information. At the same time, a warning will sound **as a reminder to refuel.** At this point there are still about 1.8 gallons (7 liters) of fuel in the tank. The display only works when the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Remember to refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel, especially in remote areas. ◀

Display in the instrument cluster

Messages appearing in the display

Informational or malfunction messages are identified by a warning light or symbol and, depending on the vehicle instrument cluster, with a matching text in the display.

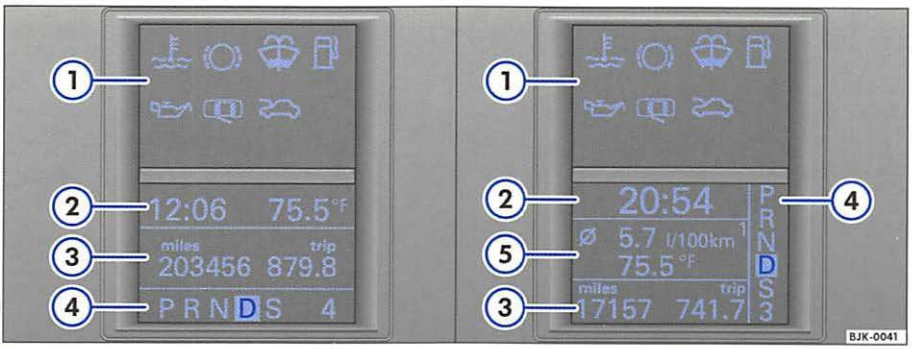


Fig. 6 Displays in the instrument cluster: Left Lowline instrument cluster, right Midline instrument cluster ▶

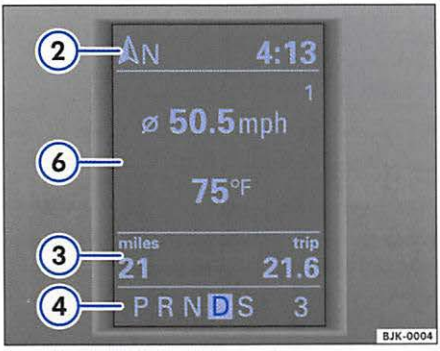


Fig. 7 Display in the instrument cluster: Highline instrument cluster

① Warning lights

② Clock and compass[1]. In vehicles with Low-line instrument cluster the temperature is also shown in this area. In vehicles with Highline instrument cluster the warning lights also appear in this area. ⇒page 9.

③ Odometer , Trip Odometer

④ Selector lever position display for the automatic transmission[1]. The selector lever position or the gear selected (Tiptronic®) will be shown in the display field with a light background.

⑤ There are optional and automatic displays in this field:

- **Selectable displays:** Multi-function indicator (MFI) and outside temperature display
- **Automatic displays:** Information text or warnings ⇒page 11

⑥ There are optional and automatic displays in this field:

- **Selectable displays:** . Multi-function indicator (MFI) and outside temperature display
- **Automatic displays:** Information text or warnings ⇒page 11
- Menus providing information, which can be used to make different settings, are also shown in the display. ◀

Mileage (kilometer) display

The left-hand counter ⇒page 7, fig. 6 ③, ⇒fig. 7 ③ in the display shows the total number of miles (kilometers) driven.

The right-hand counter ③ registers the short trips. The final digit in the trip counter shows distances of 100 yards (meters) The trip counter can be reset by pressing the button [0.0] (⇒page 5, fig. 2 ⑦). ◀

[1] Optional equipment

Applies to vehicles: with multi-function indicator (MFI)

Multi-Function Indicator (MFI)

The Multi-Function Indicator (MFI) shows you various travel data.

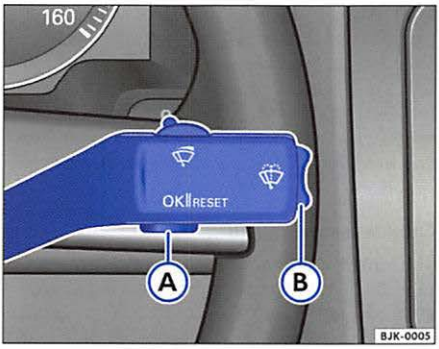


Fig. 8 On the windshield wiper lever: Button Ⓐ to select memory 1 or memory 2 and the rocker switch Ⓑ to select and change the menus

The MFI is equipped with two automatic memories: **1 - Trip memory** and **2 - Total journey memory**. The selected memory will be shown in the upper right-hand corner of the MFI display.

Opening the MFD menu

– From the main menu, select the **MFD** menu and press the OK button on the windshield wiper lever ⇒fig. 8 Ⓐ.**Or**

– Press button ⇒page 4, fig. 1 ⑤ in the multi-function steering wheel [2] until the MFD menu is displayed.

Selecting a memory

– With the ignition switched on, briefly press the button ⇒fig. 8 Ⓐ on the windshield wiper lever or the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒page 4, fig. 1 ⑥ to toggle between memory 1 and memory 2.

Deleting the memory

– Select the memory that you would like to delete.

– Press and hold the button Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever or the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel for at least 2 seconds.

The **trip memory** 1 collects the travel and fuel consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the trip is continued within two hours of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder. The memory will automatically be deleted if the ignition is switched off for more than two hours.

The **total journey memory 2** collects the trip data for any number of individual trips (even if the ignition is switched off for longer than two hours). The maximum travel time is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The maximum number of miles (kilometers) is 9999 and the maximum number of gallons (liters) of fuel consumed is 999. The memory will automatically set itself back to 0 after it has reached the maximum value.

Memory displays

You can switch between the following displays in the multi-function indicator (MFI) by pressing the rocker switch ⇒fig. 8 Ⓑ on the end of the windshield wiper lever or by pressing the buttons △ or ▽ ⇒page 4, fig. 1 on the multi-function steering wheel.

- Driving time
- Current fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption
- Miles (kilometers) to empty
- Distance travelled
- Average speed
- Speed warning

[2] Where applicable

min - Driving time

The display shows the amount of time that has gone by since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The memory will reset itself back to zero once this value has been reached.

gallons /100 miles (l/100 km) - Current fuel consumption

The display will show the current fuel consumption in gallons (liters) per 100 miles (kilometres) while the vehicle is in motion or in gallon (liters) per hour when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running.

Using this display you can see how your driving style affects fuel consumption ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Driving economically and respecting the environment".

Ø gallons/100 miles (Ø l/100 km) - Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption will appear after you have driven approximately 100 yards (meters). Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion. The amount of fuel used will not be shown.

Miles - Miles (kilometers) to empty

The miles (kilometers) to empty is calculated using the fuel tank content and current fuel consumption. It shows how far the vehicle can travel using the same conditions as a reference.

Miles (km) - Distance travelled

The display shows the distance travelled since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 9999 miles (kilometers). The memory will reset itself back to zero once this value has been reached.

Ø mph (Ø km/h) - Average speed

The average speed will appear after you have driven approximately 100 yards (meters). Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion.

Speed warning

The speed warning can be set so you will see and hear a warning when you reach the desired speed. For example, this setting could be used to let you know if you exceed the posted speed limit. When you reach the desired speed, briefly press button ⇒page 9, fig. 8 Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever or, with the vehicle at a standstill, press button ⇒page 4, fig. 1 ⑥ in the multifunction steering wheel and then set the desired speed with buttons △ or ▽ ⇒page 4, fig. 1. Press and hold the OK button to erase the stored speed.

Outside temperature display

The temperature range is -40° F to +122° F(-40° C to +50° C). At outside temperatures between -40° F and +39° F (-40° C and +4° C), a "snowflake symbol" (ice warning) appears in addition to the outside temperature display. This symbol flashes for approximately 5 seconds and remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +39° F (+4° C).

⚠ WARNING

Roads and bridges can be dangerously icy even if the outside air temperature is above freezing.

- **If you use the outside temperature display to tell you about frost conditions, remember that roads can even ice over at temperatures above 39° F (+ 4° C).**
- **Always remember, even if the "snowflake symbol" (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.**
- **Never rely exclusively on this the outside temperature display.**
- **Always reduce your speed and drive with special care under weather conditions when the chances that you will encounter icy road surfaces are greater.**

Tips

- The MFI displays which have memory 1 and memory 2 are "Driving time," "Average fuel consumption," "Distance travelled" and "Average speed."
- The MFI display may look different in your vehicle because there are different instrument clusters. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance.

- When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine. ◀

Applies to vehicles: With Highline or Midline instrument cluster

Warning or information text in the display

Malfunctions are shown in the display with warning lights and warning information messages.



Fig. 9 Warning text in the display of a Midline instrument cluster: STOP Oil pressure

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Functional malfunctions are indicated by symbols with warnings and information texts in the display. An acoustic warning is given in certain cases. The screen may vary according to the version of the instrument cluster your vehicle has.

Warning symbols

There are red warning symbols (priority 1) and yellow warning symbols (priority 2).

Examples of priority 1 warnings (red)

- Brake system symbol (!) or BRAKE with the warning text **STOP Brake fluid Owner's manual!**
- Coolant symbol with the warning text **STOP Check coolant! Owner's manual!**
- Engine oil pressure symbol with the warning text **STOP Oil pressure engine off! Owner's manual!**.

If one of these malfunctions occurs, the warning light will flash or light up and will be accompanied by **three acoustic warnings**. This is a **danger** warning. Pull off the road where it is safe and switch off the engine immediately. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop immediately and have the malfunction repaired.

If several priority 2 warnings are detected at the same time, the symbols will appear one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time. After a set time, the information text will disappear , however the symbol will appear in the display and stay on as a reminder for you to have the malfunction repaired.

As long as a priority 1 warning is shown in the display, you will not be able to see any other menus ⇒page 7.

Examples of priority 2 warnings (yellow):

- Fuel symbol with the information text **Please refuel!**
- Windshield washer fluid symbol with the information text **Top up wash fluid!**.
- Brake pad symbol with information text **Check brake pads!**
- Immobilizer symbol with the information text **Immobilizer active!**

If one of these situations occurs, the warning symbol lights up, and you will hear **one acoustic warning**. Check the cause as soon as possible.

If several priority 2 warnings are detected at the same time, the symbols are displayed one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time. After a set time, the information text will disappear , however the symbol will appear at the side of the display and stay on as a reminder for you to check the cause as soon as possible.

Priority 2 warning messages will not be shown until all **Priority 1** warning messages have been corrected! ▶

Information text

In addition to warning messages given on a malfunction, you will receive information in the display on procedures or will be asked to do something.

Tips

Some malfunctions are indicated only by the warning lights in the instrument cluster without warning or information texts. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Menus in the instrument cluster

The main menu

You can open the different functions using the menus when the ignition switched on.

The main menu

Main menu	Function
MFD Display	Changes to the multi-function indicator (MFI) ⇒page 9
Audio	Information about the current radio mode will appear in the display.
Navigation	This menu option will only be shown in those vehicles equipped with Navigation System. The Navigation System must be switched on.Turn signals and proximity bars will be shown if the route assistance function is active. The screen is similar to the symbols shown in the Navigation System ⇒booklet 3.2. The direction of travel (compass) and the name of the current street will be shown if the route assistance function is not active.
Vehicle status	This menu shows current warning and information texts ⇒page 15. The menu option flashes if warning or information texts are to be read.
Set up	Settings for the time, speed warning for winter tires, language, units, compass, lights & vision and convenience.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- **Never select menus when the vehicle is moving.**

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the option level of your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Highline instrument cluster and multi-function steering wheel

Example of using the menus with the multi-function steering wheel

All menus in the instrument cluster can be used following the steps described here.

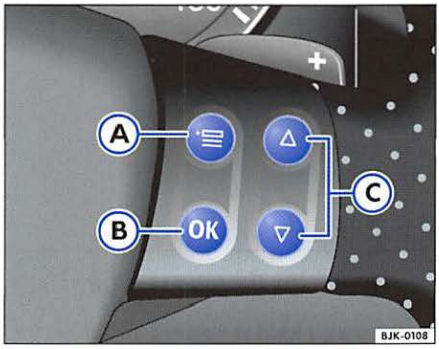


Fig. 10 In the multi-function steering wheel: button (A) to toggle between the displays, button (B) to confirm a selection and button (C) to select a menu or submenu.

The setting of a speed warning will be used as an example of how to use the menus. The speed warning feature is a helpful reminder if you are, for example, using winter tires which are not suited for the top speed of the vehicle.

1. Opening the Set up menu

– Switch on the ignition. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press button (A) on the multifunction steering wheel until the **Set up (Settings)** menu is displayed.

2. Opening the Winter tires menu

– Press arrow keys ▽ or △ (C) to highlight the menu item **Winter tires**. The highlighted menu item is between two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right ◀

– Mark the menu option **Winter tires**.

– Press the OK button (B). The **Winter tires** menu opens.

3. Setting the speed warning

– Highlight the menu item **+ 5 mi/h** (**(+ 10 km/h)**) or **- 5 mi/h** (**(- 10 km/h)**) using the arrow keys and press the OK button to increase or decrease the speed shown at the top of the display.

4. Switching the speed warning on and off

– Using the arrow keys, select the menu item **On / Off** and press the OK button to switch the speed warning on or off. When the speed warning is switched off, three dashes --- appear at the top of the display.

5. Exiting the Winter tires menu

– Select the menu item **Back**.

The function "Winter tires" will generate a visible and acoustic warning once the vehicle has reached the set speed.

The example menu Winter tires

In display	Function
Winter tires	The name of the displayed menu
X mi/h (X km/h) or **---**	Display of the speed currently set or dashes if the function is switched off.
ON/OFF	Switches the function on or off.
+ 5 mi/h (+10 km/h)	Increase the set value by 5 mph (10 km/h).

In display	Function
- 5 mi/h (-10 km/h)	Decreases the set value by 5 mph (10 km/h).
Back	The **Winter tires** menu is closed and the last displayed menu is opened.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the option level of your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Highline instrument cluster

Example of using the menus with the windshield wiper lever

All menus in the instrument cluster can be used following the steps described here.

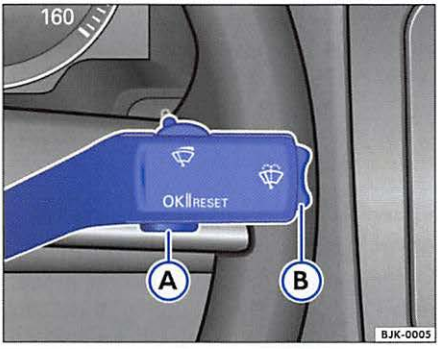


Fig. 11 In the windshield wiper lever: button Ⓐ to select and expand the menu and rocker switch Ⓑ to select a submenu within the menu

The setting of a speed warning will be used as an example of how to use the menus. The speed warning feature is a helpful reminder if you are, for example, using winter tires which are not suited for the top speed of the vehicle.

1. Opening the main menu

– Switch on the ignition. A vehicle pictogram is displayed.

– Press button ⇒fig. 11 Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever once for about 5 seconds and release. The following message appears: **Please fasten seatbelt!**

– Press and hold the rocker switch Ⓑ for five seconds to access the main menu. You may have to repeat this procedure several times if you had previously selected a different menu until you access the main menu.

2. Opening the Set up menu

– Press the rocker switch Ⓑ at the bottom to scroll down to **Set up**. The menu will appear between two horizontal lines and a marker triangle will appear on the right side.

– Mark the menu option **Set up**.

– Press button Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever. The menu **Settings** is opened.

3. Opening the Winter tires menu

– Press the rocker switch Ⓑ to mark the menu option **Winter tires**.

– Press button Ⓐ to open the sub-menu **Winter tires**.

4. Setting the speed warning

– Use the rocker switch Ⓑ to mark the menu entry **+ 5 mi/h ((+ 10 km/h))** or **- 5 mi/h ((- 10 km/h))** and press the button Ⓐ to either increase or decrease the speed shown in the display above. ▶

5. Switching the speed warning on and off

– Use the rocker switch Ⓑ to select the menu point **ON / OFF** and press the button Ⓐ to switch the speed warning either on or off. Three dashes --- appear at the top of the display if the speed warning is switched off.

6. Exiting the Winter tires menu

– Scroll down to **Back** and press button Ⓐ.

The function "Winter tires" will generate a visible and acoustic warning once the vehicle has reached the set speed.

The example menu Winter tires

In display	Function
Winter tires	The name of the displayed menu
X mi/h (X km/h) or ---	Display of the speed currently set or dashes if the function is switched off.
ON/OFF	Switches the function on or off.
+ 5 mi/h (+10 km/h)	Increase the set value by 5 mph (10 km/h).
- 5 mi/h (-10 km/h)	Decreases the set value by 5 mph (10 km/h).
Back	The **Winter tires** menu is closed and the last displayed menu is opened.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the option level of your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Vehicle status menu

This menu will display warning or information texts.

Opening the Vehicle status menu

– Select **Vehicle status** menu and press button ⇒page 14, fig. 11 Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever. **Or**

– Press button ⇒page 13, fig. 10 Ⓐ on the multi-function steering wheel [3] until the **Vehicle status** menu is displayed.

Priority 2 warnings and information texts will dissapear from the displayed automatically after some time, but they will be stored in the **Vehicle status** menu.

If there are no priority 1 warnings, then the priority 2 warnings will appear one after the other.

If there are no priority 1 or priority 2 warnings present, **OK** or **No entry** will appear in the display. ◀

[3] Where applicable

Set up menu

The set up menu is used to make various different settings for the functions in the vehicle.

Opening the Set up menu

– Select the menu option **Set up** from the main menu ⇒page 12 and press button ⇒page 14, fig. 11 Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever. **Or**

– Press button ⇒page 13, fig. 10 Ⓐ on the multi-function steering wheel [4] until the **Set up** menu is displayed.

An example of how to use the menu ⇒page 13 or ⇒page 14.

Settings	Function
Time	You can set the clock hours and minutes both in the instrument cluster and in the Navigation System. Choose between a 12 and 24 hour display and switch to Summer time (an **S** appears in the upper part of the display)
Winter tires	You can enter here whether an optical and acoustic warning should be made and at which speed. You can use this function if you have installed winter tires which are not suited for the top speed of your vehicle ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Maintenance", chapter "Wheels".
Language	The texts in the display and in the Navigation System can be displayed in seven different languages.
Units	The units used for temperature, fuel consumption values and distances are set here.
Compass	The compass can be calibrated and the variance zone adjusted ⇒page 18
Convenience	This menu is used to make the settings for the convenience functions in the vehicle ⇒page 17
Lights & Vision	Various settings can be made for the vehicle lighting in the Lights & Vision menu ⇒page 17
Display off	The display is switched off. It comes back on when you switch the main menu back on or if a warning is detected.
Back	You will return to the main menu.

Tips

- The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the options installed on your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop can program or modify additional functions depending on kind of display installed on your vehicle.
- The Settings menu can only be opened when the vehicle is at a standstill ◀

[4] Where applicable

Lights & Vision menu

Various settings can be made for the vehicle lighting in the Lights & Vision menu.

Opening the Lights & Vision menu

– Select **Set up** from the main menu ⇒page 12and press the button ⇒page 14, fig. 11 Ⓐ under the windshield wiper level.

Or

– Press button ⇒page 13, fig. 10 Ⓐ on the multifunction steering wheel [5] until the **Set up** menu is displayed.

– Select the sub-menu **Lights & Vision**.

An example of how to use the menu ⇒page 13 or ⇒page 14.

Lights & Vision	Function
Coming Home	Here you can determine how long the lights should remain on after you have locked the vehicle ⇒page 47.
Leaving Home	Here you can determine how long the lights should remain on when you unlock the vehicle.
Footwell light	Brightness of the footwell lighting when the doors are open.
Comfort indic.	The turn signal will flash at least three times if the turn signal lever is operated to change lanes ⇒page 49
Factory setting	Resets the functions in this menu to the factory settings.
Back	You will return to the Settings menu.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the option level of your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Convenience functions menu

The convenience menu is used to make the settings for the convenience functions in the vehicle.

Opening the Convenience menu

– Select **Set up** from the main menu ⇒page 12and press the button ⇒page 14, fig. 11 Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever.

Or

– Press button ⇒page 13, fig. 10 Ⓐ on the multifunction steering wheel [6] until the **set up** menu is displayed.

– Select the sub-menu **Convenience**.

An example of how to use the menu ⇒page 13 or ⇒page 14. ▶

[5] Where applicable

[6] Where applicable

Convenience	Function
Door open	The vehicle locks all doors when the vehicle is moving and unlocks the doors when the key is removed from the ignition lock.
ATA confirm	The activation of the anti-theft alarm system can be confirmed if required.
Conv. mode	Convenience operation of the power windows: determines if the driver's door window, all windows or no window at all should be opened when the vehicle is unlocked. This function can only be activated via the driver's door.
Mirrors adjust	The front passenger mirror will be adjusted automatically with the driver's mirror if this function is switched on.
Factory setting	Resets the functions in this menu to the factory settings.
Back	You will return to the Settings menu.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the option level of your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Highline instrument cluster and compass

Compass

The vehicle compass displays eight different directions of travel

The compass is an extremely accurate computer that displays vehicle headings of N, NW, W, SW, S, SE, E and NE. The menu "Compass" can be opened with the multi-function steering wheel buttons.

Tips

When driving in underground garages, through tunnels or near subway stations or railroads"- -" may appear in the display instead of the travel direction. If the menu Compass is opened by using the windshield wiper lever or multi-function steering wheel buttons "Interference! Compass not available at present" will appear in the display. Once the interference cause disappears, the actual compass reading will reappear in the display. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Highline instrument cluster and compass

Calibrating the compass

The vehicle compass must be calibrated every time you install additional items in your vehicle, i.e. a roof rack.

Opening the Compass menu

– Select **Set up** from the main menu⇒page 12 and press the button Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever or the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel ⇒page 13, fig. 10 Ⓑ.

– Select the sub-menu **Compass** and press the OK button. ▶

Calibrating the compass

– Mark the menu entry **Calibration** and press the OK button. The following message will be displayed **To calibrate drive round a complete circle.**

– Drive the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (10 km/h) or less until the display indicates that the calibration process has been completed.

Tips

- During the calibration process or if the calibration process is not successfully accomplished the word "CAL" will appear in the display instead of the travel direction.
- If "CAL" appears in the display instead of the travel direction the compass must be calibrated.
- While calibrating the compass do not drive with the rear lid open or the rear seatback unlocked to avoid inaccurate calibration. ◀

Adjusting the compass variance zone

The compass variance zone must be adjusted in certain circumstances, i.e. during long distance trips.

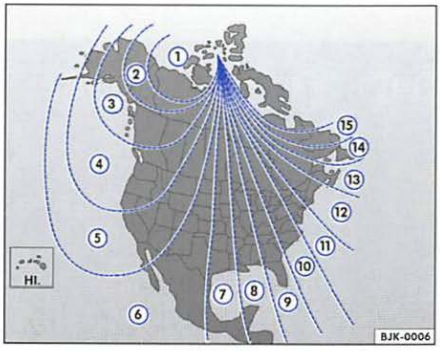


Fig. 12 North America variance zone chart

Opening the Compass menu

– Select **Set up** from the main menu ⇒page 12and press the button Ⓐ under the windshield wiper lever or the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel.

– Select the sub-menu **Compass** and press OK button.

Adjusting the compass variance

– Select **Zone** and press the OK button.

– Find your current location and variance zone ⇒fig. 12.

– Use the rocker switch Ⓑ in the windshield wiper lever to mark the menu entry **+ 1 Zone** or **- Zone** and press the button Ⓐ to either increase or decrease the compass variance zone shown in the display above.
Or

– Use buttons Ⓒ on the multi-function steering wheel to either increase or decrease the compass variance zone shown in the display above.

Exiting the Compass menu

– Scroll down to **Back**.

– Press the OK button.

In display	Function
Compass	The name of the displayed menu
XX	Compass reading
+ 1 Zone	Increase the set value by 1

In display	Function
- 1 Zone	Decreases the set value by 1
Back	The **Compass** menu is closed and the last displayed menu is opened.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the option level of your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Warning lights

Overview of the warning lights

The warning lights indicate a number of different functions and possible malfunctions.

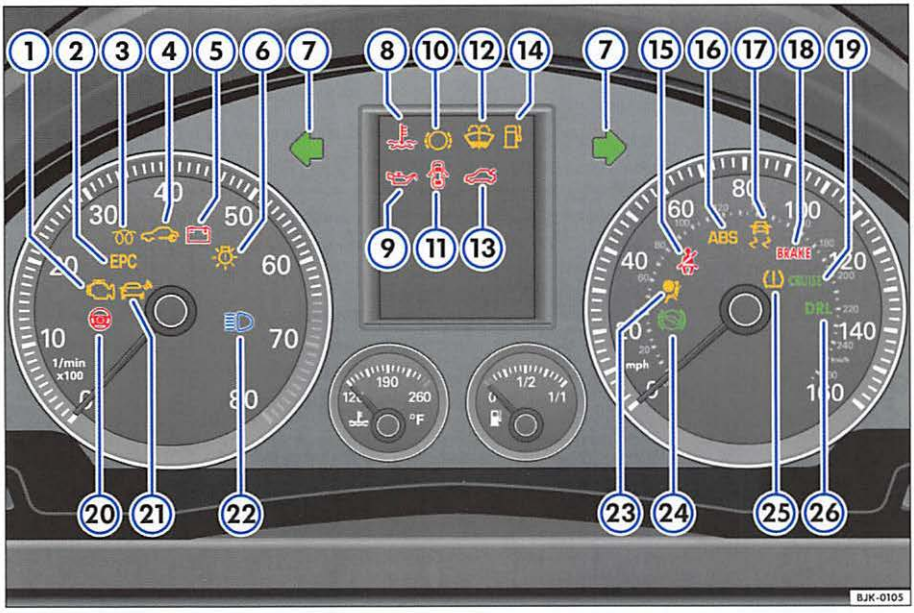


Fig. 13 Instrument cluster with warning lights. Some of the warning lights listed in this section are on certain models only or are options. ▶

Item	Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
①		Exhaust system malfunction	⇒page 22
②		Electronic Power Control (gasoline engine only)	⇒page 23
③		Glow plug system (diesel engine) **Illuminated:** Glow plug system switched on **Flashing:** engine malfunction.	⇒page 23
④		Electronic immobilizer	⇒page 23
⑤		Generator malfunction STOP	⇒page 24
⑥		Defective bulb	⇒page 24
⑦		Turn signals	⇒page 24
⑧		Coolant temperature / Coolant level STOP	⇒page 24
⑨		Engine oil pressure STOP	⇒page 25
⑩		Brake pad wear indicator	⇒page 26
⑪		Doors open	⇒page 26
⑫		Windshield washer fluid level	⇒page 26
⑬		Display for engine hood or rear lid open	⇒page 26
⑭		Fuel level too low	⇒page 26
⑮		Fasten seat belts!	⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Seat belts"
⑯	 or ABS	Malfunction in anti-lock brake system	⇒page 27
⑰		**Flashing:** ESP or ASR in operation, **Illuminated:** ESP or ASR malfunction or switched off	⇒page 28
⑱	 or BRAKE	Parking brake applied or low brake fluid level or malfunction in brake system STOP	⇒page 28
⑲	 or CRUISE	Cruise control system switched on	⇒page 29
⑳		Power steering system	⇒page 29

Item	Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
㉑		Fuel filler cap not properly closed	⇒page 29
㉒		High beam	⇒page 29
㉓		Airbag or belt tensioner system malfunction or airbag disabled	⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Monitoring the advanced airbag system"
㉔		Depress brake pedal	⇒page 30
㉕		Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)	⇒page 30
㉖	DRL or	Day time running lights	⇒page 30

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information can lead to a breakdown in traffic, collision and serious personal injury.

- **Never ignore warning lights and warning texts!**
- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.**

Note

Failure to observe warning lights or warning texts can cause damage to your vehicle.

Tips

- Some warning lights are also displayed in the instrument cluster. The priority of malfunctions is displayed with red and yellow symbols and displayed with additional information.
- If one of the lights marked with STOP comes on while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your booklet for explanations.
- Some features mentioned are standard equipment on some models and options on others. ◀

Exhaust system

This warning light monitors the exhaust system.

Warning light flashes:

Misfiring can damage the catalytic converter. Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealership. Have the engine checked.

The following text is displayed in the instrument cluster display: **Emissions workshop!**

Warning light is illuminated:

A malfunction has developed during driving which has reduced the quality of the exhaust emissions. Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealership. Have the engine checked.

The following text is displayed in the instrument cluster display: **Emissions workshop!** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with gasoline engine

Electronic Power Control (EPC) EPC

This warning light monitors the engine management system on gasoline engines.

The warning light EPC (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on to show that the light is working properly. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If a malfunction develops in the engine management system while you are driving, this warning light will light up. Have the engine checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible.

The following text is displayed on the instrument cluster: **Engine fault!** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a diesel engine

Glow plug system / Engine malfunction

The indicator lamp lights up to show that the glow plugs are preheating. It flashes if there is an engine malfunction.

Warning light stays lit up

The warning light lights up while the glow plugs are preheating. When the warning light goes off, the engine should be started right away. The warning light does **not** light up if the engine is **at operating temperature**. The engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not light up when the engine is **cold**. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning light flashes

If a malfunction develops in the engine management system while you are driving, the glow plug light will flash . The engine should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

The following text is displayed on the instrument cluster: **Engine fault!** ◀

Electronic immobilizer

This warning light flashes if an unauthorized key is used.

There is a chip in the key. It automatically deactivates the immobilizer when the key is inserted into the ignition lock. The immobilizer will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

This warning light will light up for approximately 3 seconds when the ignition is switched on. This warning light flashes if an unauthorized key is used . The information text displayed in the instrument cluster display is: **Immobilizer active!** The vehicle cannot be used in that case .

The engine can, however, be started if the appropriate coded genuine Volkswagen key is used.

Tips

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine Volkswagen key. ◀

Generator

This warning light signals a malfunction in the generator.

The warning light lights up when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine starts running.

If the warning light lights up while driving, the generator is no longer charging the battery. You should immediately drive to the nearest qualified dealership.

However, you should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery further. ◀

Burned-out light bulb

The warning light lights up when a bulb in the exterior lighting is burned-out.

The warning light lights up when a bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting is not working. ◀

Turn signals

The warning light flashes when the turn signals are being used.

Depending on which turn signal is operated, either the left ⇦ or right ⇨ indicator lamp flashes. Both indicator lights will flash at the same time when the emergency warning lights are switched on.

If one turn signal fails, the indicator lamp will start flashing twice as fast. ◀

Engine coolant level / temperature

The warning symbol lights up if the coolant temperature is too high or if the coolant level is too low.

There is a fault if:

- The warning symbol does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning symbol lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving. Three warnings sound ⇒⚠.

This means that either the coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high.

Coolant level too low

The following information text is displayed:
STOP Check coolant Owner's manual!
⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Coolant"

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. If the needle is in the normal range, top off with coolant at the earliest opportunity ⇒⚠.

Coolant temperature too high

The following information text is displayed:
STOP Check coolant Owner's manual!.

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. The coolant temperature is too high if the needle is over to the far right on the dial. **Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and wait for it to cool down.** Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a radiator fan fault. Check the radiator fan fuse and have it replaced if necessary ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Fuses". ▶

If the warning light lights up again after driving on for a short distance, **stop the vehicle and switch off the engine.** Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒booklet 3.2 "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns.

- **Never open the engine hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.**
- **Always let the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the engine hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.**
- **When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the engine hood:**
  - **Remove the key from the ignition.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - **Apply the parking brake firmly and put the selector in P (Park, automatic transmission) or Neutral (manual transmission).**
  - **Keep children and others away from the vehicle.**
- **Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can result in serious personal injury.**
- **Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly - even when the engine has been switched off for a longer period of time and the key has been removed from the ignition.**
- **Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. A hot engine will heat the coolant and put it under pressure. Removing a cap that is under pressure can result in serious personal injury and/or burns.**
- **Always protect face, hands and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.**
- **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.**
- **Never spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.** ◀

Engine oil pressure

This warning symbol indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If this warning symbol starts to flash, and three warnings sound, switch off the engine and check the oil level. Top off with engine oil if necessary ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Engine oil."

The following information text is displayed:
STOP Oil pressure Engine off Owner's manual!.

If the symbol flashes even though the oil level is correct, *do not* drive on. Do not let the engine idle. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tips

The oil pressure warning symbol is not an oil level gauge. Check the oil level regularly, preferably every time you get gas. ◀

Brake pad wear indicator

Since the brake pad wear indicator only monitors the front brake pads, have the rear brake pads inspected at the same time.

The following information text is displayed: **Check brake pad** ⇒⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- **Have the brake pads inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop if the brake pads worn symbol lights up.** ◀

Doors open

The warning light indicates, when the ignition is switched on, that doors are open.

The warning light should go out when **all** doors are properly closed. ◀

Windshield washer fluid level

This warning light lights up to indicate that the windshield washer level is too low.

You should top off the reservoir as soon as possible ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Windshield washer system".

The information text displayed in the instrument cluster display is: **Top up wash fluid!** ◀

Display for open engine hood or rear lid

The warning light indicates that the engine hood or rear lid is open when the ignition is switched on.

Warning light or should go out when the engine hood or rear lid is properly closed. ◀

Fuel level too low

This symbol lights up to indicate that the fuel tank is down to the reserve level.

The symbol lights up when the amount of fuel in the fuel tank is down to approximately 1.8 gallons (7 liters). An **acoustic warning** is also given. This serves as a reminder to fill up with fuel at the next opportunity. ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Filling the tank"

The information text displayed in the instrument cluster display is: **Please refuel!** ◀

Anti-lock brake system ABS or (ABS)

The warning light monitors the ABS and the integrated electronic differential lock (EDL).

The warning light ABS or (ABS) should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light goes out again after the system has run through an automatic test sequence.

There is a fault in the ABS if:

- The warning light **ABS** does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning light does not turn off again after a few seconds.
- The warning light lights up when the vehicle is moving.

The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (except that the ABS is not active). Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Further information on ABS ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Smart technology."

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESP/ASR warning light will also light up.

Fault in the main brake system

If the ABS warning light **ABS** lights up together with the brake warning light **ABS**, this indicates not only a fault in the ABS function, but also a possible fault in the brake system ⇒⚠.

The following text is displayed on the instrument cluster: **Brake fault Owner's manual!** ⇒⚠.

Electronic differential lock (EDL) fault

The EDL works in conjunction with the ABS. A malfunction in the EDL is indicated by the ABS warning light **ABS**. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Further information on EDL ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Smart technology."

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or (!) does not go out, or if it lights up when driving the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Immediately stop driving and get professional help ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brake fluid."**
- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or (!) lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light ABS or (ABS), the ABS may not be working properly and the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control. If you believe that it is safe to do so, go immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**
- **If the ABS warning light ABS does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible.** ◀

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) / Anti-slip regulation ASR

This warning light monitors the Electronic Stabilization Program or the Anti-slip regulation.

The warning light has the following functions:

- It lights up when the ignition is switched on and should turn off again after about 2 seconds.
- It flashes when the ESP/ASR is activated when driving.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP/ASR.
- It will light up continuously if the ESP/ASR is switched off ⇒page 91.
- It will also light up if a fault should occur in the ABS because the ESP/ASR operates in conjunction with the ABS.

If the warning light lights up and stays on after the engine is started, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the function. In this case the ESP/ASR can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the warning light goes out, this means the system is fully functional. ◀

Brake system / Parking brake (!) or BRAKE

The warning light lights up if the parking brake is applied, if the brake fluid level is too low or if there is a malfunction in the brake system.

This warning light (!) or BRAKE lights up if

- the parking brake is on

If you drive faster than 3 mph (5 km/h) with the parking brake on, the following message will appear in the instrument cluster display: **Handbrake on!**. An acoustic warning is also given.

- If the brake fluid level is too low ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Brake fluid"

The information text displayed in the instrument cluster display is: **STOP! Brake fluid Owner's manual!**.

This warning light can light up together with the anti-locking brake system warning light ⇒page 27.

⚠ WARNING

- **Stop! Before working in the engine compartment always read and heed all warnings ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.**
- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or (!) does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there's a malfunction in the brake system. Immediately stop driving and get professional assistance ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter "Brake fluid".**
- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or (!) lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light (ABS) the ABS may not be working properly and the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control. If you believe that it is safe to do so, go immediately to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Drive slowly and avoid sudden hard brake application.**
- **If the ABS warning light does not go out or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with standard brakes (without ABS). Contact Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control

Cruise control CRUISE or

The indicator light CRUISE or lights up when the cruise control is switched on . ◀

Power steering system

The power steering system automatically adjusts itself to the vehicle's speed and the steering wheel angle.

The warning light should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on..

There is a malfunction in the power steering system if the warning light (or) does not go out or lights up while you are driving. The power steering could be reduced (lamp) or may have failed completely (lamp and three acoustic warnings). Have the power steering system checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealership as soon as possible. If the yellow warning light remains off after the ignition has been restarted and you have driven a short distance, you do not need to consult an authorized Volkswagen dealership.

Remember, you will need considerably more force than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

The power steering does not work when the engine is off (e.g. when the vehicle is being towed).

Tips

If the battery has been disconnected, the yellow warning light lights up when the ignition is switched on . It should go out when you have driven a short distance. ◀

Fuel filler cap not closed properly

This warning light lights up when the fuel filler cap is not properly closed.

If the warning light comes on, you should turn off the engine and close the fuel filler cap properly

Once the cap is properly closed all the way, the warning light will go out when the ignition is turned on again and the check cycle is complete. The completion of the check cycle depends on how you drive.

If the warning light has been on for at least 5 minutes it will go out only when the ignition is turned off and on again.

Note

Always make sure the fuel filler cap is screwed on all the way. This prevents fuel from spilling out or evaporating. ◀

High beam

This warning light lights up when the high beams are on.

The warning light lights up when the high beams are on or when the headlight flasher is operated. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Depress brake pedal

The foot brake must be depressed when this warning light lights up. This is necessary when the automatic transmission selector lever[7] is moved out of the P or N positions. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Tire pressure monitoring system

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The tire monitor checks the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. If the rolling circumference of a wheel changes, this is shown by the warning light. The rolling circumference of a tire can change if:

- the tire pressure is too low
- the tire has structural damage
- the vehicle is loaded more heavily on one side
- the wheels on one axle are loaded more heavily (for example when towing a trailer or driving in mountains)
- if snow chains have been fitted
- if the spare wheel has been fitted
- if one wheel per axle has been changed

If the wheels are loaded more heavily than normal (e. g. when towing a trailer or transporting heavy loads), the tire pressure must be raised to the recommended full-load tire pressure (see sticker on the left door jamb).

Indicator light comes on

If the pressure of a tire is considerably lower than the tire pressure memorized in the vehicle control unit, the warning light comes on. An acoustic warning is also given

Indicator light flashes

The warning light flashes if there is a fault in the system. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- **If the tire pressure monitor display warning light comes on reduce your speed immediately and avoid swerving maneuvers and hard braking. Stop and check your tire pressure as soon as possible.**
- **The driver is personally responsible for the correct tire pressure. The tire pressure should, therefore, be checked regularly.**
- **In certain circumstances (e.g. sporty driving style, winter driving conditions and unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitor display warning light may become slow or may no display anything.**

Tips

If the battery has been disconnected, the yellow warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when you have driven a short distance. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Day time running lights

Day time running lights DRL or

This warning light comes on to indicate that the daytime running lights are on.

When the ignition is switched on and the parking brake is not pulled up, the headlights (low beam with reduced brightness) will automatically come on. No other lights on the outside of your vehicle will be on and the instrument lights will also be off. ◀

[7] Optional equipment

Opening and closing Keys

Key Set

Your vehicle's key set contains:

- two folding master keys with remote control and a panic button
- one valet key
- one key tag with the key number.

Key tag

If you need a replacement key, take your key tag to an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

The key number is needed to obtain another key, therefore:

- Always keep the key tag in a safe place.
- Never leave it in the vehicle.

If you sell the vehicle, be sure to give the key tag to the new owner.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or while it is rolling to a stop. The steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**

Note

- The keys with the remote control contain electronic components. Protect these keys from moisture and rough handling.
- Never leave any vehicle keys inside the vehicle. Entry by unauthorized persons could harm the vehicle or your vehicle could be stolen. Always take the keys with you whenever you leave your vehicle.

Tips

- A replacement key can only be made with the key number.
- The key number identifies the way the key has to be cut and allows the microchip in the key to be programmed to work with the coded electronic immobilizer in your vehicle.
- A key without the special microchip or with a chip that has not been coded properly will not work with your vehicle, even if it has been cut correctly.
- Additional remote control keys are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers. Each key must be programmed to work with your vehicle.
- You can use up to four remote control keys with your vehicle. ◀

Remote control key

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

The remote control key can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance.

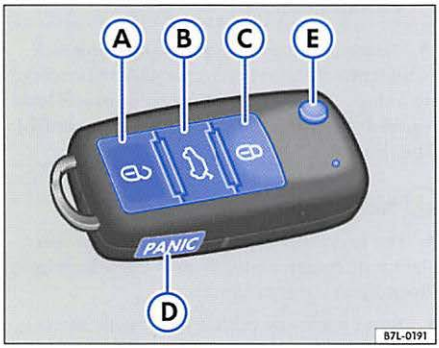


Fig. 14 Assignment of buttons on the remote control key

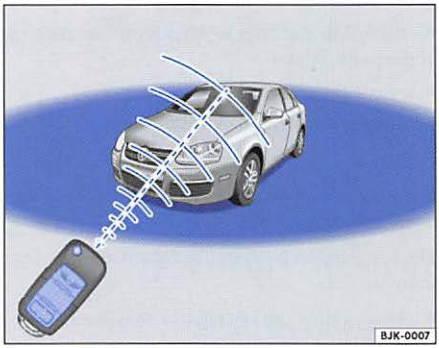


Fig. 15 Range of remote control

Controls on the remote control key

🔓 – Unlocking the vehicle ⇒fig. 14 Ⓐ

🚗 – Unlocking the rear lid Ⓑ

🔒 – Locking the vehicle Ⓒ

The red PANIC button Ⓓ activates the "panic function".

Press the release button Ⓔ to fold out the key bit.

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are inside the key fob. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The maximum range of the remote control depends on various conditions. The range is shorter when the batteries are weak ⇒fig. 15.

The indicator light in the key fob lights up whenever buttons Ⓐ, Ⓑ or Ⓒ is pushed and when the battery is getting weak.

Locking and unlocking

Using "set-up" in the instrument cluster you can select which door or doors unlock when you use the remote control. Choose the settings you want in the CONVENIENCE menu under DOOR OPEN..

Panic button

When you press the panic button, the horn sounds for about 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for about 4 minutes. Pressing the panic button again turns them off. Use the panic button only in an emergency.

Replacing the battery

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer can change the batteries for you.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.**
- **Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the ve-**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

hicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or while it is rolling to a stop. The steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**

Note

- Never leave any vehicle keys inside the vehicle. Entry by unauthorized persons could harm the vehicle or your vehicle could be stolen. Always take the keys with you whenever you leave your vehicle.
- Unsuitable batteries can damage the remote control key. Replace used batteries with new ones of the same voltage and same size.

Tips

- The remote control key only works when you are in range of the receiver ⇒page 32, fig. 15 (blue area).
- When you unlock your vehicle with the remote control, you have 30 seconds to open a door or the rear lid. If you do not, the vehicle will automatically relock itself. This safety relock feature prevents you from leaving your vehicle unlocked.
- If the remote control does not work, it may have to be synchronized again ⇒page 33.
- If you try to use the remote control several times outside its effective range, the remote control may not work and will have to be reset ⇒page 33.
- Use the remote control only if you intend to use one of the functions. Since terrain and conditions may vary, pressing the remote may unlock the vehicle or set off the panic function even if you think your are out of range.
- You can program up to 4 remote controls for your vehicle. ◀

Resetting the remote control key

The remote key has to be reset if it does not lock or unlock the vehicle.

– Switch on the ignition and leave the key in the ignition lock.

– Unlock the driver's door manually by inserting the master key with remote control in the driver's door lock.

– Press the unlock key ⇒page 32, fig. 14 Ⓐ in the remote control once.

– Remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Close the door and check if the remote control is reset.

Tips

The remote control key will have to be reset if you press the button 🔓 several times outside its effective range and the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked using the remote. ◀

Central locking system

Description of the central locking system

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock all the doors from one point.

Central locking can be operated using any of the following options:

- manually using your key in the driver's door,
- using the remote control key,
- using central locking button ⇒page 34.

Individual unlocking

To unlock just the driver's door: turn the key in the driver's door lock or press the button in the remote control key **one time only**.

To unlock all the vehicle doors: turn the key in the driver's door lock or press the button in the remote control key **two times**.

Using **set-up** in the main menu you can select whether the driver's door or all doors unlock when you use the remote control. Choose the settings you want in the **CONVENIENCE** menu under **DOOR OPEN**. ◀

Central locking button

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from the inside using the central locking button.



Fig. 16 Detail of the driver's door: central locking button

Locking the vehicle

– Press the ⇒fig. 16 button ⇒⚠.

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press the button.

The central locking button works even when the ignition is switched off.

Please note the following when you use the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- The anti-theft alarm is **not** activated when you press the button button.
- If you try to lock the vehicle using the remote control while the driver's door is still open, the driver's door will not lock. This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.
- You can unlock all the doors separately from inside the vehicle. You will have to pull the door release handle *once*. The door will be opened by pulling the door release handle again.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power locks can result in serious personal injury.

- **Locking doors from the inside can help prevent unintended door opening during a collision and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the central locking button. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. People trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.
- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never allow passengers to remain in a locked vehicle. Locked doors can delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in the event of an emergency. In an emergency any person still inside the vehicle might not be able to get out.

Tips

When you lock your vehicle with the central locking button:

- The doors and the rear lid cannot be opened from the outside (for your safety, for example, when stopped at a traffic light).
- If you try to lock the vehicle using the central locking button while the driver's door is still open, the driver's door will not lock. This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle. ◀

Child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

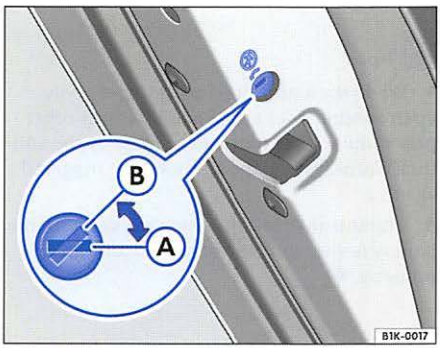


Fig. 17 20 Child safety lock in the rear left door: A – switched off, B – switched on

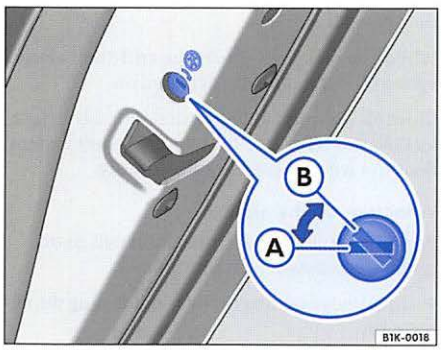


Fig. 18 Child safety lock in the rear right door: A – switched off, B – switched on

The rear doors have a child safety lock. You can use any vehicle keys to engage or disengage the lock.

Engaging the child safety lock

– Use a vehicle key to turn the slot in the door to the position shown in ⇒fig. 17 Ⓑ / ⇒fig. 18 Ⓑ.

Disengaging the child safety lock

– Use a vehicle key to turn the slot in the open door to the position shown in Ⓐ.

The child safety lock can be activated to prevent children opening the doors by accident. When the child-proof lock is activated, the door can be opened from the outside only. The child safety ▶

lock can be switched on and off using a key in the opened door. ◀

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to vehicles: with anti-theft alarm

Description of anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm triggers an alarm if unauthorized movements are detected around the vehicle.

Activating the anti-theft alarm system

– Lock the vehicle.

Switching the alarm off

– Unlock the vehicle using the unlock button in the remote control key or unlock the vehicle by inserting the vehicle key into the driver's door lock.

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it. You will hear and see the alarms if someone tries to break into the vehicle.

When you lock the vehicle, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically switched on.

Close all windows and doors completely before locking the vehicle so that the anti-theft system does not trigger alarms unnecessarily.

What triggers the alarm?

With the vehicle locked, the alarm will go off under the following circumstances:

- Manually opening of the rear lid using the vehicle key,
- Opening a door,
- Opening the engine hood,
- Opening the rear lid.

When the alarm is triggered, the horn will sound for about 30 seconds and the turn signals will flash for about 4 minutes.

How can I switch off the alarm system?

You can switch off the anti-theft alarm system either by unlocking the vehicle using the unlock button on the remote control or by unlocking the vehicle inserting the key into the driver's door lock.

Tips

- When the alarm stops sounding and you open another door or the rear lid or any other part of the vehicle that is monitored by the anti-theft alarm system, the alarm will be triggered again.
- The anti-theft alarm system works even if the battery is disconnected or not working properly. ◀

Rear lid

Opening the rear lid

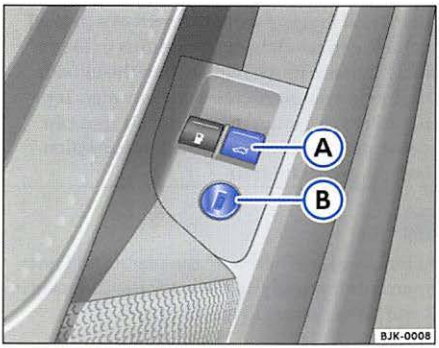


Fig. 19 Detail of the driver's door: rear lid release button

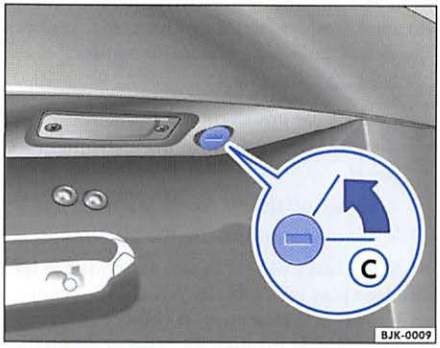


Fig. 20 Rear lid lock

There are three different ways to unlock and open the rear lid:

Unlocking the rear lid

– Press the button in the remote control key. The rear lid will open automatically all the way or

– Pull the rear lid release switch (⇒fig. 19 Ⓐ) in the driver's door. The rear lid opens automatically all the way or

– Insert the master key into the lock in the rear lid and turn the key counter-clockwise ⇒fig. 20 Ⓒ. The anti-theft alarm system will remain active though and the vehicle alarm will go off. To deactivate the anti-theft alarm system press the button in the remote control.

Override lock for the rear lid release switch

– In the driver's door there is also an override lock next to the rear lid release switch. Insert the master key into the lock ⇒fig. 19 Ⓑ and turn it clockwise. When you activate this lock the rear lid release switch is inactive. This way the luggage compartment remains locked.

A graphic display in the instrument cluster will indicate if the rear lid is open or improperly closed. A warning will also sound if the rear lid is open when the vehicle is driven faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an open rear lid can lead to serious personal injury.

- **After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed and cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving, even though the key has been turned to the locked position.**
- **Always keep the rear lid closed while driving to help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of carbon monoxide poisoning:
  - Close all windows,
  - Close the power roof,
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

Tips

At temperatures below 0 ° the rear lid will not open automatically all the way after unlockig it. It will be necessary to lift it by hand. ◀

Closing the rear lid

– Place your hand into one of the handle recesses in the inside trim of the rear lid ⇒⚠ and pull the rear lid down.

If the vehicle is locked (anti-theft alarm system activated) and the remote control key is used to open the rear lid only, the rear lid is locked immediately when it is closed. All turn signals flash briefly as confirmation.

A display appears in the instrument cluster if the rear lid is not properly closed.

⚠ WARNING

Always close the rear lid properly to help avoid serious personal injury.

- Never let anyone get in the way of the edges of the rear lid or its hinges when the rear lid is closing.
- Always make sure that the rear lid closes properly when you close it so that it cannot open suddenly while the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury, especially when it is very hot or cold.
- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key or the central locking button. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle.
- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children. ◀

Windows

Power windows

All power windows can be operated using the controls in the driver's door. The other doors each have their own switch.

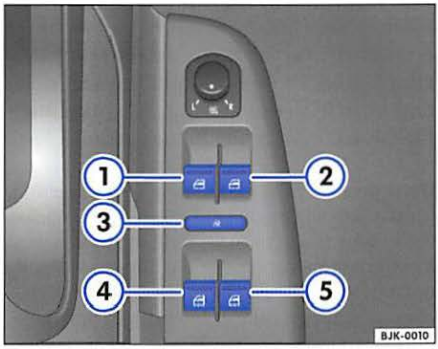


Fig. 21 Section of the driver door: window controls

Opening and closing the windows

– Press the ⇒fig. 21 button to open a window.

– Pull the button to close a window ⇒⚠.

Opening and closing all windows at the same time

– Open the driver's door.

– Press the ⇒fig. 21 ① button for about two seconds to open all windows at the same time.

Always close the windows fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒⚠.

You can use the power windows for about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver door nor the front passenger door has been opened and the key has not been removed from the ignition.

You can open all windows at the same time by pressing button ① as long as you have opened the driver's door and you have not switched on the ignition. Once the ignition is switched on, button ①. will only open the driver's window.

Buttons in the driver door

① Button for window in front left door
② Button for window in front right door

Buttons for rear windows

③ Safety switch for disabling the power window buttons in the rear doors.
④ Button for window in rear left door
⑤ Button for window in rear right door

Safety switch

Safety switch ③ in the driver door can be used to disable the rear power windows.

The symbol in the safety switch is not illuminated: the buttons in the rear doors are "on".

The symbol in the safety switch is illuminated: the buttons in the rear doors are "off".

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- **Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.**
- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one especially children remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Unsupervised use of keys can result in use of vehicle systems such as power windows leading to serious personal injury. The power windows will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **When children are in the back seat, use the safety switch to disable the rear power windows and prevent them from being opened and closed.**

Tips

If something obstructs the window while it is closing (going up), the window will stop and then automatically open (go down) again ⇒page 41. If this happens, see why the window could not close before attempting to close it again. ◀

One-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing means you do not have to hold the button.

The buttons for the windows have two positions for opening the window and two for closing it. This makes it easier to open or close windows to the desired position.

One-touch closing

– Pull the button up briefly to the second position. The window closes completely.

One-touch opening

– Push the button down briefly to the second position. The window opens completely.

Re-activating the one-touch opening and closing again

– The one-touch opening and closing function will not work after the vehicle battery has been disconnected or if the battery is dead. You will have to re-activate this function.

– Close all windows ⇒⚠ in "Power windows" on page 39.

– Lock the vehicle from outside using your key and hold the key in the lock position for at least one second. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

If you push (or pull) a button to the first position, the window will open (or close) until you release the button. If you push (or pull) the button briefly to the second position, the window will open *(one-touch opening)* or close *(one-touch closing)* automatically. If you push or pull the button while the window is opening or closing, the window will stop.

One-touch closing does not work when the ignition has been switched off, even if the key is still in the ignition.

The automatic open and close function will not work if the battery has been temporarily disconnected, or if the battery is discharged. If this happens, then you must switch on the one-touch opening/closing again.

The one-touch function does not work if there is a malfunction in the power windows. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer to have the malfunction corrected. ◀

Pinch protection

The windows have a pinch protection feature. This helps reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing.

- If a window is obstructed when closing, the window will stop and open (go down) again ⇒⚠.
- If this happens, see why the window could not close before attempting to close it again. If you try to close the window again within 10 seconds, the window's closing force is automatically increased.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window will stop at this point.
- If there is no obvious reason why the window cannot be closed, try to close it again within 5 seconds. The pinch protection is now off. **The window closes with maximum force.**

If you wait longer than the 10 or 5 seconds described above, the window will open fully when you operate one of the buttons. One-touch closing is on again.

The one-touch function and pinch protection do not work if there is a malfunction in the power windows. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer to have the malfunction corrected.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- **Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.**
- **Always make sure that no one is in the way while overriding the pinch protection to close a window!**
- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one especially children remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Unsupervised use of keys can result in use of vehicle systems such as power windows leading to serious personal injury.**
- **The power windows will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **When children are in the back seat, use the safety switch to disable the rear power windows and prevent them from being opened and closed.** ◀

Convenience opening and closing

You can open or close the windows from outside the vehicle.

Convenience closing

– Hold the key in the close position in the lock of the driver's door, until all windows are closed.

– Turn the key the other way to interrupt the function.

Convenience opening

– Hold the key in the open position in the lock of the driver's door, until the windows are open.

– Turn the key the other way to interrupt the function.

Using **set-up** in the main menu, you can select if you want the driver's door window, all windows or no window at all to open when you unlock your vehicle using the master key in the driver's door lock. Choose the settings you want in the **CONVENIENCE** menu.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- **Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.** ◀

Power roof

Applies to vehicles: with power roof

Opening and closing the power roof

You can open and close the power roof using the rotary control when the ignition is switched on.

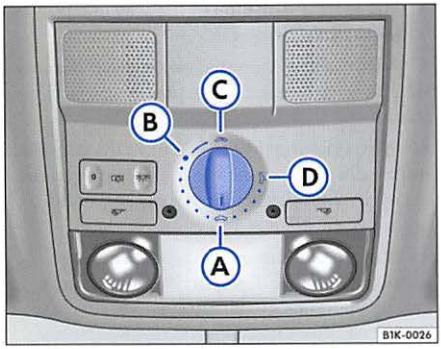


Fig. 22 Section of roof: rotary control for power roof

Opening the power roof

– Turn the rotary control to position ⇒fig. 22 Ⓑ. The roof opens to the comfort position where wind noise is reduced.

– To open the roof further, turn the switch to position Ⓒ and hold the switch in this position until the roof opens to the desired position.

Tilting the power roof

– Turn the rotary control to position Ⓓ.

Closing the power roof

– Turn the rotary control to position Ⓐ ⇒⚠.

Always close the power roof fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒⚠.

The power roof can be operated for 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.

Sunshade

The sunshade automatically opens when you open the sunroof. If you prefer, you can close the sunshade when the power roof is closed.

⚠ WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power roof will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that no one is in the way when while overriding the pinch protection to close the power roof!**
- **Always be careful when closing the power roof. Pinch protection will not always be able to prevent serious injuries under all circumstances.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power roof can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that no one is in the way of the power roof when it is closing. There is no pinch protection when closing the power roof from outside.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle - especially if they have access to the vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in starting of the engine and use of vehicle systems (e. g. power windows) which could result in serious injury. The doors can be locked with the remote control key trapping people in the vehicle in an emergency.**
- **The power roof function until one of the front doors is opened and the key removed from the ignition.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with power windows and power roof

Convenience closing

You can close the power roof from outside the vehicle. The windows will close first, and then the power roof ⇒⚠ in "Opening and closing the power roof" on page 42.

– Insert your key into the driver's door lock, turn it to the lock position and hold it in this position until the power roof is completely closed.

– Press the unlock button if you want to stop the power roof from closing.

– Turn the key the other way to the unlock position if you want to stop the power roof from closing.

Tips

The power roof rotary control remains in the last position selected if the roof is closed using convenience closing from outside the vehicle and will have to be turned back to its original position the next time you drive. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with power roof

Power roof - pinch protection

The power roof has *pinch protection* that prevents larger objects from getting trapped when the roof is closed. The pinch protection does not however prevent fingers from getting pinched against the roof opening. The power roof stops and opens again immediately if it is obstructed when closing.

If the power roof has been opened again by the pinch protection, it can be closed only by pressing back the rotary control in position ⇒page 42, fig. 22 Ⓐ until the power roof has closed fully. **Please note that the roof will now close without pinch protection.**

⚠ WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power roof will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that no one is in the way while overriding the pinch protection to close the power roof!**
- **The pinch protection feature does not prevent fingers from getting pinched against the roof opening.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Homelink Universal Transmitter

HomeLink® Universal Transmitter

The HomeLink® feature will learn the radio frequency codes of up to three transmitters.

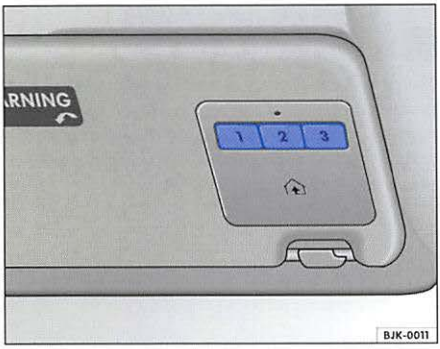


Fig. 23 Home link buttons in driver's sun visor

Buttons ⇒fig. 23 1, 2 and 3 in the driver's sun visor can be used to program the settings of remote controls, for example for a home safety alarm or an automatic garage door opener.

Programming

1. Simultaneously press and hold buttons 1 and 3 until the indicator light above button 2 begins to flash. Release the buttons.

2. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter approx. 2 inches[8] (5 cm) from the memory buttons keeping the indicator light in view.

3. Simultaneously press and hold the button on your remote control whose function you would like to assign to a memory button and button 1, 2 or 3 until the HomeLink® indicator light above button 2 starts to flash slowly and then rapidly.

Reprogramming a remote control

1. Press button 1, 2 or 3.

2. Hold your remote control, for example for the garage door, approx. 2 inches (5 cm) from the memory buttons.

3. Press the button on your remote control whose function you would like to assign to a memory button and press button 1, 2 or 3 at the same time.

4. Hold down both buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light above button 2 starts to flash slowly and then quickly.

Operating the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter

1. Turn the ignition switch on.

2. Press button 1, 2 or 3 to activate the desired remote control function ⇒⚠.

Deleting all programmed remote controls

1. Turn the ignition switch on.

2. Simultaneously press and hold buttons 1 and 3 until the lights in the memory buttons flash rapidly.

3. Release the buttons.

The HomeLink® Universal Transmitter is located in the driver's sun visor.

This innovative feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most current transmitters used to activate garage doors, entry door locks, estate gates, security systems, and home or office lighting.

[8] Depending on the hand-held transmitter, the distance vary from 0 and 12 inches (0 and 30 cm)

The HomeLink® Universal Transmitter is capable of operating up to three separately controlled devices.

The HomeLink® operates off the vehicles battery and charging system and has nonvolatile memory. If the battery dies or is disconnected, HomeLink® will retain all programming.

Training a Garage Door Equipped with Rolling Code

If a garage door opener has been programmed but does not activate with HomeLink®, proceed to the following section: "Training a Garage Door Equipped with Rolling Code".

- Locate and press and release the training (or "learning") button on the garage door opener motor head unit. (Exact location and color of the button may vary by garage door opener brand.) If there is difficulty locating the training button, reference the garage door opener Owner's manual or call toll free: 1-800-355-3515.
- Return to the vehicle and press and release the programmed HomeLink® channel. Press and release the HomeLink® channel a second time to complete the programming process. (Some garage door openers may require you to do this procedure a third time.)

The garage door opener should now recognize the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter. You may use either the hand-held transmitter or the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter to activate the garage door.

Accessories

Accessories for the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter are available through various sources.

If you would like additional information on HomeLink®, where to purchase the HomeLink® compatible products, or would like to purchase the HomeLink® Home Lighting Package, please call toll-free: 1-800-355-3515.

Certification

The remote control device complies with

- **USA models:** Part 15 of the FCC Rules
- **Canada models:** RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause any harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- The transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and DOC/MDC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of HomeLink® Universal Transmitter can cause serious personal injury.

- **Garage doors operate with enough force to cause serious personal injury.**
- **Never let anyone get in the way of a garage door when opening or closing it.**
- **Never use the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter with any garage door opener that does have not the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.**
- **A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

Tips

For more information, call toll-free: 1 (800) 355-3515. ◀

Lights and a clear view

Lights

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 24 Section of instrument panel: Switch for the headlights, automatic headlight control and front fog lights

Switching on the headlights

– To switch on the headlights turn the light switch to ⇒fig. 24 ≡D ⇒⚠.

Switching on low and high beam

– Turn the light switch to ≡D. Information on high beam and headlight flasher ⇒page 49. The low beam will only work with the ignition on. When you are starting the engine, the headlights go off and only the parking lights will be on.

Switching of the headlights

– Turn the light switch to position O.

Switching on the fog lights

– Pull the switch out of position ≡D.

Automatic headlight control [9]

– To turn the automatic headlight control on turn the light switch to position AUTO or ⇒fig. 24.

Daytime running lights

• Leave the light switch in position O. The daytime running lights come on automatically when you switch on the ignition.

When the ignition is switched on and the parking brake is not pulled up, the headlights (low beam with reduced brightness) will automatically come on. No other lights on the outside of your vehicle will be on and the instrument lights will also be off.

Automatic headlight control

If automatic headlight control is switched on, the low beam are automatically switched on by a light sensitive sensor if you drive into a tunnel, for example.

The expressway function switches on the low beam if the vehicle is driven at 87 mph (140 km/h) for longer than 10 seconds. The low beam is switched off if the vehicle is driven at 40 mph (65 km/h) for longer than 150 seconds.

The rain function switches on the headlights if the continuous wipe function is switched on for longer than 5 seconds. The low beam is switched off if the continuous wipe or the intermittent wipe functions are switched off for longer than 255 seconds ⇒page 53.

Fog lights [10]

If automatic headlight control is switched on, you cannot switch on the fog lights. ▶

[9] Optional equipment

[10] Optional equipment

⚠ WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

- Never use daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low beam at dusk or when it is dark.
- Rear tail lights do not light up when daytime running lights are on. A vehicle without rear tail lights turned on cannot be seen by others in bad weather at dusk or when its dark.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If automatic headlight control is switched on, the low beam and headlights will not be switched on in fog or heavy rain. You have to switch on the low beam using the light switch.
- Always turn on the headlights before dusk and in rain or fog so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your vehicle from the back.

Tips

If you remove the key from the ignition lock with the lights still on, a buzzer will sound when you open the driver's door to remind you to turn the lights off.

- Always observe local ordinances and traffic regulations when using your lights. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Highline instrument cluster

Coming/leaving home function (orientation lighting)

The coming home / leaving home function is controlled by a light sensor.

Coming home function

If the headlights switch ⇒page 46, fig. 24 is in the "Automatic headlight control" (AUTO or) position when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened and closed, the coming home function (switch-off delay) switches on the orientation lighting. The length of the switch-off delay can be adjusted, or switched off completely, in the Lights and vision setup ⇒page 17.

Leaving home function

When the vehicle is unlocked, the leaving home function switches on the orientation lighting. The lighting is switched off as soon as the ignition is switched on.

Tips

If the coming home or leaving home function is switched on, the headlights, side marker light, taillight and license plate lights will come on.

- If you remove the ignition key and open the driver door while the vehicle lights are on, you will **not hear** an acoustic warning if the coming home function is switched on.
- You can set the coming home function switch off delay in the **Lights and vision menu**, provided your vehicle has this menu in the display. ◀

Instrument cluster illumination



Fig. 25 Section of the dash panel: control for instrument illumination

Instrument cluster illumination

– Turn the thumbwheel ⇒fig. 25 to adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster illumination. The headlight must be on when you do this.

Dynamic headlight range control

Vehicles with gas discharge lamps[1)] ("Xenon light") are equipped with dynamic headlight range control. This means that the headlights will adjust themselves to match the load level of the vehicle. They will also adjust to "nodding movements" when driving off or braking. ◀

Emergency flasher switch ⚠

The emergency flashers are used to draw the attention of other motorists to your vehicle in case of an emergency.



Fig. 26 Section of instrument panel: switch for the emergency flasher

If you find yourself in an emergency situation:

1. Park your vehicle a safe distance from moving traffic.

2. Press button ⇒fig. 26 ⚠ to switch on the emergency flasher ⇒⚠.

3. Switch the engine off.

4. Set the parking brake firmly.

5. Move the selector lever to the **P** position (Automatic transmission).

6. Use a warning triangle or other warning equipment to draw the attention of other motorists to your vehicle.

7. Always take the key with you if you leave the vehicle.

You should use the emergency flasher under the following situations:

- when you approach a traffic jam
- if your vehicle has a break down
- if your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing a vehicle
- if you find yourself in a dangerous situation

All turn signals flash simultaneously. The two turn signal Indicator lights ⇦⇨ and the light in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The ▶

[1)] Optional equipment

emergency flasher also works when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle stalled or stopped on or beside a highway can be struck by other vehicles and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn of the emergency**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

flasher and use a warning triangle or similar device to warn approaching traffic.

- **Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material that can cause fire.**

Tips

You can discharge the vehicle battery if you leave the emergency flasher on for a long time. ◀

Turn signal ⇦ ⇨ and high beam lever ≡D

The turn signal and high beam lever also operates the headlight flasher.

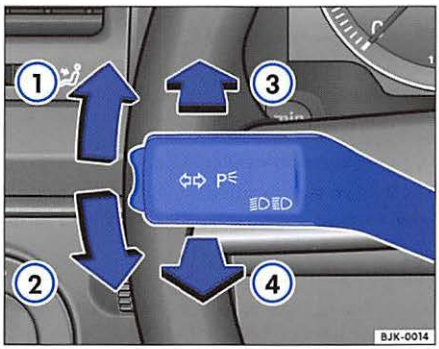


Fig. 27 Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal and high beam lever has the following functions:

Using the turn signals

– Move the lever all the way up ⇒fig. 27 ① to indicate a **right** turn, and all the way down ② to indicate a **left** turn.

Changing lanes

– Push the lever up or down to the point where you can start to feel resistance. The turn signal flashes as long as you hold the lever in this position.

Switching the high beam on and off

– Turn the light switch to ≡D.

– Press the lever forward to position ③ to switch on the high beams.

– Pull the lever back toward you to switch the high beam off again.

Headlight flasher

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel ④ to operate the flasher ⇒⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the headlight flasher or the high beams can distract other drivers causing a crash and serious personal injury.

- **Never use the headlight flasher and high beams when they will blind or distract other motorists.**
- **Always use the turn signals when changing lanes to alert other motorists.**

Tips

- The *turn signals* only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning light ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the instrument cluster.
- The *high beam* can be only be switched on if the headlights are on. The warning light ≡D then comes on in the instrument cluster.
- The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever – even if no other lights are switched on. The warning light ≡D then comes on in the instrument cluster. ▶

• If the turn signal lever is left on, a buzzer sounds when the driver door is opened, even if the key is left in the ignition lock, and the respective headlight and taillight will be illuminated with reduced brightness. These are reminders to switch off the turn signal. ◀

Interior lights

Interior light in the front



Fig. 28 Section of roof: front interior light

Use the rocker switch ⇒fig. 28 to select the following positions:

Courtesy light position

Courtesy lights will come on when you unlock the vehicle and will go off approximately 30 seconds after you close the doors when the switch is in the center position. The interior lights go off whenever you lock the vehicle or when you switch on the ignition.

Interior light switched on

Press the symbol on the rocker switch to switch on a front or rear interior light. The light will stay on.

Interior light switched off O

Press the symbol O on the rocker switch to off a front or rear interior light.

Glove compartment light

The light comes on automatically when the compartment is opened and switches off when you close the compartment.

Luggage compartment lighting

The light comes on automatically when your open the rear lid and goes off when you close it.

Tips

If you should leave one of the vehicle doors open, the interior lights will switch off after approx. 10 minutes, provided you have taken your key with you and that interior light switch in the courtesy light position. This prevents the battery from discharging. ◀

Front reading lights



Fig. 29 Section of roof: front reading lights

Switching on the reading lights

Press the corresponding button ⇒fig. 29 to switch on the reading light. ◀

Background lighting

The background lighting lights up control elements in the center console.

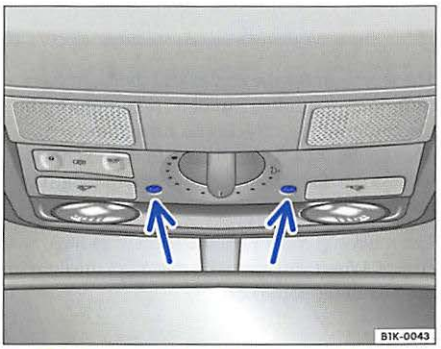


Fig. 30 Section of the roof: background lighting

The background lighting ⇒fig. 30 -arrows- will function when the ignition and the head lights are switched on. The center console is illuminated from above. ◀

Rear interior light



Fig. 31 Section of roof: rear interior light and reading lights

Switching on the reading lights

– Press the button ⇒fig. 31 to switch on the reading light.

Switching off the reading lights

– Press the button to switch off the reading light. ◀

Clear vision

Sun visors

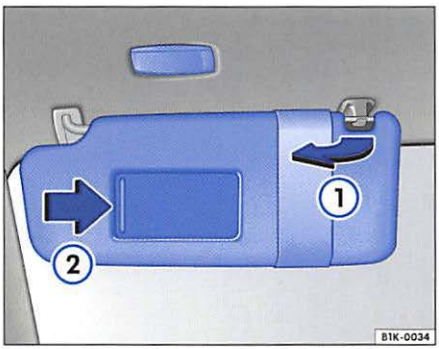


Fig. 32 Sun visors on the driver side

The sun visor for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of its retaining clip in the center of the vehicle and turned toward the doors ⇒fig. 32 ①. Once the sun visor is turned toward the door it can be adjusted in length by pulling it to the rear.

The make-up mirrors in the sun visors have covers. When you open the cover ②, the light in the headliner comes on.

Tips

Before you leave your vehicle, you should make sure that the make-up mirror cover in the visor is closed. This prevents the battery from discharging. ◀

Windshield wipers

Windshield wipers

The windshield wiper lever operates both the windshield wipers and the windshield washing systems.

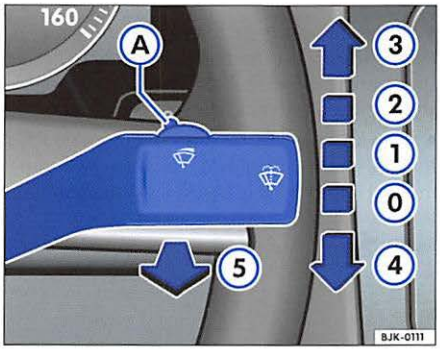


Fig. 33 Windshield wiper and windshield washing lever

The windshield wiper lever ⇒fig. 33 has the following settings:

Intermittent wiping (windshield)

– Move the lever up to position ⇒fig. 33 ①.

– Turn the lever (A) to either shorten or lengthen the interval. Turn the lever to the left to shorten the frequency. Turn the lever to the right to lengthen the frequency. The windshield wipers will wipe slowly and continuously when the lever is moved all the way to the right.

Slow wiping

– Move the lever up to position ②.

Continuous wiping

– Move the lever up to position ③.

Brief wiping

– Move the lever down to position ④ to give the windshield a *brief* wipe. The wiper will begin to move faster if you keep the lever pressed down for longer than 2 seconds.

Windshield wiper and washer system (windshield)

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to position ⑤.

– Release the lever again. The wipers will continue to wipe for approximately 4 seconds.

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever up to position ⓪.

Winter/Service position

The windshield wipers will move to the "Winter/Service position" if you switch the ignition on briefly and then turn it off again, pressing the windshield wiper lever down ④. The windshield wiper arms can be moved forward so that they do not freeze onto the windshield. The windshield wiper arms will have to be pushed back onto the windshield before driving off. The windshield wipers will move back to their original position after you drive off.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades will reduce visibility and increase the risk of collisions and serious injury.

- **Never use the front wiper/washer in freezing weather without first defrosting the windshield. The washer solution may freeze on the window and reduce visibility.**
- **Always clean the windshield wiper blades and all windows regularly.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always replace wiper blades that are worn, damaged or do not keep the windshield clear.**

Note

Before using the wipers for the first time in cold weather, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. To prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor, always loosen blades frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

Tips

- The windshield wipers will only function when the ignition is switched on and the engine hood is closed.
- The previous wiping speed will be automatically selected when the vehicle stops, regarding wiping speed ⇒page 53, fig. 33 ② or ③ is selected. The selected speed will be resumed when the vehicle drives off again.
- The windshield will be wiped again after about five seconds once the windshield wiper and washer system has been operated if the vehicle is in motion.
- If the "intermittent wiping" function has been selected, the intervals are linked to the speed of the vehicle i.e. the intervals will be shorter when the vehicle is travelling faster.
- The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windshield. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with rain sensor

Rain sensor

The rain sensor automatically either shortens or lengthens the intervals between wipes depending on how hard it is raining.

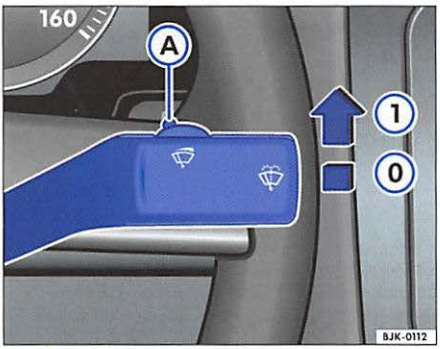


Fig. 34 Windshield wiper and windshield washing lever adjusting the rain sensor settings

Switching on the rain sensor

– Move the wiper lever up to position ⇒fig. 34 ①.

– The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted using lever Ⓐ. Turn the lever to the left decrease sensitivity. Turn the lever to the right to increase sensitivity.

Switching off the rain sensor

– Move the wiper lever down to position ⇒fig. 34 ⓪.

The rain sensor is part of the "intermittent wiping" function. If you switch off the ignition and then switch it back on again, then you will have to reactivate the rain sensor also. Likewise, you must switch off the intermittent wiping and then switch it back on again. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with headlight washer system

Headlight washer system

The headlight washer system cleans the headlights.

The headlight washers are activated automatically when the switch for the headlights is in any other position than O and the windshield wiper lever ⇒page 53, fig. 33 ⑤ is pulled toward the steering wheel for at least 1.5 seconds. However, you should regularly remove any hard or dried on dirt or insects from the headlights, for example whenever you are refueling your vehicle.

Tips

Make sure that the headlight washers work properly in winter, keep the nozzle in the bumper free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray. ◀

Mirrors

Self-dimming inside day-night mirror

It is important for safe driving that you have good vision to the rear.

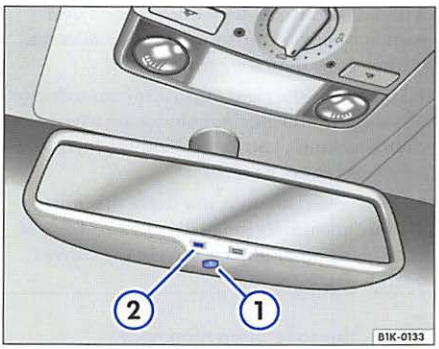


Fig. 35 Self-dimming mirror

Manual dimming inside day-night mirror

With the mirror in the normal position, the lever at the bottom edge of the mirror must point forward. Pull the lever back to dim the mirror.

Self-dimming inside day-night mirror[12)]

When the ignition is switched on, the interior rear view mirror will darken *automatically*, depending on the amount of light shining into the vehicle from the rear.

Press the button ⇒fig. 35 ① on the lower edge of the mirror to **switch on** the self dimming feature. When the button is pressed, the green indicator light ② in the mirror comes on. The self-dimming outside mirror is controlled by the button on the inside mirror

Next to the green indicator light there is a sensor which must not be covered. If this happens, the system will not operate.

Whenever you move the selector lever into R, the mirror returns to the normal setting ("not dimmed").

Tips

The rear view mirror will not darken automatically when you press the button on the lower edge of the mirror. ◀

[12)] Optional equipment

Applies to vehicles: with power outside mirrors

Outside mirrors

It is important for safe driving to properly adjust the outside mirrors using the joystick in the driver's door.

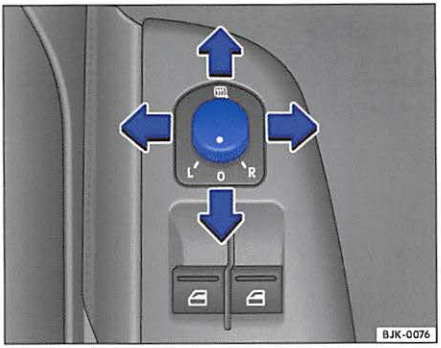


Fig. 36 Section of driver's door: joystick for the outside mirrors

Basic setting for the outside mirrors

1. Turn the joystick ⇒fig. 36 to **L** (**left outside mirror**).

2. Move the joystick to adjust the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle. If synchronized mirror setting is active in the convenience setup, the right mirror is adjusted at the same time ⇒page 17.

3. Turn the joystick to **R** (**right outside mirror**).

4. Turn the joystick to adjust the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

Outside mirror heating

– Turn the joystick to , to heat the outside mirrors.

– Turn the joystick to O, to switch off the outside mirror heating.

It is important for safe driving that you have a good view to the rear.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly estimating distances with the right outside mirror can cause collisions and serious injury.

- **The right outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. Vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are.**
- **If you use the right outside mirror to judge distances from vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause a crash.**
- **Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to more accurately judge distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.**

For the sake of environment

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed otherwise you waste fuel.

Tips

If the electrical adjustment of the mirror doesn't respond, adjust the mirror by hand by pushing lightly on the edge of the mirror glass. ◀

Seats and storage

Why is seat adjustment so important?

Proper seat adjustment increases the level of protection offered by seat belts and airbags.

Your vehicle has **five** seats. Two front seats and three rear seats. Each seat is equipped with a safety belt.

The driver seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted in many ways to suit the physical needs of the vehicle occupants. Seat position is very important:

- fast and easy operation of all controls on the instrument panel,
- relaxed posture that does not cause drowsiness,
- safe driving,
- optimum protection from the seat belts and airbag system ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first."

⚠ WARNING

Drivers or passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.

- **Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.**
- **Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passengers breastbone and the instrument panel.**
- **Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.**
- **Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly.**
- **Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.**
- **Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.**
- **Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!**
- **Children must always ride in child seats. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Child safety."** ◀

Head restraints

Correct adjustment of head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of occupant protection and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accidents.

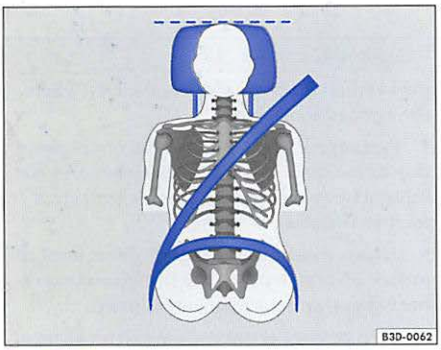


Fig. 37 Viewed from in front: properly adjusted head restraints and proper belt adjustment

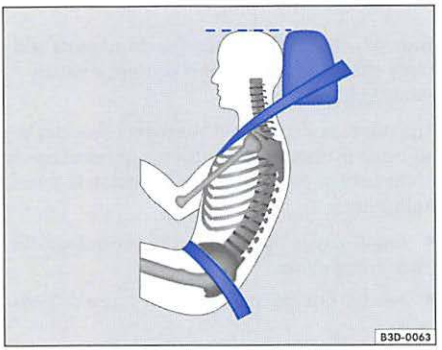


Fig. 38 Viewed from side: properly adjusted head restraints and proper belt adjustment

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eyen level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒fig. 37 and ⇒fig. 38.

If a passenger is sitting in the rear center seating position this compact head restraint is not height adjustable, but it must always be raised whenever the center rear seating position is occupied.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒page 59

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always raise the head restraint for the rear center seating position whenever the seat is occupied.**
- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**
- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Each headrest must be adjusted according to occupant size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.**
- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒booklet 2.1, chapter "Child safety."** ◀

Removing and adjusting head restraints

You can adjust the head restraints by moving them up and down.

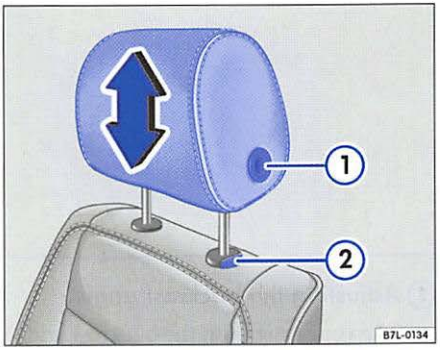


Fig. 39 Adjusting and removing the head restraints

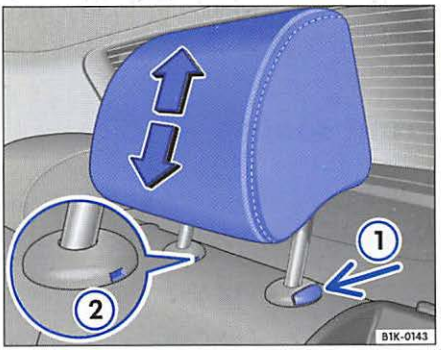


Fig. 40 Adjusting and removing the rear head restraints

Adjusting the height

– Hold the side of the head restraint.

– Push the head restraint up or down. Correct setting ⇒page 58.

– Make sure that it engages securely in position.

– If you wish to push the head restraint right down, you must push and hold button ⇒fig. 39 ① on the side of the head restraint.

Removing the head restraint

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press the release button. Depending on your model the release button may be located either on the side of the head restraint ① or at the base of the metal guides ②.

– Without releasing the button, pull out the head restraint.

Removing the rear head restraints

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press and hold button ⇒fig. 40 ①.

– At the same time, press the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit into slot ⇒fig. 40 ②. Be careful not to damage the plastic parts with the screwdriver. A second person can now pull out the head restraint.

Installing the head restraint

– Insert the head restraint into the guides on the rear backrest.

– Push down the head restraint. To push the front head restraint down, you must push and hold button ⇒fig. 39 ① on the side of the head restraint.

– Adjust the head restraint for the person using the seat.

The center rear head restraint was developed only for the center position on the rear seat. Do not install the head restraint in other positions.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision ⇒⚠ in "Correct adjustment of head restraints" on page 58.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If the center head restraint does not fit your seated height when fully extended, move to another seating position to reduce the risk of injury in a collision. ◀

Front seats

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable front seats

Manually adjustable front seats

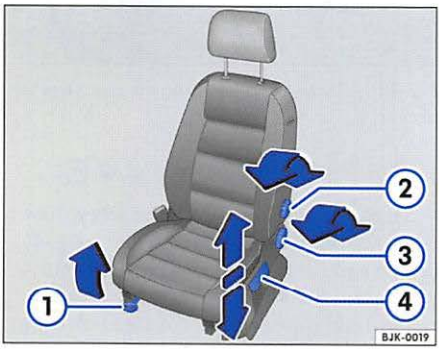


Fig. 41 Operating elements for manually adjustable seats (driver's seat)

① Adjusting the seat forward and backward

– Pull the lever and move the seat forward or backward.

– Release the lever ① and slightly move the seat until it latches into place.

② Adjusting the lumbar support

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel ② to adjust the lumbar support.

③ Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel ③.

④ Adjusting the seat height

– "Pump" the lever ④ up or down to raise or lower the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Drivers or passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by an airbag as it unfolds .

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.

- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with foldable front passenger seat backrest

Folding the front passenger seat backrest forward

Folding the front passenger seat backrest all the way forward

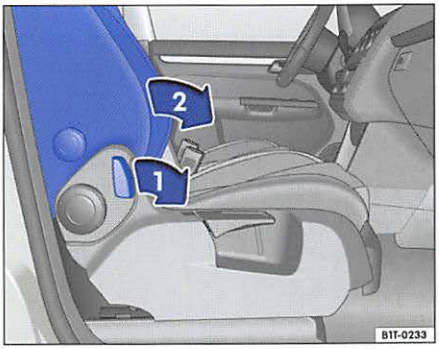


Fig. 42 Folding the front passenger seat backrest forward

Folding the front passenger seat backrest all the way forward

– Press and hold the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 42 ① to release the backrest of the front passenger seat.

– Fold the backrest of the front passenger seat to the horizontal position ② in the direction of the arrow. Make sure that the front passenger seat backrest latches securely into place.

Folding the front passenger seat backrest back

– To fold back, release the backrest of the front passenger seat again with lever ①.

– Fold the front passenger seat backrest back until it latches securely into place.

Make sure that nothing is on the front seat when the backrest is folded forward. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF light must always be on when the backrest is folded forward ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety First".

Please be sure to read the important information about transporting items in your vehicle ⇒page 74.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury.

- **Be careful not to put your hand in the back of the seat while pressing the passenger seat backrest release lever. Otherwise it could get caught by the seat mechanism.**
- **Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.**
- **Always secure objects properly with suitable straps so that they cannot move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.**
- **Always make sure that nothing on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward. Even light objects could be pushed into the seat cushion and cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to register enough weight to turn the airbag on.**
- **Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is on and stays on whenever the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded forward. ◀**

Applies to vehicles: with electrically adjustable front seats

Electrically adjustable driver and front passenger seats (power seats)

The switches look like a seat viewed from the side. The seat cushion and backrest follow the motions of the respective switches.

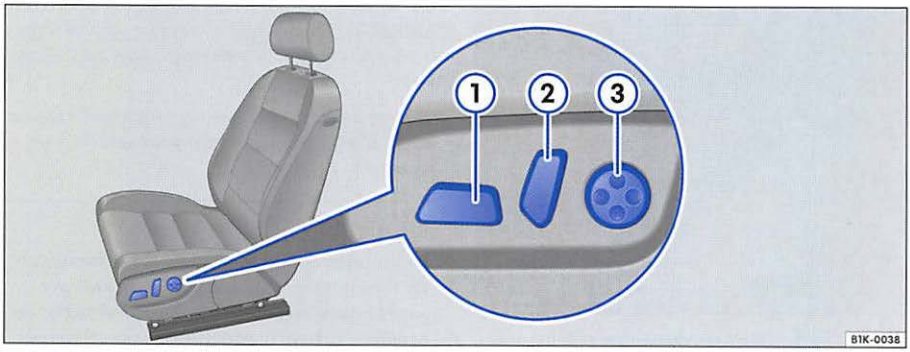


Fig. 43 Controls for electric seat adjustment

– Move the corresponding switch ⇒fig. 43 to adjust the front seat to suit your size ⇒⚠.

① Adjusting the height and forward/backward position of the seat cushion 63
② Adjusting backrest angle 63
③ Adjusting lumbar support. The curvature of the cushioned area is determined by the settings made in the lumbar region. This supports the natural curvature of the spine very effectively 63

⚠ WARNING

Drivers or passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by an airbag as it unfolds ⇒⚠ in "Why is seat adjustment so important?" on page 57.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.

- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- The seats in your vehicle can be electrically adjusted even with the ignition key removed. Never leave unattended children in the vehicle because the unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments can result in serious personal injury. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with electrically adjustable seats

Adjusting front seat

The switches look like a seat viewed from the side. The seat cushion and backrest follow the motions of the respective switches.

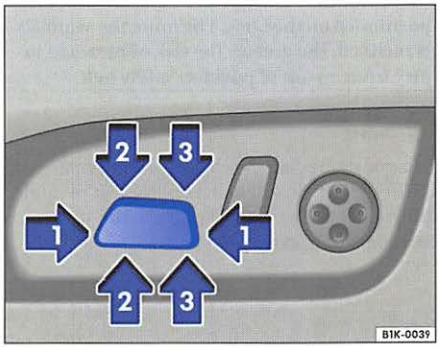


Fig. 44 Use the switch to adjust the seat backward and forward and also adjust the seat cushion for height and tilt

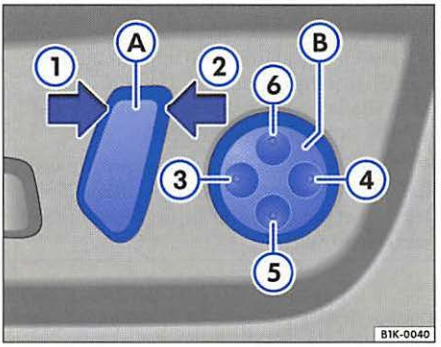


Fig. 45 Switch Ⓐ adjusts the backrest and switch Ⓑ adjusts the lumbar support

Adjusting the seat backward and forward and the seat cushion for height and tilt

– Move the switch in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 44 ① toto adjust the front seat either forward or backward ⇒⚠.

– Move the switch in the direction of the arrow ② or ③ to adjust the height of the seat cushion at the front or rear. At the same time, move the switch in the direction of the arrows ② and ③ to adjust the height of the seat.

Adjusting the backrest

– Move the switch ⇒fig. 45 Ⓐ in the direction of the arrow ① to recline the backrest further.

– Move the switch in the direction of the arrow ② to adjust the backrest to a more upright position.

Lumbar support

– Press on the surface ③ on switch ⇒fig. 45 Ⓑ to increase the curvature of the lumbar cushion area on the seat.

– Press on the surface ④ on the switch to decrease the curvature of the lumbar cushion area on the seat.

– Press surface ⑤ on the switch to move the lumbar support down.

– Press surface ⑥ on the switch to move the lumbar support up.

- Switch ⇒fig. 44 adjusts the height and forward/backward position of the seat cushion. The angle and height of the seat cushion can be adjusted.
- Switch ⇒fig. 45 Ⓐ adjusts the backrest angle.
- Switch Ⓑ is for up/down and in/out adjustment of the lumbar support. The curvature of the cushioned area is determined by the settings made in the lumbar region. This supports the natural curvature of the spine very effectively. ▶

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the driver or front passenger seat while the vehicle is in motion. While adjusting your seat, you could adjust your seat to an incorrect sitting position. Adjust your seat before driving off or when the vehicle is not moving.
- The electrical front seat adjustment also works with the ignition off. Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle – there is a risk of injury!
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height or forward/backward position. Careless use of the front seat adjustment controls can cause injuries.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident, front seat passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts offer protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an out of position safety belt.

Note

To avoid damaging the electrical components of the front seat, do not kneel on the seat or apply direct pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with electrically adjustable fronts seat and memory buttons

Memory for driver's seat

Use the memory buttons on the driver seat to store up to three different positions for the seat.



Fig. 46 Memory buttons on the front seat: to save the settings, first press the SET button and then one of the memory buttons, 1, 2 or 3.

Storing settings for driving forward

– Switch on the ignition. Do not engage Reverse gear.

– Press the ⇒fig. 46 SET button.

– Press one of the memory buttons within 10 seconds. A signal sounds when the settings have been stored.

– Switch off the ignition.

Recalling settings

– Press the appropriate memory button briefly while the key is still in the ignition. This can be done on the driver side only when the vehicle is not moving.

– If you wish to recall the memory settings when the vehicle is moving, hold down the memory button until the saved position is reached.

The memory buttons can store the seat positions for the front driver seat. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with electrically adjustable fronts seat and memory buttons

Assigning driver seat settings to a remote control key

Seat settings can be assigned to each remote control key so that the driver seat is automatically adjusted to fit a particular driver's size and height.

Assigning remote control keys

– Do not take more than 10 seconds when performing steps 1-4, otherwise the remote control key will not be assigned and your settings will not be stored.

– Adjust your seat and assign the adjustments to a memory button.

– Remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Push the unlock symbol ⇒page 32, fig. 14 [2] on the remote control twice. You will hear an acoustic signal to let you know that the seat positions have been assigned. The remote key is set. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with seat heating

Heated front seats

The seat cushions and backrests of the front seats can be heated electrically.



Fig. 47 Detail of instrument panel: thumb wheels for front seat heating

– Turn the left or right wheel ⇒fig. 47. The seat heating is switched off in the 0 position.

The seat heating only works when the ignition is switched on. The left thumb wheel controls the left seat and the right thumb wheel the right seat

Note

Do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest. This can damage the heating elements. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with front armrest

Front center armrest

The front center armrest can be adjusted up and down or forward and backward.

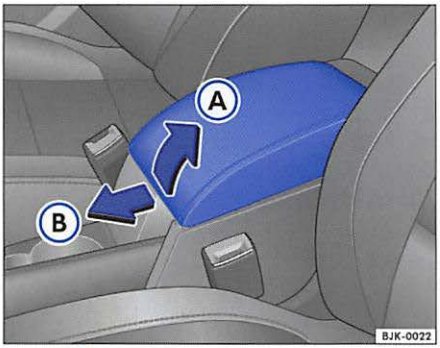


Fig. 48 Front center armrest

Adjusting the height of the armrest

– Lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 48 Ⓐ gradually until it latches into the desired position.

– To lower the armrest, you must first lift it all the way up. Then you will be able to lower it down.

Adjusting the armrest forward or backward

– Pull the armrest forward Ⓑ fully until it engages or push it back. ◀

Rear seat bench

Folding backrest forward and backward

The rear seat backrest can be folded forward to expand the luggage compartment.

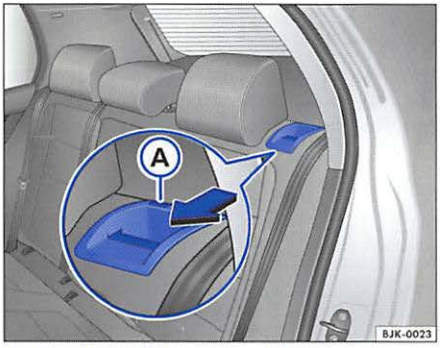


Fig. 49 Rear seat backrest: unlocking

The rear seatback is split for folding. Both sections can be folded forward individually.

Folding the rear seatback forward

– First move the driver's seat and front passenger's seat as far forward as possible.

– Unlock the backrest using the master key into the lock ⇒fig. 49 Ⓐ by turning the lock from the horizontal position to the vertical position.

– Pull the backrest release lever in the direction of the arrow.

– Fold the backrest all the way forward. ◀

Raising the backrest into place

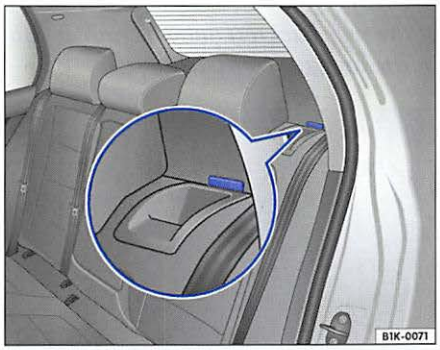


Fig. 50 Rear seat backrest marking

– Fold the backrest back up firmly until it engages. The red marking must not be visible ⇒fig. 50. Make sure that the safety belts do not get trapped.

– Lock the backrest using the master key into lock ⇒page 66, fig. 49 Ⓐ by turning the lock from the vertical position to the horizontal position.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during

⚠ WARNING (continued)

sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.

- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Never let the safety belts become trapped between the seat and the side of the vehicle when raising the seatbacks. A trapped safety belt can be damaged so that it cannot help to reduce the risk of injury in a crash.
- Always make sure that rear seat safety belts are in their proper position and able to be used after the rear seat backrests have been securely latched in the upright position.
- Never let passengers ride on the rear load surface in the luggage compartment area or sit on the folded down backrests. Passengers who are not properly wearing their safety belts risk serious injuries and even death in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrests are securely latched after moving them back to the upright position. to properly latch it back. Loose items in the luggage compartment can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.
- A red mark on the backrest latch show that the backrest is not securely engaged. When the marker is not visible the backrest is properly and securely latched. Always make sure the mark is not visible after raising the backrests to the upright position. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an opening in the rear backrest to transport long objects

Transporting long items

Your vehicle has an opening in the center of the rear backrest, which enables you to transport long objects, which do not fit in the luggage compartment.

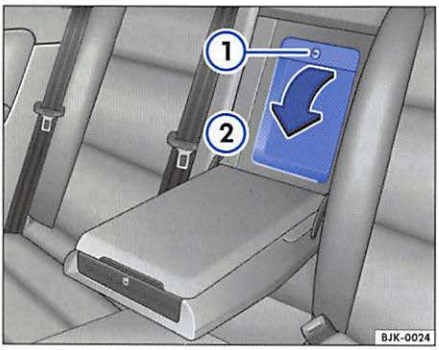


Fig. 51 Opening from the inside

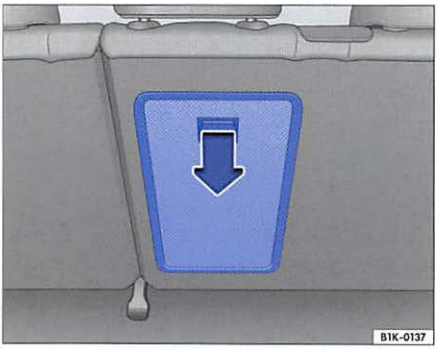


Fig. 52 Opening from the luggage compartment

Opening from inside the vehicle

– Fold down the rear armrest completely.

– Unlock the release handle ⇒fig. 51 ① located in the plastic cover behind the rear armrest by turning the master key to the position.

– Grasp the handle and lower the cover into the vehicle ②. The plastic cover is integrated to the center rear armrest.

Opening from the luggage compartment

– Open the rear lid.

– Press down the release button in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 52 and fold the cover toward the interior of the vehicle. When the cover is unlocked a red marking will be visible on the release button.

Loading the long objects inside the vehicle

– Place the long objects through the center opening carefully and secure them with an appropriate strap.

– Close the rear lid.

Closing from the inside

– Remove all objects.

– Fold the plastic cover upward and press until you hear it click into place.

– Lock the cover by turning the master key to the .

– Fold the rear armrest back into place.

⚠ WARNING

Loose luggage or other objects in the vehicle can cause serious personal injury.

- **During sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects in the passenger compartment can shift forward, injuring vehicle occupants.**
- **Secure heavy objects with suitable straps so that they cannot move around while you are driving.**
- **When you transport heavy objects, always keep in mind that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling.**

Tips

Protect your vehicle from soiling, for example by wrapping dirty items in a blanket before loading them through the through-loading opening. ◀

Storage

Glove compartment on the front passenger side

Cooled air can be guided into the glove compartment



Fig. 53 Front passenger side: glove compartment

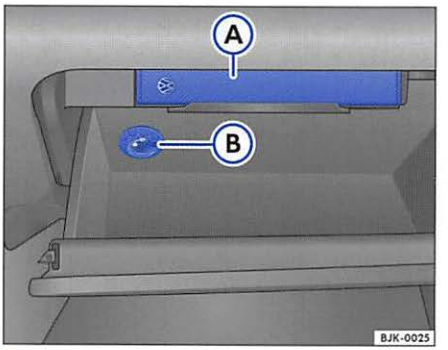


Fig. 54 In open glove compartment: optional vehicle manual storage shelf (A) and air outlet (B)

The compartment can be opened by pulling the lever ⇒fig. 53. It is locked when the key slot is in the horizontal position.

Storage for the vehicle literature

The vehicle literature ⇒fig. 54 (A) should always be kept in the glove compartment. Do not place other objects in the shelf for the vehicle literature, they might fall behind the glove compartment.

Cooling the glove compartment[13)]

There is an air outlet on the left of the rear panel (B). If the air conditioning is switched on, cooled air also is directed into the glove compartment.

Turn the air outlet to open and close it. Always close the air outlet when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

An open glove compartment door can increase the risk of serious injury during hard braking or in a crash.

- **Loose items in the glove compartment can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.**
- **Always keep the glove compartment closed properly when the vehicle is moving.** ◀

13) Optional equipment

Applies to vehicles: with front center armrest and one storage compartment

Front center armrest with storage compartment

The armrest can be moved backward and forward.



Fig. 55 Front armrest with storage compartment

Opening and closing the storage compartment

– To open the storage compartment lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 55.

– To close the storage compartment, pull down the armrest.

Cooling the storage compartment in the front center armrest[14)]

In vehicles with air conditioning there is an outlet in the storage compartment (provided a CD Changer has not been installed). Depending of the setting of the front controls ⇒page 81 or ⇒page 84 cold or heated air can be guided into the compartment. Turn the air outlet to open and close it.

⚠ WARNING

Striking an open armrest cover can cause serious injury in a crash.

- **Always keep the armrest closed when the vehicle is moving.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with rear armrest

Storage compartment in the rear armrest

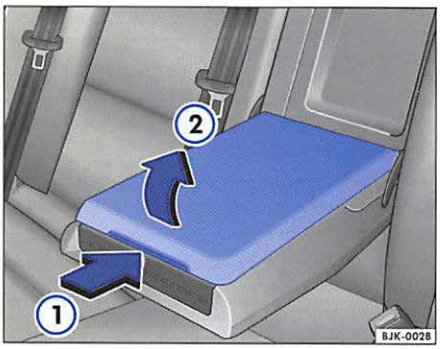


Fig. 56 Open storage compartment in the rear armrest

– Fold the rear armrest down completely.

– Press the storage compartment release catch ⇒fig. 56 ①.

– Lift the storage compartment lid ②.

⚠ WARNING

Striking an open armrest cover can cause serious injury in a crash.

- **Always keep the armrest closed when the vehicle is moving.** ◀

[14)] Optional equipment

Sun glasses case in the headliner

There is a storage compartment for your sun glasses in the vehicle headliner.

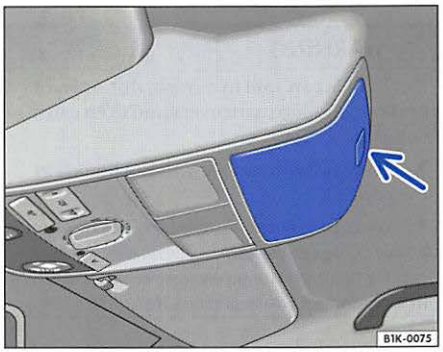


Fig. 57 Sun glasses case in the roof

– Press the release button ⇒fig. 57 to open. The cover opens automatically.

– To close the cover, press it up until it engages.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep the storage area cover closed while the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of injury during sudden braking or in the event of an accident and to prevent any items from being thrown through the vehicle interior. ◀

Other storage areas

Additional storage compartments are located in the in the door panels (front and rear) and at the rear of the center console.

The coat hooks are located next to the rear passenger assist handles.

⚠ WARNING

• Never place objects on the instrument panel. These objects could fly through the passenger compartment when the vehicle is moving (while accelerating, braking or cornering) and distract the driver. This could cause serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

• Make sure that no objects can fall from the center console or other storage areas into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. In the event of a sudden braking maneuver, you will not be able to use the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal correctly.

• Clothing hung on the coat hooks must not restrict the driver's view. The coat hooks are intended only for use with light articles of clothing. Do not leave any hard, sharp or heavy objects in hanging articles of clothing. During sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, especially those involving airbag deployment, these objects could injure the vehicle occupants. ◀

Cup holders in the center console

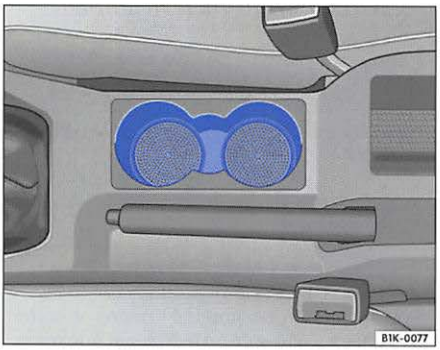


Fig. 58 Cup holder in the center console

There are two cup holders ⇒fig. 58 in the center console between the front seats.

⚠ WARNING

Hot liquids can spill in a crash, during hard braking, sudden maneuvers and even cause a collision.

- **Never put containers with hot liquids in the cup holders.**
- **Never put heavy cups/beverages or other heavy things in the cup holders. Heavy objects can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with rear armrest

Cup holders in the rear armrest

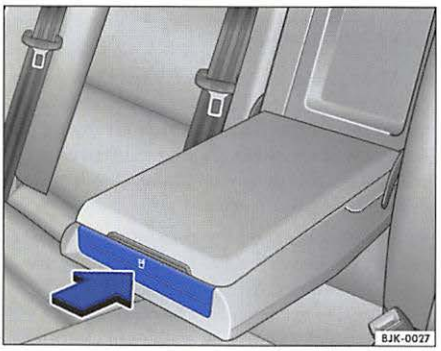


Fig. 59 Open cup holder in rear armrest

Opening and closing the retractable cup holder

– Fold the rear armrest down completely.

– Push the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 59. The cup holder will fold open.

– Push the front part of the cup holder to fold it back into place.

⚠ WARNING

Hot liquids can spill in a crash, during hard braking, sudden maneuvers and even cause a collision.

- **Never put containers with hot liquids in the cup holders.**
- **Never put heavy cups/beverages or other heavy things in the cup holders. Heavy objects can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.** ◀

Additional storage compartment and electrical sockets

Additional storage compartment



Fig. 60 Opening the additional storage compartment

– To open, press the cover briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 60. The cover will open.

– To close, push the cover down as far as it will go. ◀

Power outlet

Electrical equipment can be connected to any of the 12-volt sockets.

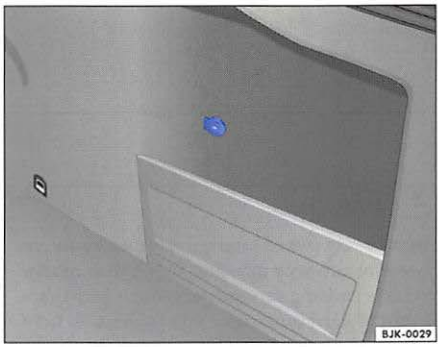


Fig. 61 Power outlet in the luggage compartment

The 12-volt sockets next in the additional storage compartment, in the front center console and in the luggage compartment can be used for electrical appliances. Do not use any electrical appliances that use more than 120 W.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and electrical accessories can cause fire and serious injury.

- **Never leave children alone in the vehicle. The electrical sockets and anything connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched off and the key removed.**

Tips

- The electrical sockets remain functional even with the ignition off. Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off will drain the battery.
- Before buying accessories, refer to the notes ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter " Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications." ◀

First-aid kit, warning triangle

A commercially available first-aid kit can fit into the storage bin on the left side of the luggage compartment.

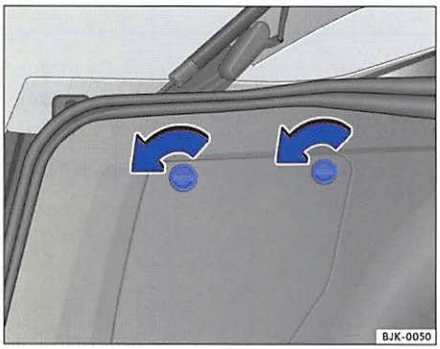


Fig. 62 First aid kit storage bin in the luggage compartment

First aid kit

– Turn the two quick releases in the direction of the arrows ⇒fig. 62 to open the first aid kit storage bin.

Warning triangle

– The warning triangle can be kept between the two rear tie-down hooks in the luggage compartment.

Tips

- The first-aid kit and the warning triangle are **not** part of the vehicle's standard equipment.
- The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements.
- Observe the expiration date of the contents of the first aid kit. You should purchase a new first-aid kit as soon as possible after the use-by date of the old first-aid kit.
- Before buying accessories and replacement parts, refer to the note ⇒booklet 3.2, chapter " Accessories, modifications and renewal of parts". ◀

Luggage compartment

Storing luggage

Store all luggage securely.

Observe the following points to make sure the vehicle handles well:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage in the luggage compartment with suitable straps on the tie-down hooks.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can become airborne missiles, flying through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.**
- **Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.** ▶

⚠ WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles and heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can cause loss of control and serious injury.

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Secure heavy objects properly as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
  - Always secure heavy items securely using the tie-downs provided with suitable straps.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
- Always read and heed additional important information on safe driving ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first."

⚠ WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - Close all windows,
  - Close the power roof,
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the doors and rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

- After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the rear lid or window shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Note

Hard objects on the hat shelf could damage the wires of the rear window defogger.

Tips

Do not cover the ventilation slots in front of the rear side windows because this can prevent stale air from escaping the vehicle. ◀

Roof rack

Markings for attaching the roof carrier mounts

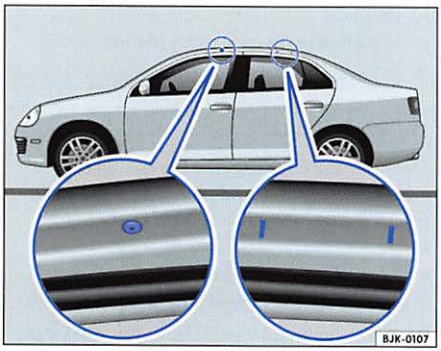


Fig. 63 Mounting points

Front: The mounting points are visible when the doors are opened ⇒fig. 63 -arrow-.

Rear: The mounting points are visible when the doors are opened ⇒fig. 63 -arrow-.

⚠ WARNING

The roof rack must be attached at the markings shown in the illustrations only. ◀

Important notes on using a roof rack

Always follow the instructions provided with the roof rack.

The roof rack system must always be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.

- Your vehicle has special roof rails for installing the mounts. Therefore, standard roof carriers cannot be used.
- The mounts are the basis of a complete roof rack system. Special fixtures must then be added in order to safely transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surf boards or boats on the roof. All these system components are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers. We recommend you use genuine Volkswagen roof rack systems. If you want to use a different roof rack, make sure that it can be installed securely to your vehicle and that it does not damage your vehicle.
- We recommend you keep the roof rack assembly instructions provided by the manufacturer in your vehicle.

When should the roof rack be removed?

- When it is not needed (to save fuel, reduce wind noise and avoid theft).
- Before driving through an automatic car wash.

⚠ WARNING

Installing or using a roof rack improperly can cause the roof rack and anything on it to fly off the vehicle causing collision and serious injury.

- **Always install roof rack and roof rack fixtures carefully following the instructions provided with the roof rack and heed all WARNINGS.**
- **Always make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip.**

Note

- The height of your vehicle is changed by the installation of the roof rack and the load secured on it. Bear this in mind when driving through garage doors or low underpasses – there is danger of damage to the vehicle.
- Check all bolts and fasteners in the roof rack system before every trip. If necessary, re-tighten the bolts and re-check the system at suitable intervals, e.g. during a break on a long trip. ◀

Securing the load

Loads transported on the roof rack must be securely attached. The vehicle's handling is affected when transporting loads.

Always secure the cargo in the *center* of the roof rack.

The maximum permissible roof load for your vehicle is **165 lbs. (75 kg)**. The load limit applies to the combined weight of the carrier system and the load itself.

However, if you are using a roof rack with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load. Do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof rack that is listed in the installation instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Items that are not properly secured to a roof rack can fall off causing a collision and personal injury.

- **Always make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip at each stop during a long trip.**
- **Always properly install special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc.**
- **Never use straps or other things that are damaged, not strong enough or not suitable to attach items to a roof rack.**

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy bulky loads on the roof will change the way the vehicle handles by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity, changing its aerodynamics and the way it reacts to side winds.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a more negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Always adapt your driving and speed to what you are carrying on the roof as well as to road, traffic, weather and wind conditions.**
- **Always avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.**
- **Always make sure that loads are properly distributed and that heavier items are in the front.**
- **Never exceed the maximum roof load for the vehicle 165 lbs. (75 kg), maximum axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."**

Note

- Do not let the rear lid strike the roof load when open. This could damage the vehicle.
- Damage to the vehicle resulting from improper installation of mounts or roof rack systems is not covered by the warranty.
- The height of your vehicle is changed by the installation of the roof rack and the load secured on it. Bear this in mind when driving through garage doors or low underpasses to avoid damage to the vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Driving with the roof rack increases fuel consumption. If you do not need it, do not use it. ◀

Tie-down hooks

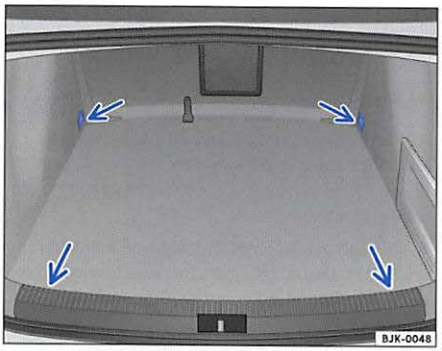


Fig. 64 Tie down hooks in the luggage compartment

There are four tie down hooks in the luggage compartment ⇒fig. 64 -arrows-. Use them to secure objects. ◀

Shopping bag hook

In the upper left corner of the luggage compartment there is a swing-out shopping bag hook.

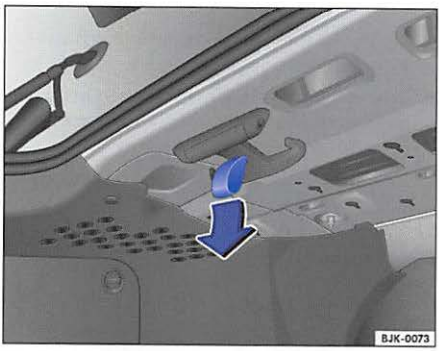


Fig. 65 In the luggage compartment: shopping bag hook

- Pull the hook down by the loop ⇒fig. 65
- Hang your shopping bags on the hook

The shopping bag hook can be used to hang items weighing up to 5 pounds (10 kg).

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the shopping bag hook as a tie-down. In the event of a braking maneuver or an accident the hook cannot hold heavy items attached to the hook. ◀

Hat shelf

You can place light articles of clothing on the hat shelf behind the seatback.

Remember though, that placing articles on the hat shelf can block the driver's vision through the rear view mirror.

Since the passenger compartment is ventilated with the help of a vent slot between the hat shelf and rear window, be sure not to block the vent slot with any items you may place on the hat shelf.

⚠ WARNING

Whenever you're driving, do not leave any hard objects on the hat shelf, or allow your pet to sit on it. These could become a hazard for vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Note

Hard objects on the hat shelf could damage the wires of the rear window defogger. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with sun shade

Sun shade

The sun shade can be used to cut glare through the rear window.

Pull out the sun shade from the rear hat shelf and hook it into the mounts on both sides of the rear window frame. ◀

Air conditioning system

Heating

Controls

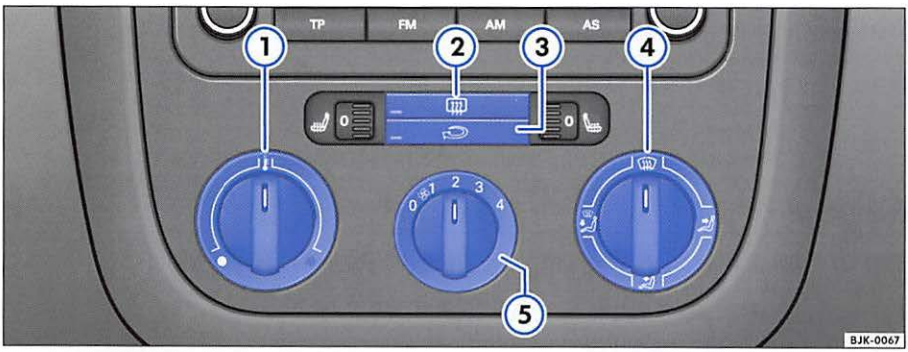


Fig. 66 In the center console: heating controls

– Using the controls ⇒fig. 66 ①, ④ and ⑤ you can adjust the temperature, air distribution and the fan speed.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button ② or ③. When a function is switched on a light in the button illuminates.

① Temperature

This control can be used to adjust the temperature. The temperature inside the vehicle cannot be lower than the outside temperature. Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

② Rear window heating

The heating switches off automatically approximately *10 minutes* after it is switched on. It can also be switched off by pushing the switch again.

③ Recirculation mode

When air recirculation mode is switched on (button illuminated by a yellow light) outside air cannot enter into the vehicle interior, for example when driving through a tunnel or when at a standstill in heavy traffic ⇒⚠.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

④ Air distribution

This control can be used to distribute the air.

– Air distribution toward the windshield. For safety reasons, the air recirculation mode is switched off in this position. Press button to switch it back on.

– Air distribution into the vehicle interior.

– Air distribution into the footwells.

– Air distribution to the windshield and the footwells.

⑤ Fan

The fan has four different speeds. The fan should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

- Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.
- Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only occur after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.
- Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the defog/defrost features you will need for good visibility.
- Always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS. ◀

Climatic

Applies to vehicles: with Climatic

Controls

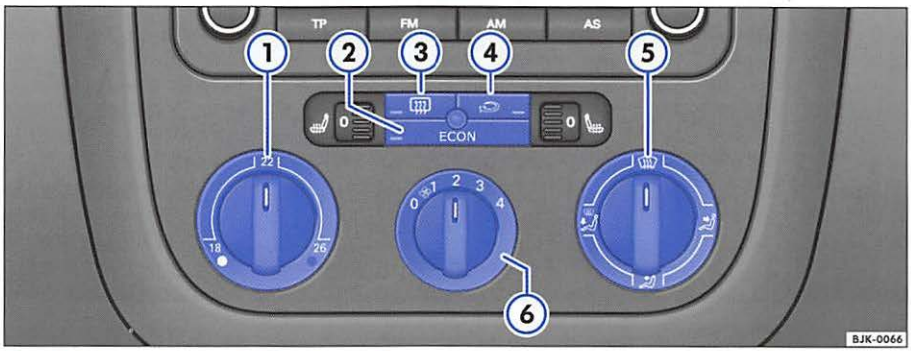


Fig. 67 In the center console: Climatic controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the fan is switched on.

– Using the controls ⇒fig. 67 ①, ⑤ and ⑥ you can set the temperature, air distribution and the fan speed.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button ② to ④. When a function is switched on a light in the button illuminates.

① Temperature ⇒page 82
② ECON button or AC button – cooling system on/off.
③ Button rear window defogger – The heating switches off automatically approximately *10 minutes* after it is switched on. It can also be switched off by pushing the switch again.
④ Button – air recirculation mode ⇒page 83
⑤ Air distribution control ⇒page 82
⑥ Fan – The fan has four different speeds. The fan should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.
- Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only occur after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.
- Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the defog/defrost features you will need for good visibility.
- Always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatic

Heating and cooling the interior

The set temperature is maintained automatically.

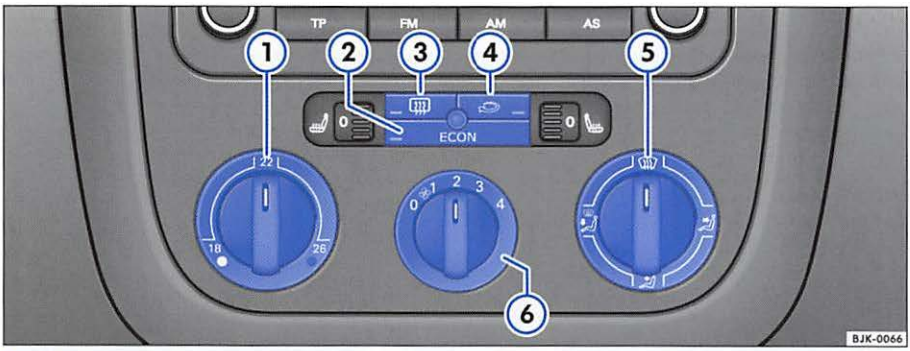


Fig. 68 In the center console: Climate controls

Heating the interior

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒fig. 68 ① to the right until the desired heat output is reached.

– Turn the fan switch ⑥ to one of the settings 1-4.

– Use the air distribution control ⑤ to guide the air flow where you want it: ⌜⌝ (to the windshield), ⌜⌝ (into the vehicle interior), ⌜⌝ (to the footwells) and ⌜⌝ (to the windshield and to the footwells).

Cooling the interior

– Switch on the cooling system by pressing the ⇒fig. 68 ECON button (the lamp in the button should *not* be lit up).

– Turn the temperature selector to the left until the desired cooling output is reached.

– Turn the fan switch to one of the settings 1-4.

– Use the air distribution control ⑤ to guide the air flow where you want it: ⌜⌝ (to the windshield), ⌜⌝ (into the vehicle interior), ⌜⌝ (to the footwells) and ⌜⌝ (to the windshield and to the footwells).

Heating

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature. ▶

Cooling system

When the air conditioning is on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents the windows from fogging up when the outside air is very humid.

If the air conditioning does not switch on, it could be for one of the following reasons

- the engine is not running.
- the fan is switched off.
- the outside temperature is lower than roughly +40 °F (+3 °C).
- the air conditioner compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- the air conditioner fuse is blown.
- have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatic

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

– Press the button ⇒page 82, fig. 68 to switch air recirculation mode on or off. When it is switched on a yellow light in the button lights up.

Air recirculation mode prevents strong outdoor odors from entering the vehicle interior, for example when driving through a tunnel or in dense traffic.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

When the outside temperature is high, using air recirculation mode provides more effective cooling by cooling air from the vehicle interior instead of warm air from outside.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is not possible when the control for air distribution is set to the position. The air recirculation mode can be switched back on by pressing the button.

⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness. This can lead to accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- **Never use air recirculation for long periods of time because no fresh air will come into the passenger compartment.**
- **If the cooling system is switched off, the windows can fog up quickly and decrease driver visibility.**
- **Always switch the recirculation mode off when it is not needed.**

Note

Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor. ◀

Climatronic

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Controls

The controls allow separate adjustment of air conditioning settings for the left side and right side of the vehicle.

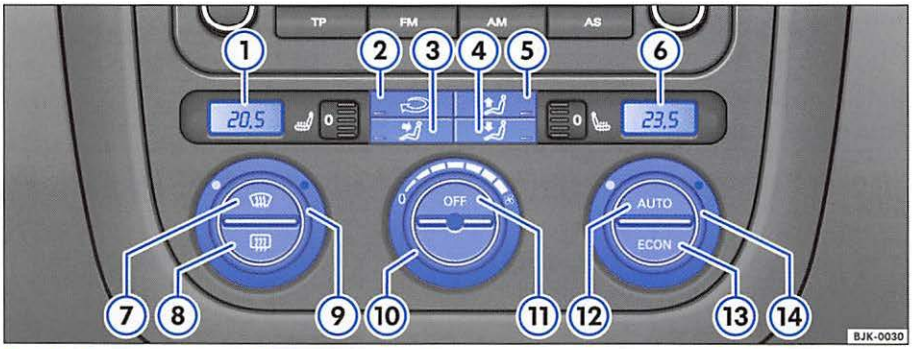


Fig. 69 On the center console: Climatronic controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the fan is switched on.

– To adjust the temperature for the left or right side, turn the appropriate temperature control ⇒fig. 69 ⑨ or ⑭.

– The functions will be switched on when one of the buttons ② to ⑤ is pressed. When a function is switched on the light in the button illuminates. Press the button again to switch off the function.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

① Display of the selected interior temperature for the left side.

② Button [⟲] air recirculation mode ⇒page 88

③ Button [⇈] central air distribution

④ Button [⇊] downward air distribution

⑤ Button [⇈] upward air distribution

⑥ Display of the selected interior temperature for the right side.

⑦ Button [⌓] – defrost function for the windshield. The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windshield. The air recirculation mode, if switched on, will be switched off as soon as the defrost function is switched on. At temperatures above 40°F (3 °C), the air conditioning system will be switched on automatically and the fan speed will be increased by one level in order to dry the air.

⑧ Button [▥] rear window heating. The heating switches off automatically approximately *10 minutes* after it is switched on. It can also be switched off by pushing the switch again.

⑨ Temperature control for the left side ⇒page 85

⑩ Fan speed control ⇒page 87

⑪ Button [OFF] switches the Climatronic on and off ⇒page 87. When the system is off the light in the OFF button will illuminate.

⑫ Button [AUTO], automatic temperature, fan, and air distribution control ⇒page 85. The settings are stored for the driver side and the front passenger side if the button is pressed for more than two seconds.

⑬ ECON button switches on economy mode. When the lamp in the button lights up, the cooling system is switched off to save fuel.

⑭ Temperature control for the right side ⇒page 85

⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness. This can lead to accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- **Never use air recirculation for long periods of time because no fresh air will come into the passenger compartment.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The windows can fog up quickly if the cooling system is switched off and decrease driver visibility.**
- **Always switch the recirculation mode off when it is not needed.**

Note

Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Automatic mode

In automatic mode air temperature, flow, and distribution are automatically regulated so that a specified temperature is attained as quickly as possible and then maintained.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

Switching on automatic mode

– Press the AUTO button ⇒page 84, fig. 69. The button lights up.

– Turn the temperature controls to the desired temperatures for the left and right sides of the interior. We recommend 72°F (22°C) .

Switching from Fahrenheit to Centigrade

– Switch the Climatronic on.

– Press and hold the AUTO button ⇒page 84, fig. 69 and the ECON button at the same time until the temperature display switches from one temperature unit to the other.

A comfortable interior climate is quickly reached when a temperature of 72 °F (22 °C) is set in automatic mode. It can be changed as necessary to suit individual preferences or particular circumstances. It is possible to select interior temperatures from 61 °F (16 °C) to 86 °F (29.5 °C). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the outside conditions.

Climatronic automatically maintains a constant temperature level . The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the fan speed and the air distribution are also regulated automatically. The system also allows for the effect of strong sunlight, so there is no need for you to re-adjust the system. Therefore, **automatic mode** provides the best comfort for the vehicle occupants in all conditions throughout the year.

Automatic mode is switched off whenever an adjustment is made using the buttons for air distribution or the fan control. The temperature continues to be controlled. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Indirect ventilation

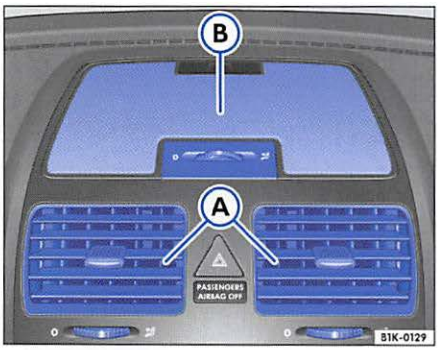


Fig. 70 Central air outlet Ⓐ and air outlet Ⓑ for indirect ventilation

Ventilation is indirect and draft-free if you close the air outlets ⇒fig. 70 Ⓐ and open air outlet Ⓑ using the thumb wheel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Rear ventilation



Fig. 71 Rear air vents in the center console

Ventilation can be directed into the rear seats if you open the air outlets ⇒fig. 71 Ⓐ using the thumb wheel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Manual mode

In manual mode you can adjust the air temperature, air flow, and distribution yourself.

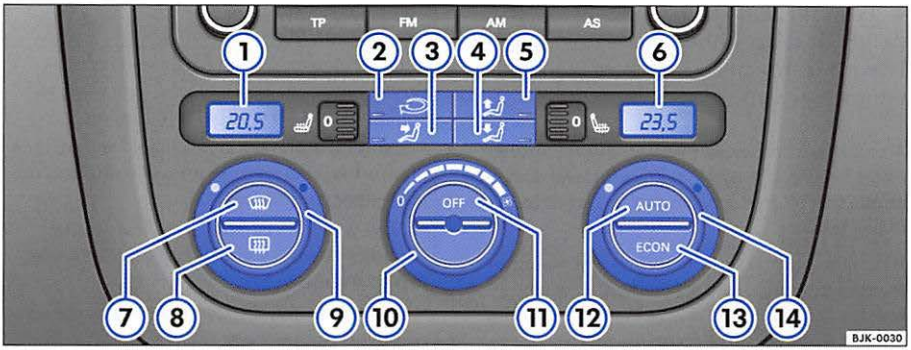


Fig. 72 On the center console: Climatronic controls

Switching on manual mode

– Press one of the buttons ⇒fig. 72 ③ to ⑤, or turn the fan control ⑩. The light in the AUTO button will go out.

Temperature

There are separate temperature selectors for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior. The selected temperature is displayed above the selector. It is possible to select interior temperatures from 61 °F (+16 °C) to 86 °F (+29.5 °C). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the outside conditions.

If a temperature below 61 °F (+16 °C) is selected the display switches to **LO**. In this setting the system runs at maximum cooling output and the temperature is not controlled.

If a temperature above 86 °F (+29.5 °C) is selected the display switches to **HI**. In this setting the system runs at maximum heating output and the temperature is not controlled.

Fan

The fan can be adjusted with the fan switch ⑩. Always have the fan running at a low setting when driving at low speeds to make sure there is a constant flow of fresh air into the vehicle. If the fan is set to 0, the Climatronic switches off.

Air distribution

Use the buttons , and to control the air distribution. When a function is switched on, the button lights up. It is also possible to open and close some of the air outlets separately.

Switching the Climatronic on/off

The Climatronic system can be switched on and off with the button OFF. The system should only be switched off in exceptional cases, e.g. if the system malfunctions. The button lights up when the system is switched off.

Switching on the economy mode

Use the ECON button to switch on the economy mode. When the button lights up, the cooling system switches off to save fuel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

– Press the button ⇒page 87, fig. 72 to switch air recirculation mode on or off. When it is switched on a yellow light in the button lights up.

Air recirculation mode prevents strong outdoor odors from entering the vehicle interior, for example when driving through a tunnel or in dense traffic.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

When the outside temperature is high, using air recirculation mode provides more effective cooling by cooling air from the vehicle interior instead of warm air from outside.

⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness. This can lead to accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- **Never use air recirculation for long periods of time because no fresh air will come into the passenger compartment.**
- **The windows can fog up quickly if the cooling system is switched off and decrease driver visibility.**
- **Always switch the recirculation mode off when it is not needed.**

Note

Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor. ◀

Important notes

The pollen filter

The pollen filter (a combined particle filter and active charcoal filter) serves as a barrier against impurities in the outside air, including dust and pollen.

For the air conditioning system to work with maximum efficiency, the pollen filter must be replaced as specified in the Maintenance booklet.

If the filter loses efficiency prematurely due to use in areas with very high levels of air pollution, the pollen filter must be changed more frequently than specified in the Maintenance booklet.

Cooling system malfunctions

If the cooling system cannot be switched on, it may be due to the following causes:

- The engine has not been started.
- The blower is switched off
- Outside temperature is below about 40° F (3 °C).
- The cooling system compressor was switched off temporarily because of excessive engine coolant temperature.
- The air-conditioning fuse is blown.
- There is some other problem with the vehicle. Have the air-conditioning system checked at your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

- **Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.**
- **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only occur after the engine has** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.

- **Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the defog/defrost features you will need for good visibility.**

⚠ WARNING

Note that with Climatronic switched off completely, no outside air enters the interior. So with Climatronic switched off, open a window or the power roof[15] to provide adequate fresh air in the vehicle.

Note

- If you suspect that the air conditioning system has been damaged or is not working properly, switch over to ECON mode to prevent more damage and have the system checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require special knowledge and special tools. Therefore, we recommend that you go to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or other qualified workshop should problems occur.
- Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor.

Tips

- If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the climate-control system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and is not a leak.
- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling and to prevent the windows from fogging over.
- The air from the outlets flows through the passenger compartment and out the slots below the rear window. Do not cover these slots with clothing or other objects.
- The air conditioning system works best when the windows and the power roof[15] are closed. However, if the vehicle has heated up in the sun, the inside air can be cooled faster by opening the windows to let the hot air out. ◀

[15] Optional equipment

Driving

Steering

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable steering column

Adjusting the steering wheel position manually

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be freely adjusted to suit the driver.

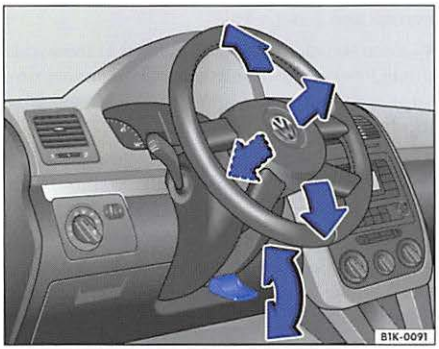


Fig. 73 Adjusting the steering wheel position

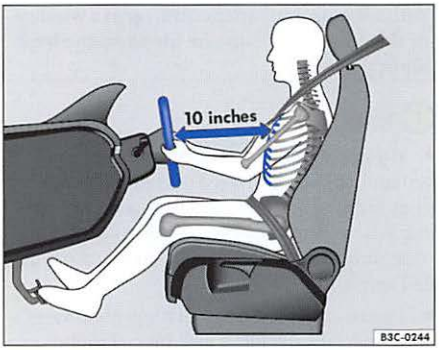


Fig. 74 Illustration of principle: proper seating position for driver

– Adjust the driver seat to the correct position.

– Push down the lever ⇒fig. 73 under the steering column ⇒⚠.

– Adjust the steering wheel this way until the correct position is set ⇒fig. 74.

– Then push lever up.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering column adjustment function can result in serious personal injury and or death. Both the safety belt and the airbag system will work best to protect you in the event of an accident if you have the steering column properly adjusted. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is moving. Always adjust the steering column while the vehicle is standing still and before you set out. If you are driving and must make an adjustment, safely stop your vehicle and make the necessary adjustment.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel ⇒fig. 74.
- Never adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your face. Otherwise, the airbag system cannot protect you properly in the event of an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel points toward your chest.
- Never adjust the steering wheel so that it points towards your face. Otherwise, the airbag system cannot protect you properly in the event of an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel points towards your chest.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help

⚠ WARNING (continued)

reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.

- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, always push the steering wheel adjustment lever back up as far as it will go. This ensures the position of the steering wheel cannot be altered unintentionally when the vehicle is moving. ◀

Safety

Applies to vehicles: with Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

Electronic Stabilization Program

ESP helps make driving safer in certain situations.



Fig. 75 Detail of the center console: button for ESP or ASR

The Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) contains the Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) and the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR). The ESP works together with the Anti-locking Brake System (ABS). Both warning lights will come on if the ESP or ABS systems malfunction.

The ESP is started automatically when the engine is started.

The ESP should generally be left switched on at all times. In specific circumstances where you require less traction you can switch off the ESP by pressing button ⇒fig. 75 (ESP).

For example:

- when driving with snow chains,
- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces,
- when rocking the vehicle backward and forward to free it from mud, for example.

You should press the button to switch the ESP back on when you no longer need wheel spin. The ASR and EDL are also switched off if the ESP is switched off. This means that this technology is not available for as long as the ESP remains switched off.

When does the word OFF light up in the button ESP?

- It will light up if there is a fault in the ESP.
- It will light up if the ESP is switched off.

⚠ **WARNING**

- **Always adjust your driving to the road, traffic and weather conditions. Do not let the extra safety that ESP can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.**
- **Always drive safely.**
- **ESP and ASR cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ESP!**
- **ESP and ASR cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.** ▶

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Repairs and technical modifications."**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The effectiveness of ESP is also determined by the tires fitted ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Wheels."**

Note

- In order to ensure that ESP and ASR function correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tires. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power – even when this is not the best thing to do under the circumstances.
- After reconnecting the vehicle battery the ESP warning light in the instrument cluster will come on and stay on. It will go off after you have driven about 10 feet (3 meters) at 10 mph (15 km/h). ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Anti-Slip Regulation

Anti-Slip Regulation

ASR helps make driving safer in certain situations.

On vehicles with front-wheel drive, ASR helps prevent the front wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerated by reducing the engine power directed to these wheels. The ASR works together with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). Both warning lights will come on if the ASR or ABS systems malfunction.

The ASR is started automatically when the engine is started.

The ASR should generally be left switched on at all times. In specific circumstances where you require less traction you can switch off the ASR by pressing button ⇒page 91, fig. 75.

For example:

- when driving with snow chains,
- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces,
- when rocking the vehicle backward and forward to free it from mud, for example.

You should press the button to switch the ASR back on when you no longer need wheel spin. The EDL is also switched off if the ASR is switched off. This means that this technology is not available for as long as the ASR remains switched off.

When does the word OFF light up in the button ASR?

- It will light up if there is a fault in the ASR.
- It will light up if the ASR is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always adjust your driving to the road, traffic and weather conditions. Do not let the extra safety that ASR can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.**
- **Always drive safely.**
- **ASR cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ASR!**
- **ASR cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ASR systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Repairs and technical modifications."

- Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ASR systems work and reduce their effectiveness.
- The effectiveness of ASR is also determined by the tires fitted ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Wheels."

Note

- In order to ensure that ASR function correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tires. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power – even when this is not the best thing to do under the circumstances.
- After reconnecting the vehicle battery the ASR warning light in the instrument cluster will come on and stay on. It will go off after you have driven about 10 feet (3 meters) at 10 mph (15 km/h). ◀

Ignition lock

Position of the ignition key

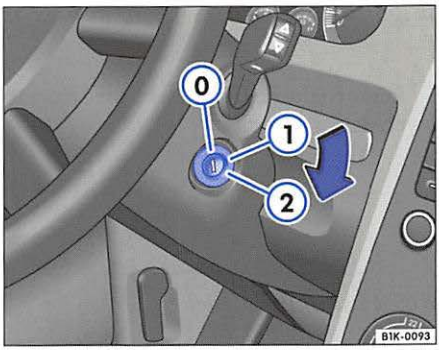


Fig. 76 Ignition key positions

Ignition switched off, steering column locked (0)

In this position ⇒fig. 76 the ignition is switched off, and the steering column is locked.

To **engage the steering wheel lock**, remove the key from the steering lock and turn the steering wheel until it locks into place. You should always lock the steering wheel when you leave your vehicle. This makes vehicle theft more difficult ⇒⚠.

Switching on the ignition or glow plug system (1)

Turn the ignition key to this position and release the key. If the key cannot be turned or is difficult to turn from position (0) to position (1), move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until it turns freely.

Starting the engine (2)

Start the engine when the key is in this position. Components that use a lot of electricity are switched off temporarily. Each time you want to start your engine, you must turn the key back to position 0, and then perform the starting procedure once again.

Switching off the ignition (0)

Turn the ignition key to this position and release.

Automatic switch-off of electrical components

Components that use a lot of electricity (for example seat heaters, or rear window defogger) will automatically be switched off when the ignition is on and the engine off. This prevents draining your battery.

Components that use little electricity are not switched off automatically. However, they can drain the battery.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power win- ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

dows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.

- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.
- Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or while it is rolling to a stop. The steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.

Note

You can damage the starter or the engine if you try to start your vehicle (key position (2)) when it is still moving or if you try to start the engine immediately after switching it off.

Tips

If you open the driver's door with the key still in the ignition lock, a buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key and lock your vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Safety interlock for ignition key

The ignition key can only be taken out of the ignition lock if the selector lever is in the P position.

– Switch off the ignition.

– Move the selector lever ⇒page 102 to P (Park).

– Remove the key. This locks the selector lever. ◀

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps to prevent unauthorized use of the vehicle.

There is a chip in the key that automatically deactivates the immobilizer when you put the key into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when you take the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine and correctly coded Volkswagen key.

Tips

You can only start the engine with a correctly coded genuine Volkswagen key. You may have problems starting the vehicle if a genuine and correctly coded Volkswagen key is not used. ◀

Starting and stopping the engine

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Starting the gasoline engine

The engine can only be started using a genuine Volkswagen key with the correct code.

– Move the selector lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral) ⇒page 98.

– Depress the foot brake. In vehicles with a manual transmission depress the clutch pedal.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒page 93, fig. 76 ② to start the engine.

– Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts to avoid damaging the starter.

After starting an engine that is hot, you may need to press the accelerator briefly.

When starting a cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve lifters. This is normal and no cause for concern.

If the engine does not start after 10 seconds, switch off the ignition, wait 30 seconds, then try again.

If you have problems starting ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Jump starting."

⚠ WARNING

Reduce the risk of serious personal injury when starting and running the vehicle's engine.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust from the engine contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly or an unusual operating condition could occur resulting in property damage or personal injury.**
- **Never use "starting assist fluids." They are potentially explosive and can cause a "runaway" vehicle condition.**

Note

You can damage the engine if you drive high engine speeds, at full throttle or by overloading the engine when it is cold.

For the sake of environment

Do not warm up the engine by running it with the vehicle standing still. Drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a diesel engine

Starting the diesel engine

The engine can only be started using a genuine Volkswagen key with the correct code.

– Move the selector lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral) ⇒page 98.

– Depress the foot brake. In vehicles with a manual transmission depress the clutch pedal.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒page 93, fig. 76 ①. The glow plug warning light lights up while the glow plugs are warming up.

– When the warning light goes out, turn the key to position ⇒page 93, fig. 76 ② to start the engine. Do not press the accelerator.

– Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts to avoid damaging the starter.

When starting a cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve lifters. This is normal and no cause for concern.

When staring a warm engine, the pre-glow warning light will not light up. You can start the engine immediately

If you have problems starting ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Jump starting."

Diesel engine pre-glow system

While pre-glow is active, no major electrical loads should be switched on – otherwise unnecessary load is placed on the vehicle battery.

You should start the engine immediately after the pre-glow indicator light has gone out.

To start the diesel engine after the fuel tank has been run dry

If the fuel tank was run completely dry, the starting process after refueling with diesel fuel can take longer than usual – up to one minute. This is because the fuel system first has to be vented of air while starting.

⚠ WARNING

Reduce the risk of serious personal injury when starting and running the vehicle's engine.

- **Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust from the engine contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly or an unusual operating condition could occur resulting in property damage or personal injury.**
- **Never use "starting assist fluids." They are potentially explosive and can cause a "runaway" vehicle condition.**

Note

You can damage the engine if you drive high engine speeds, at full throttle or by overloading the engine when it is cold.

For the sake of environment

Do not warm up the engine by running it with the vehicle standing still. Drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ◀

Switching off the engine

– Let the vehicle come to a complete stop.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒page 93, fig. 76 ⓪.

After the engine is switched off the radiator fan may continue to run for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. The radiator fan can start automatically if the vehicle's engine is hot and the coolant temperature rises, or if the sun heats up the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash and be seriously injured.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake booster does not work when the engine is turned off. A lot more brake pedal pressure will be necessary to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering system does not work when the engine is turned off and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.**
- **When the key is removed, the steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**

ⓘ Note

If the engine has been driven hard for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. To reduce the risk of engine damage, be sure to let the engine idle for about 2 minutes before you switch it off. ◀

Manual transmission

Applies to vehicles: with manual transmission

5-speed and 6-speed manual transmissions

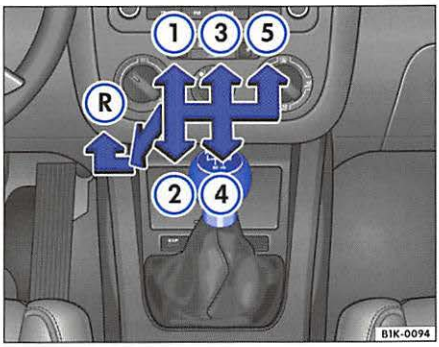


Fig. 77 Section of center console: 5-speed manual transmission

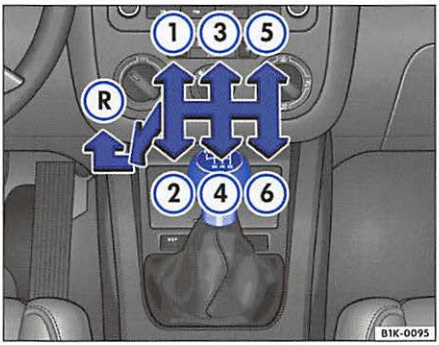


Fig. 78 Section of center console: 6-speed manual transmission

Selecting Reverse gear

– The vehicle should be stationary with the engine idling. Depress the clutch pedal fully. ▶

– Move the gearshift lever into Neutral.

– Press the gearshift lever down, move it to the left and then move it forward into Reverse ⇒fig. 77 Ⓡ or ⇒fig. 78 Ⓡ shown on the gearshift lever.

When you shift into Reverse the back up lights come on.

⚠ WARNING

• When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

• Make sure the vehicle is at a complete standstill before engaging Reverse, otherwise engine damage could result.

Ⓘ Note

• Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever knob when driving. The pressure of your hand could cause premature wear in the transmission.

• Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears.

• Do not hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially depressed. This may cause premature clutch wear or damage. ◀

Automatic transmission / Direct shift gearbox

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox

Transmission programs

The automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox has two programs.



Fig. 79 Section of center console: selector lever

Selecting the standard program

– Move the selector lever into position D (Drive).

Selecting the sport program

– Move the selector lever into position S (Sport).

D - Drive

If you select the standard program you will be driving in the economy mode and will reduce fuel consumption. The transmission upshifts and downshifts at lower engine speeds. While driving downhill in **D**, the engine does not brake the vehicle.

S - (Sport)

If you select the sport program you will be driving in a sporty mode. All forward gears upshift and down-shift automatically at higher engine speeds depending on engine load, your individual driving style and the vehicle speed. While driving downhill in **S**, the engine does not brake the vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Driving in D uses less fuel than driving in S. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Selector lever lock

Releasing the selector lever lock

– Depress and hold the brake pedal and press the release button in the selector lever handle at the same time.

The selector lever is locked when:

- The selector lever is in **P**.
- The selector lever is in **N** for more than about 1 second and you are driving slower than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The selector lever lock will not engage if you quickly move the selector lever through position **N** when shifting between **R** and **D**. This makes it possible, to "rock" the vehicle backward and forward if it is stuck in snow or mud. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Driving with an automatic transmission

The transmission upshifts and downshifts automatically.



Fig. 80 Section of center console: selector lever with lock button

Starting the engine

– Start the engine with the selector lever in position P or N. For more information ⇒page 95.

Driving

– Depress and hold the brake pedal.

– Release the parking brake.

– Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle.

– Move the selector lever to **R** (Reverse), **D** (Drive) or **S** (Sport).

– Release the lock button and wait for the transmission to engage the gear (a slight movement can be felt).

– Release the brake and depress the accelerator ⇒⚠.

Stopping briefly

– Always use the foot brake to prevent the vehicle from creeping forward, for example at a traffic light. You do not need to move the selector lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

– Do not depress the accelerator.

Parking

– Depress and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a full stop ⇒⚠.

– Apply the parking brake firmly ⇒page 104.

– Move the selector lever to **P** with the release button pressed.

Driving down hills

– Select the "Tiptronic ®" position.

– Pull the lever to the "-" minus position to downshift. ▶

Stopping on an incline

– You should always hold the vehicle in position with the footbrake to stop it from "rolling backward".

– Do not try to stop the vehicle from "rolling backward" by increasing the revs when a gear is engaged ⇒⚠.

Moving away on an incline

– With a gear engaged, take your foot from the brake and depress the accelerator.

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need. This increases the braking effect of the engine. For example, you should drive down a very steep slope in 3rd gear. If the engine brake effect is not sufficient, the vehicle will gain speed. The automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox automatically upshifts to prevent the engine from overreving. Use the foot brake to reduce speed and change into 3rd gear using "Tiptronic ®" ⇒⚠.

Your vehicle has an Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) that locks the selector lever in **P** or **N** when the ignition is on. You must depress the brake pedal to move the selector lever out of **P** or **N**. This prevents the selector lever from being unintentionally moved into a driving position resulting in unwanted vehicle movement.

Always hold the vehicle with the foot brake if you stop while driving up a hill to prevent it from rolling backward.

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the selector lever is in **P**.

⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running, especially when it is in gear. If you must leave your vehicle with the engine running, always set the parking brake firmly and move the selector lever to P (Park).**
- **When the engine is running with the selector lever in a driving position (D (Drive), S (Sport) or R (Reverse) always depress and hold the brake pedal to keep the vehicle from moving. Power is transmitted to the wheels when a driving position is selected and the vehicle may "creep" even at idle speed.**
- **Never depress the accelerator when moving the selector lever.**
- **Never move the selector lever to R (Reverse) or P (Park) when the vehicle is moving.**

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash and be seriously injured.

- **The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake booster does not work when the engine is turned off. A lot more brake pedal pressure will be necessary to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering system does not work when the engine is turned off and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.**
- **When the key is removed, the steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**
- **Never coast down a slope with the transmission in Neutral.**

Note

- If you stop the vehicle on a gradient, do not attempt to stop it from rolling by depressing the accelerator when a gear has been selected. The automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox could overheat and be damaged. Pull the parking brake on fully or depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
- Never let the vehicle roll down a hill with the selector lever in N and the engine switched off. This will damage the automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox.

Tips

- If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before selecting a driving position.

- The dual clutch mechanism in the vehicles equipped with direct shift gearbox transmission is equipped with an overload protector. For example, if you are stopped on an incline and the clutch mechanism starts to slip, the transmission fluid will overheat. If the clutch is then overloaded, the vehicle will make a slight jerk and the selector lever display will start to blink. The clutch mechanism will open automatically because it is overloaded. If this happens, depress the foot brake and wait a few seconds before driving off. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with automatic transmission and Tiptronic

Shifting with "Tiptronic®" - using the selector lever

The "Tiptronic®" system lets the driver shift manually.



Fig. 81 Section of the center console: automatic transmission/direct shift gearbox in Tiptronic position

Shifting with "Tiptronic®" (selector lever)

– Move the selector lever from **D** (Drive) to the right into the Tiptronic® position ⇒fig. 81.

– Move the selector to the front ⊕ to upshift.

– Move the selector lever back ⊖ to downshift.

When accelerating, the automatic transmission/direct shift gearbox automatically upshifts to the next highest gear before the maximum engine speed is reached.

When shifting into a lower gear, the automatic transmission/direct shift gearbox will downshift only when there is no possibility of overreving.

If the "Tiptronic®" is selected while the vehicle is in motion and the automatic transmission/direct shift gearbox is in the 3rd gear in selector lever position D, the "Tiptronic®" will then also be in the 3rd gear. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Selector lever positions

The selector lever positions are shown on the display in the instrument cluster

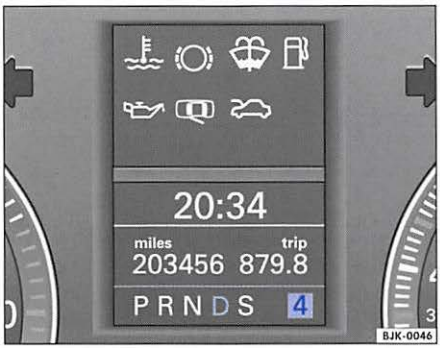


Fig. 82 Section of the instrument cluster: selector lever display with the selector lever in position D and 4th gear



Fig. 83 Section of the instrument cluster: selector lever display in 4th gear selected in the Tiptronic® mode

Selector lever position

The gear selected is displayed on the side of the selector lever and in the display ⇒fig. 82 in the instrument cluster.

Gear selection display for "Tiptronic®"

If the automatic transmission/direct shift gearbox is shifted manually or using "Tiptronic®" the individual gears are shown on the display ⇒fig. 83.

P - Park

When the selector lever is in **P**, the drive wheels are locked mechanically.

Only shift into **P** when the vehicle is at a complete stop ⇒⚠.

When selecting and deselecting **P** you must press the release button in the selector lever handle *and* depress the brake pedal at the same time.

If the battery is drained, the selector lever cannot be moved out of **P**.

R - Reverse

The reverse gear may be engaged only when the vehicle is at a complete stop and the engine is idling ⇒⚠.

To move the selector lever to **R**, press the release button while depressing the brake pedal.

When the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on the back up lights come on.

N - Neutral

In **N** (Neutral), power is not transmitted to the wheels and the engine does not have a braking function.

To move the selector lever out of **N**, you must depress the brake pedal and drive slower than 3 mph (5 km/h) ⇒⚠.

Never use **N** to coast down a hill because the engine will not function as a brake and you will have to rely only on the foot brake.

You could damage the automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox if you drive down hills with the selector lever in position **N** and the engine switched off.

D - standard driving position (standard program)

If you select the standard program you will be driving in the economy mode and will reduce fuel consumption. The transmission upshifts and downshifts at *lower engine speeds*. While driving downhill in **D**, the engine does not brake the vehicle. The display also shows which gear ▶

has been selected in addition to position D ⇒fig. 83.

If position N has been selected and you wish to select D, you must press the foot brake if the vehicle is stationary, or travelling at under 5 km/h (approx. 3 mph) ⇒⚠.

S - standard driving position (sport program)

If you select the sport program you will be driving in a sporty mode. All forward gears upshift and downshift automatically at higher engine speeds depending on engine load, your individual driving style and the vehicle speed. While driving downhill in S, the engine does not brake the vehicle. The display also shows which gear has been selected in addition to position S.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash and be seriously injured.

- **The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake booster does not work when the engine is turned off. A lot more brake pedal pressure will be necessary to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering system does not work when the engine is turned off and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **When the key is removed, the steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**
- **Never coast down a slope with the transmission in Neutral.**

Note

Never let the vehicle roll down a hill with the selector lever in N and the engine switched off. This will damage the automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox.

Tips

- If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before selecting a driving position.
- If there is a fault in the system and the automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox is running in an emergency program if all the displays of the selector lever positions for the automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox have a light background. The automatic transmission / direct shift gearbox should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer as soon as possible. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Kick-down function

The kick-down function permits maximum acceleration when the selector lever is in D, S or "Tiptronic®".

If you push the accelerator pedal all the way down, the transmission permits maximum acceleration. The transmission automatically downshifts, depending on the road speed as well as the engine speed.

The transmission will not upshift until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear selected.

⚠ WARNING

Accelerating on slippery roads can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- **Be very careful when using the kick-down feature, especially on slippery surfaces. Rapid acceleration may cause wheel spin and skidding.**
- **Use the kick-down feature only when traffic and weather conditions permit.** ◀

Parking brake

Applying the parking brake

The parking brake can be used to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally.

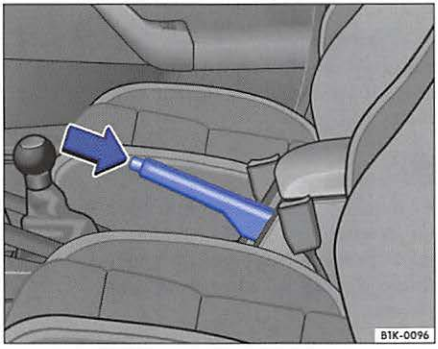


Fig. 84 Parking brake between front seats

Always apply the parking brake fully when you leave your vehicle and when you park your vehicle.

Applying the parking brake

– Pull the parking brake up firmly ⇒fig. 84.

Releasing the parking brake

– Pull the lever up slightly and press the locking knob in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ and guide the parking brake lever down fully ⇒⚠.

The parking brake should always be *fully* engaged so that you won't unintentionally drive off with the parking brake still engaged ⇒⚠.

When the ignition is on and the parking brake is engaged, the warning light BRAKE or (!) in the instrument cluster will come on. In addition, the daytime running light switches off automatically.

When the parking brake is released, the warning light BRAKE or (!) goes out and the daytime running light switches on again automatically.

If you should drive faster than 4 mph (6 km/h) with the parking brake still engaged, the warning light will come on and you will also hear a warning chime.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the parking brake can seriously injure you and your passengers.

- **Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving. The braking distance is much longer because only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.**
- **Never drive with the parking brake applied. This could cause the rear brakes to overheat and lose their braking efficiency. Always make sure to check that the parking brake is fully released before driving off.**
- **Always apply the parking brake fully when parking on a slope and cock the front wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally.**

(!) Note

- Whenever you leave your vehicle, be sure to engage the parking brake fully. Then move the selector lever into P (Park)..
- Driving with the parking brake engaged will damage the rear brakes. ◀

Parking

The parking brake can be used to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally.

Always apply the parking brake fully when you leave your vehicle and when you park your vehicle.

– Use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.

– Apply the parking brake fully.

– On a manual transmission engage 1st gear. On an automatic transmission move the selector lever to P.

– Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.

– Always take you vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle ⇒⚠.

When parking on slopes

Before turning off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that if the vehicle starts to roll, it will roll into the curb:

- If the vehicle is facing *downhill*, turn the front wheels so that they point toward the curb.
- If the vehicle is facing *uphill*, turn the front wheels so that they point away from the curb.
- As always, apply the parking brake fully and move the selector lever to P.

⚠ WARNING

Improper parking procedures can lead to serious personal injury for you or your passengers.

- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel etc.**
- **Always apply the parking brake fully when parking your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone in your vehicle to prevent the vehicle from moving if the parking brake is released or selector lever is moved.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control trapping passengers in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.**

ⓘ Note

- Please exercise care when you park your vehicle in parking areas with parking barriers or curbs. Parking barriers and curbs vary in height and could damage your bumper and related components as the front of your vehicle moves over a barrier or curb that is too high, as you park or as you back out of a parking spot. In order to be sure that no such damage can occur, you may wish to stop short of having the front tires of your car touch parking barrier or curb.
- Please also exercise exceptional care when you drive up or down steep ramps or drive over curbs or other obstacles, for which the vehicle is not designed, because components of the vehicle close to the ground such as bumper covers, spoilers, suspension and exhaust system components, may become damaged. ◀

Electronic Parking Assistance

Applies to vehicles: with Electronic Parking Assistance

Description of Electronic Parking Assistance

The Electronic Parking Assistance is a parking aid, which draws your attention to obstacles.

The electronic parking assistance helps the driver when parking the vehicle. The driver is informed or warned by audible signals that the vehicle is approaching obstacles behind the vehicle. The closer your vehicle approaches the obstacle, the quicker the audible signals will sound. The audible signal will sound continuously if the obstacle is very near.

It uses ultrasonic sensors in rear bumpers to measure the distance to obstacles.

The sensors are both transmitters and receivers of the ultrasound waves. The electronic systems uses the ultrasound waves (i.e. transmission, reflection from the obstacle and reception) to calculate the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle.

Once your vehicle is very close to the obstacle, the obstacle will no longer be detected and you could cause damage to the vehicle. Always pay close attention to the audible signals to help you park your vehicle.

Switching on the electronic parking assistance

The parking distance warning system is switched on when the reverse gear is selected and when the ignition is on. An audible signal is given. If you do not hear this acoustic signal, the parking distance warning system is not switched on. Have the system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Switching off the electronic parking assistance

The parking assistance is switched off when the reverse gear is deselected.

⚠ WARNING

The electronic parking assistance cannot replace the driver's assessment of the situation. The driver is personally responsible for safe parking and other maneuvers.

- **The sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.**
- **Be particularly aware of small children or animals when backing up. The sensors may not always be able to detect them.**

Note

- The electronic parking assistance may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer draw bars, thin painted rails, fences, posts etc. This could result in damage to your car.
- The electronic parking assistance works only at speeds of under about 9 mph (15 km/h).
- The electronic parking sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice. When cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners, the sensors should be sprayed only briefly. A distance of at least 0.3 ft. (0.1 meters) between the sensors and the steam / hose nozzle must be observed. ◀

Cruise control

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control

Description

The cruise control can be set to keep vehicle speed constant from about 18 mph to 110 mph (30 km/h to 180 km/h).

When you have reached the vehicle speed that you want, you can set the cruise control and take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control does not work if the selector lever is in P, N or R.

⚠ WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed is dangerous.

- **Never use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, on steep, winding or slippery roads (for example snow, ice, streets covered with water or gravel).**
- **To prevent unintended operation of the cruise control, switch the system off when it is not being used.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **It is dangerous to use the resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic or weather conditions.**

Ⓘ Note

- When travelling downhill, the cruise control may not maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will accelerate as a result of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.
- For vehicles with a manual transmission, do not move the gearshift lever into neutral without depressing the clutch fully when the cruise control is activated. Otherwise the engine could rev up and be damaged. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with independent lever for Cruise control

Using the cruise control

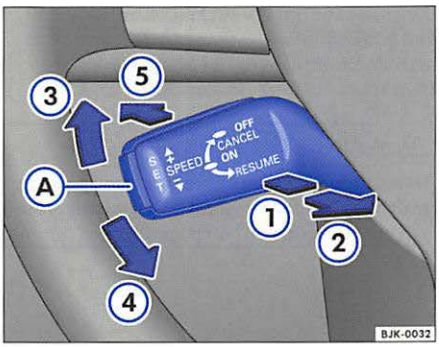


Fig. 85 Cruise control lever

Switching on

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to the first detent in the direction of arrow ⇒fig. 85 ①. The CRUISE or symbol lights up.

Setting speed

– While driving faster than 18 mph (30 km/h), press the button SET (Ⓐ) briefly when you have reached the speed you wish to set. The current speed is set and maintained. ▶

Accelerating

– Pull the lever upward in direction of arrow ③ to the + position to increase the speed by about 0.5 mph (1 km/h).

Decelerating

– Pull the lever downward in direction of arrow ④ to the - position to lower the speed by 0.5 mph (about 1 km/h).

Switching off

– Push the lever in the direction of arrow ⑤ **all the way** to the OFF position while driving. The CRUISE or symbol goes off.

– Switch the ignition off when the vehicle is standing still.

⚠ WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed is dangerous ⇒⚠ in "Description".

Tips

- If the cruise control is switched on the CRUISE or symbol in the instrument cluster lights up.
- If the cruise control is *switched off*, the CRUISE or symbol goes out. The system is switched off completely when the selector lever is in **P**, **N** or **R**.
- If you increase vehicle speed with the accelerator pedal, the previously programmed speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released. This will not be the case, however, if the vehicle speed is more than 6 mph (10 km/h) higher than the stored speed for longer than 5 minutes. The speed will then have to be stored again.
- The set speed can be switched off temporarily if you press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal. Pull the lever briefly toward the steering wheel to the point where you can start to feel resistance ⇒page 107, fig. 85 ② to resume the speed again. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with independent lever for Cruise control

Turning off control temporarily

You can turn off the control temporarily as follows:

– Depress the brake pedal,

– Depress the clutch pedal, or

– Push the lever briefly to the point where you can start to feel resistance in the direction of arrow ⇒page 107, fig. 85 ⑤.

The set speed remains in the memory, but it is not maintained. To resume the speed previously selected, release the brake pedal and pull the lever briefly toward the steering wheel to the point where you can start to feel resistance ⇒page 107, fig. 85 ②.

If you drive faster than about 110 mph (180 km/h) the cruise control is switched off automatically and you cannot activate the cruise control. To activate the cruise control again, drive slower than about 110 mph (180 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed is dangerous ⇒⚠ in "Description" on page 107. ◀

Alphabetical index

A

ABS
Warning light 27
See also Anti-lock brake system
Acoustic warning 93
Additional storage compartment 73
Adjusting the compass variance zone 19
Air conditioning
Condensation 89
Important notes 88
Malfunctions 88
Unpleasant odor 89
Air conditioning system 81
Climatronic 84
Air recirculation mode
2C-Climatronic 83, 88
Alarm system 36
Switching off 36
Alternator
See Generator
Anti-lock brake system
Warning light 27
Anti-Slip Regulation 92
Anti-theft alarm system 36
Switching off 36
Armrest
Front center armrest 66
Storage compartment 70
ASR 92
Automatic mode
Climatronic 85
Automatic switch-off of electrical components 93
Automatic transmission
Direct shift gearbox 98
Safety interlock for ignition key 94
Selector lever lock 99
Tiptronic 98
Automatic transmission with Tiptronic 101
Average fuel consumption 9
Average speed 9

B

Background lighting 51
Brake fluid
Warning light 11
Brake pad
Warning message 11
Brake pad wear indicator
Warning light 26
Brake system
Warning light 28
Bulb defective
Warning light 24
Bumper cover
Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb 105
Buzzer 50, 93

C

Calibrating the compass 18
Central locking
Individual unlocking 34
Central locking button 34
Central locking system 34
Changing units 16
Child safety locks 35
Cleaning
Electronic parking assistance sensors 106
Climatic 81
Malfunctions 88
Climatronic
Important notes 88
Malfunctions 88
Clock 5
Closing
Rear lid 38
Clothes hook 71
Coming home function 47
Compass 18
Adjusting 19
Calibrating 18
Compass function 12
Condensation 89
Controls
Power windows 39
Convenience closing 41, 43
Convenience menu 17

Convenience opening 41
Convenience operation (electric windows) 18
Coolant
Warning light 11
Coolant level
Warning 24
Coolant temperature
Gauge 6
Warning 24
Cooling the glove compartment 69
Cruise control 107
Warning light 29
Cup holders
In the rear armrest 72
Cup holders in the center console 72
Current fuel consumption 9

D

Day time running lights
Warning light 30
Daytime driving lights 46
Digital clock 5
Display 7, 12
Displays
One-color display 12
Distance travelled 9
Door release handle 3
Doors
Warning light 26
Drain the battery 52
Driving time 9
Driving with an automatic transmission 99
Dust filter 88

E

EDL
See Electronic Differential Lock
EDS
Warning light 27
Electric seat adjustment
See Seat adjustment
Electrical accessories 73
Electro-mechanical power steering system
Warning light 29
Electronic Differential Lock
Warning light 27
Electronic immobilizer 94
Warning light 23
Electronic parking assistance 106
Electronic Power Control (EPC)
Warning light 23
Electronic Stabilization Program 28, 91
Warning light 28
Emergency flasher 48
Emergency warning lights
Warning light 24
Engine fault
Warning light 23
Engine hood
Warning light 26
Engine malfunction
Warning light 23
Engine management
Warning light 23
Engine oil pressure
Warning light 11, 25
Environmental information
Fuel economy 6
Environmental tip
Fuel economy 77
ESP 91
See also Electronic Stabilization Program
Exhaust warning light
Warning light 22

F

First-aid kit 74
Fog lights 46
Foot brake
Warning light 30
Front center armrest 70
Front passenger seat backrest
Folding forward 61
Front seats 60
Electrical adjustable 62
Manual adjustable 60
Fuel filler cap
Warning light 29
Fuel gauge
Display 7
Fuel level 7

Fuel reserve
Warning light 26
Warning message 11
Fuel tank 7
See also Fuel reserve

G

Garage door opener 44
Gear selector lever
See Automatic transmission with Tiptronic
General illustration 3
Generator
Warning light 24
Glove compartment
Front passenger side 69
Glove compartment light 50
Glow plug system
Warning light 23

H

Hat shelf 79
Hazard lights 48
Head restraints
Adjusting 58, 59
Removing 59
Headlight flasher 49
Headlights 46
Fog lights 46
Switching 46
Washer system 55
Heated front seats 65
Heating 80
High beam 49
Warning light 29
High beam lever 49
HomeLink Universal Transmitter 44
Horn 3

I

Ignition key 93
Ignition switch 93
Immobilizer 23
Warning message 11
Indicator lights
Mirror 55
Indirect ventilation 86
Individual unlocking 17, 34
Information texts in the display 11
Inside mirror
Indicator light 55
Instrument cluster 5
Instrument cluster illumination 3, 48
Instrument panel 2, 71
Instruments 5
Interior lights
Front 50
Intermittent wipe 53

K

Key tag 31
Keys 31
Kick-down function 103

L

Lane change flash function 17
Language in display 16
Leaving home function 47
Lights 46
Lights & Vision
Menu 17
Low beam 46
Luggage compartment 74

M

Main menu - Multi-Function Indicator 9
Manual mode
Climatronic 87
Manual transmission 97
Menu for convenience functions 17
Menu for Lights & Vision 17
Menu for vehicle status 15
Menus
Example of use 13, 14
MFI 9
Mileage (kilometer) display 8
Miles (kilometers) to empty 9

Mirrors
Inside mirror 55
Make-up mirrors 52
Outside mirrors, electrical 56
Mirrors lowered function 18
Multi-Function Indicator 9
Multi-function steering wheel 4

O

One-touch opening and closing power windows 40
Orientation lighting 47
Outside temperature display 10
Overview
Instruments 5
Multi-function steering wheel 4
Warning lights 20

P

Panic button 32
Park assist 106
Parking 105
Automatic transmission 99
Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb 105
Low bumper cover, spoilers and suspension 105
When parking on slopes 105
Parking aid 106
Parking brake 104
Warning light 28, 104
Parking distance warning system 106
Pinch protection
Power roof 43
Windows 41
Pollen filter 88
Pollution filter 88
Power
Roof 42
Power outlet 73
Power roof 42
Power steering
Warning light 29
Power windows 39

R

Rain sensor 54
Reading lights
Front 51
Rear armrest 70
Rear interior light 52
Rear lid 37
Closing 38
Warning light 26
Rear seat backrest
Folding forward 66
Raising into place 67
Rear seat bench 66
Rear ventilation 86
Rear view mirror 55
Rear window 37
Rear window heating 80, 81
Rear wiper 53
Remote control
Vehicle 32
Remote control key
Buttons 32
Replacing the battery 32
Synchronizing 33
Removing the ignition key 94
Replacement keys 31
Replacing the battery
Remote control key 32
Reverse
Automatic transmission 102
Roof carrier mounts 76
Roof load 77
Roof rack 76, 77

S

Safety instructions
Coolant temperature 25
Seat adjustment 57, 60
Seat heating
Front 65
Securing load 77
Selector lever lock 99
Selector lever positions 102
Self-dimming inside day-night mirror 55
Service interval display 8
Service position 53

Set up menu 16
Setting the clock 16
Settings
Menu 16
Shopping bag hook 78
Socket 73
Speed warning 9
Starting the diesel engine
With the ignition key 96
Starting the gasoline engine
With the ignition key 95
Steering 90
Steering lock 93
Steering wheel height adjustment 90
Stopping the engine 97
Storage area
Other storage areas 71
Roof 71
Storage compartment 69
Front center armrest 70
Rear armrest 70
Storage for the vehicle literature 69
Storing seat positions 64
Sun shade 79
Sun visor 52
Sunroof 42
Sunshade
power roof 42
Switch lighting 3
Switches
Emergency flasher 48
Light switches 46
Power outside mirrors 56
Power roof 42
Power windows 39
Switching off the engine
With the ignition key 97

T

Tachometer 6
Tank
Fuel gauge 7
Tie-down hooks 78
Tire pressure monitoring system
Warning light 30
Trailer turn signals
Warning light 49
Transporting long items 61, 68
Trunk lid 37
Turn signal and high beam lever 49
Turn signals 49
Warning light 24, 49

U

Unpleasant odor 89

V

Veh. status 15
Vehicle electric system 24
Vehicle status 15

W

Warning light
Electronic Power Control (EPC) 23
Warning lights 20
Emergency flasher 48
Turn signals 49
Warning texts in the display 11
Warning triangle 74
When parking on slopes 105
When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 7
Windows 39, 40
Windshield washer fluid
Warning light 26
windshield washer fluid
Warning message 11
Windshield wiper and washer system 53
Windshield wipers 53
Rain sensor 54
Service position 53
Winter operation 54, 55
Winter tires
Speed warning 16

Afterword

Volkswagen works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen de México.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen de México. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Mexico

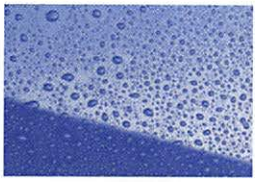
© 2005 Volkswagen de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

3.1 Controls and Equipment | Jetta
Print status: 04.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.551.JKB.21 | englisch Nordamerika 05.2005





3.2 Tips and Advice

Jetta

Model year 2006

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to vehicles with Diesel engine" .

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Smart technology 2

Brakes 2
Power steering 6
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 6

Driving and protecting the environment 7

Break-in Period 7
Catalytic converter 10
Trailer towing 10
Driving economically and respecting the environment 14

Cleaning and protection 16

General notes 16
Care of vehicle exterior 17
Care of the vehicle interior 23

Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications 27

Accessories and parts 27
Repairs and technical modifications 28
Cellular phones and CB radios 29

Checking and Filling 30

Filling the tank 30
Fuel supply 32
Working in the engine compartment 34
Engine oil 37
Coolant 43
Washer fluid and windshield wiper blades 45
Brake fluid 47
Vehicle battery 49
Tires and wheels 51

What do I do now? 67

Vehicle tools and spare wheel 67
Changing a wheel 68
Emergency closing or opening 75
Fuses 77
Changing a light bulb 81
Jump starting 84
Towing 86
Lifting the vehicle 89
Consumer Information 90

Alphabetical index 92

Smart technology

Brakes

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the brake pressure you put on the brake pedal. It works only when the engine is running.

If the brake booster is not working or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to push the brake pedal harder to make up for the lack of booster assist.

⚠ WARNING

Braking without the brake booster needs a much longer braking distance and requires

⚠ WARNING (continued)

you to push the brake pedal down harder than normal.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.**
- **If the brake booster is not active, for example if the vehicle is being towed, you will have to push the brake pedal down much harder than normal.** ◀

Brake Assist System (BAS)

In an emergency, most drivers brake in time, but not with maximum force. This results in stopping distances that are longer than they have to be!

The brake assist system helps: if you press the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system registers an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up the full brake pressure so that the ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently, reducing the braking distance and letting you steer at the same time.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The brake assist system switches off automatically as soon as you release the brake. The brake assist system works only when the engine is running.

If the brake system is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on ⇒booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment."

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. Do not

⚠ WARNING (continued)

let the extra safety afforded by the Brake Assist System tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **Never let the extra safety offered by the Brake Assist System tempt you into taking extra risks.**
- **The Brake Assist System cannot reduce the risk of an accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.**
- **Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with the Brake Assist System!**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒page 28, "Repairs and technical modifications".**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

systems work and reduce their effectiveness. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Driver Steering Recommendation

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

The Driver Steering Recommendation helps to stabilize the vehicle in certain situations

The Driver Steering Recommendation is a complementary function of the ESP. This feature allows the driver to stabilize the vehicle in certain critical situations. For example in certain road surface conditions it is necessary to brake hard. The vehicle will then tend to brake away to the right or to the left. The ESP recognizes this situation and supports the driver to steer to the opposite direction by increasing the steering strength.

⚠ WARNING

The DSR only supports the driver in critical driving conditions. The vehicle will not steer by itself. The driver is responsible for steering the vehicle. ◀

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-Lock Brake System prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

The ABS is an important part of the vehicle's active safety system. The Anti-Lock Brake System works only when the engine is running.

How the ABS works

If one wheel begins to turn too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock up, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking. When ABS is doing its job you will notice a slight vibration through the brake pedal and hear a noise to let you know that your speed must be adjusted to road, traffic and weather conditions. This is a warning that one or more of the wheels is about to lock up and that the ABS control function has intervened. In this situation it is important to keep the brake pedal fully depressed so the ABS can help to regulate the brake application. Do not "pump" the brake pedal – ABS cannot do its job if you do.

ABS helps you to keep the vehicle under control because it prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied. This means the vehicle can still be steered and is less likely to skid.

The ABS cannot necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance can even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering a slippery surface.

If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on ⇒booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment."

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the extra safety that ABS can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **Always drive safely.**
- **ABS cannot change the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ABS!**
- **ABS cannot reduce the risk of accidents, for example if you drive too fast for the conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.** ▶

⚠ WARNING

- Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒page 28, "Repairs and technical modifications".

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness.
- The effectiveness of ABS is also determined by the tires on your vehicle ⇒page 51, "Tires and wheels". ◀

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The electronic differential lock helps reduce the loss of traction if a wheel starts spinning.

The EDL helps the vehicle start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient when the going gets slippery where moving ahead may otherwise be difficult or even impossible. EDL uses the ABS sensors to monitor the speed of the wheels.

EDL works only when the engine is running.

EDL can help to balance out differences in the rotation of the wheels of approximately 100 rpm caused by a slippery ground surface on *one side* of the vehicle. It does this by braking the wheel that has lost traction and distributing more driving force to the other driven wheel via the differential

EDL is active at speeds up to about 50 mph (80 km/h).

EDL automatically shuts off to prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating under excessive loads. The vehicle remains operational the same way as a vehicle without EDL. For this reason, the driver is not informed that the EDL has been shut off.

EDL will automatically switch on again when the brake has cooled down.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the extra safety that EDL can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. Despite EDL, the wheels may start to spin leading to a loss of vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

- Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒page 28, "Repairs and technical modifications".
- Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness. ◀

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) / Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ESP and ASR can help make driving safer in certain situations

How ESP works

ESP consists of ABS, EDL and ASR

ESP helps to reduce the risk of skidding by braking the wheels individually. It works only when the engine is running.

The ESP system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares this information with the actual behavior of the vehicle. If the path of travel is not being maintained accurately (for example if the vehicle is beginning to skid) ESP compensates automatically by applying the brake at the appropriate wheel.

The forces acting on the braked wheel help to bring the vehicle back on course. If the vehicle is tending to break away at the rear, the brake application is concentrated on the outside front wheel; if the vehicle tends to follow a wider radius in a curve, the brake is mainly applied to the inside rear wheel.

How the Anti-slip regulation (ASR) works

The ASR reduces engine power to help prevent the driven wheels of front-wheel drive vehicles losing traction during acceleration. The system works in the entire speed range in conjunction with ABS. If the ABS fails, the ASR will also be out of action. ASR helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road, traffic and weather conditions. Do not let the extra

⚠ WARNING (continued)

safety that ESP and ASR can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **Always drive safely.**
- **ESP and ASR cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ESP!**
- **ESP and ASR cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒page 28, "Repairs and technical modifications".**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness.**
- **The effectiveness of ESP is also determined by the tires fitted ⇒page 51, "Tires and wheels".**

ⓘ Note

In order to ensure that ESP and ASR function correctly, all four wheels must be mounted with the same tires. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power – even when this is not the best thing to do under the circumstances. ◀

Power steering

On vehicles with power steering, the amount of power assistance is regulated electronically according to vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle.

The power assistance provided in the power steering system is not hydraulic, but rather mechanical using an electric motor. The advantages of this steering system include the fact that no hydraulic components such as hoses, oil containers, filters or hydraulic fluids are required. Furthermore, this is a considerable decrease in energy required. The electromechanical steering system, in contrast to the hydraulic system (which requires a constant flow of fluid), only consumes energy when the vehicle is actually being steered.

The fuel consumption is reduced as a result.

If the electromechanical power steering system fails, the power assisted steering system will still work. If the engine is switched off, the power steering does not function and the steering wheel is very hard to turn.

⚠ WARNING

Turning the steering wheel is very difficult when the power steering system is not working and it is harder to control the vehicle.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.**

Note

Do not keep the steering wheel turned all the way to the left or right for more than 15 seconds when the engine is running. Doing so could damage the power steering system. ◀

Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is **not equipped** with an Event Data Recorder (EDR), installed by some manufacturers for the express purpose of capturing data for retrieval after an accident or crash event. EDR's are sometimes called "crash recorders".

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDR's that were installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the Owner's consent.

Although your vehicle is not equipped with an EDR, it is equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as, for example, engine function, emission control, as well as for the airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules also record vehicle-related data during normal vehicle operation for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capacity of the electronic control modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded) and only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time and stored when a system fault or other condition is sensed by a control unit. Some of the data then stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, braking as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash or other condition. Stored data can only be read and downloaded with special equipment. ◀

Driving and protecting the environment

Break-in Period

Break-in for a new engine

The engine needs to be broken in during the first 1000 miles (1500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1000 km)

– Do not drive faster than three quarters of top speed shown on the speedometer.

– Do not use full throttle.

– Avoid high engine speeds.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 600 to 1000 miles (1000 to 1500 km)

– Speeds can be *gradually* increased to the maximum vehicle speed or maximum permissible engine speed (rpm).

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than it will be later when all the moving parts have been broken in.

For the sake of environment

If the engine is broken in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced. ◀

Breaking in tires and brake pads

New tires should be broken in carefully for the first 350 miles (560 km). New brake pads should be broken in carefully for the first 150 miles (240 km).

During the first 150 miles (240 km), you can compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. If you need to make an emergency stop, the braking distance will be longer with new brake pads than with brake pads which have been broken in.

⚠ WARNING

New tires and brake pads do not provide maximum grip, control or braking ability.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).**
- **New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 150 miles (240 km) and must be broken in. You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal.**
- **Never follow other vehicles too closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.** ◀

Braking power and braking distance

Braking power and braking distance are influenced by driving situations and road conditions

Worn **brake pads** will not provide good braking. The amount of wear and tear on the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. If you do a lot of city driving, drive short distances or have a sporty driving style, we recommend that you have the thickness of your brake pads checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer more frequently than recommended in the service schedule.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example after a driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, braking power will be reduced and stopping distances will be longer because the brake discs will be wet or in winter maybe even frozen – the brakes must be dried with several careful brake applications.

Brake fluid absorbs water and must be changed every two years. Heavy use of the brakes can cause vapor lock if the brake fluid is too old. Vapor lock reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.

⚠ WARNING

- New tires and new brake pads do not provide maximum grip, control or braking ability.
- To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).
- New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 150 miles (240 km) and must be broken in. You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking ability by driving with care and applying more pressure on the brake pedal.
- Never follow other vehicles too closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Carefully apply brakes for a test.
- Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒⚠ in "Breaking in tires and brake pads" on page 7.

⚠ WARNING

Overheated brakes will reduce the vehicle's stopping power and increase stopping distances.

- Always avoid overheating the brakes!
- When driving downhill, the brakes have to work hard and heat up quickly.
- Before driving down a long, steep hill, always reduce speed and downshift to a lower gear. This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes.
- Always change the brake fluid at least every two years. Hard braking with old brake fluid may cause a vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.
- A damaged front spoiler or new non standard spoiler can reduce the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.
- Always see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop if you think that you may have damaged the front spoiler.
- Be sure to read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒page 27, "Accessories and parts" before buying accessories. ◀

Operate your vehicle safely

For driving safely, always follow the specified maintenance intervals in your maintenance booklet ⇒booklet 1.1 "Maintenance" - especially for changing the brake fluid. Hard use, primarily stop and go driving, operation in very dusty areas, trailer towing as well as other conditions may make it necessary to shorten maintenance intervals – see your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Your vehicle's condition is directly related to driving safety

Therefore, always be sure to observe the following points before you drive off:

- Check lights and turn signals.
- Check fuel level.
- Make sure that all lights and all windows are clean.
- Adjust the mirrors.
- Make sure that the air intake slots between the engine hood and the windshield are free of leaves, snow and ice.
- Check warning and indicator lights when starting the engine.

Your personal driving style and attitude have a lot to do with safety..

Therefore, for your own safety:

- Wear your safety belts and wear them properly, even if you are just driving in the city or to the corner store ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts."
- Make sure that all passengers wear their safety belts properly, even those sitting in the rear ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts." Passengers not wearing safety belts endanger not only themselves in a crash, but also the driver and other passengers.
- Make sure that children always sit on the rear seat properly restrained by a restraint system appropriate for their size and age.
- Never transport a child in a rear facing child or infant seat on the front passenger seat ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first."
- Adjust your seat so that you can easily reach all controls while you are as far away from the airbag as possible but not closer than 10 inches (25 cm) ⇒booklet 2.1 and ⇒booklet 3.1.
- The seating position is very important for the airbag performance ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."
- Always adjust the head restraints to the correct height. For maximum protection, adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible, but no lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first."
- Always make sure that the movement of the pedals is not restricted in any way ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Pedals."
- Store luggage and light items properly in the luggage compartment and on the roof ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Luggage compartment" and ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Roof rack."

If you drink, do not drive!

The use of alcohol, drugs and certain medications will seriously impair perception, reactions and driving ability, substantially increasing the risk of an accident, crash and personal injury.

Do not drive if you are tired.

Make frequent rest stops, at least after every two hours of driving.

Always adapt vehicle speed to traffic, road and weather conditions.

Remember, that especially on smooth, slippery roads, vehicle handling and braking depend a great deal on tire adhesion. On wet roads, the front wheels can hydroplane, especially at higher speeds. If this happens, you will then no longer be able to steer or brake properly.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the posted speed limits and common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your destination and being seriously injured in a crash or other kind of accident.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and additional information regarding safety ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first."** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Catalytic converter

Help the catalytic converter do its job for a long time:

- Always use unleaded gasoline.
- Never run the tank completely empty.
- Do not put in too much engine oil ⇒page 40, "Adding engine oil ".
- Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jumper cables if necessary ⇒page 85.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, slow down immediately and have the vehicle inspected by the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. These conditions will usually be indicated by an indicator light ⇒booklet 3.1, chapter "Warning lights." If this happens, raw fuel can get into the exhaust system, damage the catalytic converter and escape into the atmosphere.

⚠ WARNING

A catalytic converter gets very hot and can cause fire causing serious personal injury.

- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with dry grass or any other flammable materials under the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never apply additional undercoating or rust proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields.**

Note

- Never drive until the tank is completely empty because irregular fuel supply could cause the engine to misfire. This allows raw, unburned fuel to get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.
- If the oil level is above level ⇒page 39, fig. 5 Ⓐ, do not start the engine - this could damage the catalytic converter and the engine! See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.
- To avoid damage to the catalytic converter always read and heed the information on ⇒page 32, "Fuel supply".

For the sake of environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, you may sometimes smell sulfur from the exhaust depending on the amount of sulfur in the fuel you are using. The smell can usually be solved by changing to another brand of gasoline. Trailer towing ◀

Trailer towing

Technical requirements

Your Volkswagen was designed primarily for passenger transportation. If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that your vehicle will be performing a service for which it was not primarily intended. The additional load will affect durability, handling, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For these reasons, always follow the operating and driving instructions given and use common sense.

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and be securely bolted to appropriate place on the vehicle's chassis. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch ▶

manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch ⇒⚠.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed so, that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. Do not make any changes to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch-mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the engine cooling system is up to the job. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer has its own brakes, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations. The trailer brake system must never be directly connected to the vehicle's brake system.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations ⇒ⓘ.

Never connect the trailer light system directly to the light system of your vehicle. Be sure to check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you must install extended mirrors. It's vital that you always have clear vision to the rear.

Maximum power consumption for the trailer

Do not exceed the ratings given in the chart ⇒ⓘ

Electrical load	Max. power
Tail lights total	60 Watts
Turn signals per side	54 Watts
Brake lights total	84 Watts
Backup light total	54 Watts

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or incorrect trailer hitch can cause a trailer to separate from the towing vehicle leading to serious personal injuries.

- **Never install a "weight distributing" or "load equalizing" trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed for these kinds of trailer hitches. The hitch attachment can fail causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

When you no longer need to tow a trailer, remove the entire trailer hitch. Always seal all bolt holes to prevent water and deadly exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.

ⓘ Note

- Do not use a trailer which has LED (light emitting diodes) tail lights. This type of tail light can damage the electrical control unit of your vehicle.
- If the trailer socket is incorrectly connected, damage could result to the vehicles electrical system.
- If the maximum power consumption for the trailer is exceeded, damage could result to the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Never connect the electrical system for the trailer directly to the electrical connections for the rear lights or to other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable trailer socket to provide power to the trailer. ◀

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

You can only tow typical class 1 or class 2 trailers with your vehicle.

The maximum gross trailer weight and the tongue load must never exceed the specifications listed in ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Never exceed the gross vehicle weight, which is the weight of the vehicle, including driver, passengers, luggage, trailer hitch and tongue weight of the loaded trailer.

In altitudes above 3,000 ft. (1,000 m), reduction of 10% of combined towing weight (vehicle plus trailer) for the beginning of every 3,000 ft. (1,000 m) should be observed.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to guard against shifting, be it forward, backward or sideways. A load that shifts can make it hard or even impossible to control your vehicle, particularly in an emergency situation.

Tongue load

For best vehicle handling when towing a trailer, adjust the trailer load so that the tongue load is at the maximum allowable or slightly lower. You can get an approximation of the tongue load with a bathroom scale or you can measure the load at a trucking company or weighing station.

The tongue load increases the weight of the rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry ⇒⚠.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed on the sticker on the open edge of the driver's door. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

Always check the headlight settings with the trailer hooked up before driving off. Adjust as necessary so that you can see the road ahead but not blind oncoming traffic.

Check and make sure that all vehicle and trailer lights are working properly – especially the brake lights.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to turn corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road while you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping to the ground in case of separation from the hitch.

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

Always leave the ESP switched on when you tow a trailer. The ESP makes it easier to stabilize the trailer should it start to swerve or sway.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road, traffic and weather conditions. Do not let the extra safety that ESP/ASR can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

⚠ WARNING

Riding in a trailer is dangerous and may be illegal.

- **A person who is not properly restrained in a moving vehicle risk serious personal injury and even death in a crash.**
- **Never let anyone ride in your vehicle without being properly restrained.**
- **Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer.**

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weight ratings and maximum permissible trailer weights can result in accidents leading to serious personal injury.

- **Never let the actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible weights. Also never let their combination exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**
- **Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents, and personal injury.** ◀

Driving tips

For the best handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.
- The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed ⇒⚠.
- Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, downshift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.
- The cooling effect of the radiator fan cannot be increased by downshifting because fan speed is independent of engine speed. Therefore, when driving uphill, you can always drive in the highest possible gear with low engine speed. If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing in red, pull off the road, stop and let the engine idle for about 2 minutes to prevent a heat buildup and engine damage.

⚠ WARNING

- **Reduce your speed even more under unfavorable load, weather or wind conditions – particularly when going downhill.**
- **Be especially careful when passing other vehicles. Reduce vehicle speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying.**
- **Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**
- **Always heed speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.** ◀

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic until you learn the feel of your vehicle and trailer unit.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Steering while backing up is generally opposite of that when backing your vehicle without a trailer.

Keep more distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop.

To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes. ▶

Parking

After parking, always block the wheels of both vehicle and trailer. Do not park with a trailer on a slope. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

- Apply foot brake.
- Have someone place chocks under both vehicle and trailer wheels.
- With the chocks in place, slowly release brakes until wheel blocks absorb the load.
- Turn wheels to curb (vehicle facing downhill) or to the street (when facing uphill).
- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Place automatic transmission in P.

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may need more force to move the lever out of the P position.

Restarting

When restarting after parking on a slope, reverse the procedure:

- Start the engine.
- Shift transmission into gear.
- Release the parking brake and slowly move away from the wheel blocks.
- Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel blocks.

Note

- Never tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Volkswagen may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load..
- Always check local regulations regarding trailer towing. ◀

Driving economically and respecting the environment

General notes

Fuel consumption depends on your personal driving style.

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tires depend largely on three things:

- Personal driving style
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface)
- Technical conditions

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. This section suggests some ways to reduce the impact on the environment while reducing operating costs at the same time. ◀

Think ahead when driving

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the vehicle roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic light is red. ◀

Regular servicing

By having your vehicle serviced regularly by an authorized Volkswagen dealer you can establish the basis for a good fuel economy even *before* you start driving. A well maintained and serviced engine gives you the benefit of **better fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and a greater resale value.

An engine that is not properly maintained can use up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Check the **oil level** every time you get gas ⇒page 39. Oil consumption depends largely on the engine load and engine speed. ◀

Short distances

The engine and catalytic converter must reach their **optimal operating temperature** before you see a significant reduction in exhaust emissions.

A cold engine will use more fuel until it reaches it's operating temperature at which point the fuel consumption will improve. Also important is the outside temperature. The colder the outside temperature, the greater the fuel consumption. ◀

Warranty coverages

Your Volkswagen is covered by the following warranties:

- Limited New Vehicle Warranty
- Limited Powertrain Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Emissions Control System Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)
- California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your Warranty Booklet ◀

Cleaning and protection

General notes

Regular washing and care help maintain the value of your vehicle.

Regular care

Regular and expert care helps a vehicle to keep its value. This may also be one of the requirements of your New Vehicle Warranty in the event of corrosion repairs or if repainting should be necessary.

The best way to protect the vehicle against environmental contaminants is to wash and wax it *frequently*. The longer things like insects, bird droppings, tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials stay on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paint. High temperatures (including strong sunlight) increase corrosive effects.

After roads have been salted it is important to wash the **underbody** of the vehicle thoroughly.

Vehicle care products

Vehicle care products are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer. Keep the product instructions until you have used up the product.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicle care products can be dangerous. Improper use can result in serious personal injury and/or poisoning.

- **Always store vehicle care products in a safe place in original-containers that are securely closed.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**
- **Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package before using vehicle care products.**
- **When using products which give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well ventilated area.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions!**

⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- **Always turn off the engine, apply the parking brake firmly and remove the key from the ignition before washing your vehicle, or performing any maintenance or repairs.**

Note

Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the vehicle surface is dry. Using a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning could damage the paint or glass on your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water before removing it.

For the sake of environment

- When buying vehicle care products, try to select those that are not harmful to the environment.
- Never dispose vehicle care products with ordinary household waste. Always follow the manufacturer's instructions and heed all WARNINGS. ◀

Care of vehicle exterior

Automatic car washes

If you have accessories on your vehicle, check with the car wash operator before washing your vehicle. We recommend though, that you fold the outside mirrors to avoid damage.

Vehicle paint is durable enough that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint mainly depends on the type of car wash, the brushes used, the filtering of the wash water, and the type of detergents and wax solutions used, etc. If the paint is scratched or appears dull after going through the car wash, immediately bring this to the attention of the car wash operator.

After the vehicle has been washed, the brake discs and pads will be wet (they could even be icy in the winter) and stopping distances will be longer. Be sure to "dry" the brakes with several careful brake applications before driving off ⇒page 8.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 8, "Braking power and braking distance".** ◀

Washing by hand

– First soften the dirt with water and rinse off.

– Using a soft sponge, a wash glove or a wash brush, wipe the vehicle in a downward motion using gentle pressure.

– Rinse out the sponge or wash glove regularly.

– Use special cleaners only on hard to remove dirt or grime.

– Use a second sponge or wash glove to wipe down the wheel rims and under the door sills.

– Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water.

– Dry carefully the painted surfaces with a chamois.

– When it is **cold outside**, make sure you wipe all rubber seals and their contact surfaces dry so that they do not freeze. Use a silicone spray to keep rubber seals pliable.

– **After washing** your vehicle, avoid sudden stops or maneuvers. The brakes have to be "dried out" first by gently applying the brakes a few times ⇒⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 8, "Braking power and braking distance".** ▶

⚠ WARNING

Sharp edges under the vehicle can cut exposed skin.

- **Always protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings etc.**

Note

- Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the vehicle surface is dry. Using a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning could damage the paint or glass on your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water before removing it.
- When rinsing the vehicle, do not let water get into the lock cylinders or point the hose at gaps around the doors, hood or rear lid. The water could freeze and make it difficult to open the vehicle.
- To help prevent damage to the paint, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

For the sake of environment

To protect the environment, wash the vehicle only in special wash bays that can handle oily dirt that is washed off the car. ◀

Washing the vehicle with a power washer

Be very careful when using a power washer!

– Always follow the instructions for the power washer, particularly those about the **pressure** and the **spraying distance**.

– Increase the spraying distance for soft materials and painted bumpers ⇒Note.

– Do not use a power washer to remove ice or snow from windows ⇒page 19.

– Never use concentrated jet nozzles or so-called "dirt blasters" especially on tires ⇒⚠.

– After the vehicle has been washed, the brake discs and pads will be wet (they could even be icy in the winter) and stopping distances will be longer. Be sure to "dry" the brakes with several careful brake applications before driving off ⇒page 8.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 8, "Braking power and braking distance".**

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious, invisible and permanent tire damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

- **Never wash tires with a jet that sprays the water out in a direct stream even at a distance even for a very short amount of time.**

Note

- Water temperature should not be more than 140° F (60° C).
- If you use a power washer, be sure to keep it a safe distance from the Park Assist sensors in the front and rear bumpers. If you hold it too close to the sensors, you could damage them.
- To prevent possible damage to your vehicle, hold the power washer far away from soft materials, such as rubber hoses, plastic parts, etc. This also applies to painted bumpers. The closer you hold the power washer to these materials, the greater is the force against them. ◀

Waxing the vehicle

Waxing your vehicle regularly protects the paint.

Apply wax to your vehicle if water does not form small drops and run off when the paint is *clean*.

Good quality *hard wax* is available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

A good coat of wax helps to protect the paint from environmental pollution and more aggressive dirt ⇒page 16, "General notes". It also helps to protect against minor scratches.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly at the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.

Tips

To prevent damage: Do not wax or polish headlights and rear lights. ◀

Polishing the paint

Polishing helps to restore paint gloss.

Polishing is necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and you cannot get the gloss back with wax. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer has polish that is right for your vehicle.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint ⇒page 19, "Waxing the vehicle".

Note

To prevent damage to the paint:

- Do not wax or polish matte finishes and plastic parts.
- Do not wax or polish your vehicle if it is dusty or dirty or in a sandy or dusty environment. ◀

Caring for plastic parts

Solvents will damage plastic parts.

you cannot clean plastic parts by normal washing, clean them with special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning products.

Note

Cleaning products that contain solvents will damage plastic parts. ◀

Cleaning windows and outside mirrors

Cleaning windows

– Dampen the windows with commercially available, alcohol-based glass cleaner.

– Dry the windows with a clean chamois or a lint-free cloth.

Removing snow

– Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and mirrors.

Removing ice

– Use a de-icer spray.

Use a clean cloth to dry the windows. The chamois leather, which was used to wipe paint surfaces, contains oily residue from protective agents and would smear the glass ⇒⚠.

If possible use a deicing spray to remove ice. If you have to use an ice scraper, push it only in one direction – away from you ⇒ⓘ. ▶

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to remove rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits.

Wax deposits have to be removed with a special cleaner. Wax deposits on the windshield could cause the wiper blades to rub. A window cleaner specifically for removing wax will stop the blades from rubbing if added to the windshield wash water. Grease removing cleaners will not remove wax deposits.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.**

Note

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating elements for the rear defogger are on the inside of the rear window. To prevent damage, do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear window.
- Never move the ice scraper back and forth to prevent dirt from being ground against the glass when you pull the scraper back towards you. ◀

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Wiper blades should be cleaned regularly.

Clean wiper blades are important so that you can see.

– Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windshield wiper blades.

– Use window cleaner to clean the windshield wiper blades. Use a sponge or a cloth to remove stubborn dirt.

Note

Before cleaning the windshield wiper blades see ⇒page 46. ◀

Care of rubber gaskets

If rubber gaskets are well maintained, they will not freeze as easily.

– Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber gaskets.

– Spray rubber gaskets with silicone or use another vehicle care product to keep them soft and prevent freezing.

The rubber seals on the doors, windows etc. will remain pliable and last longer if they are treated with a suitable care product (for example silicone spray).

Caring for rubber seals will also prevent premature aging and leaks. The doors will be easier to open. If rubber seals are well maintained, they will not freeze as easily in winter. ◀

Locks

Lock cylinders can freeze up in winter.

To de-ice the lock cylinders use a special lock cylinder de-icer spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties. ◀

Cleaning chrome parts

– Clean chrome parts with a damp cloth.

– Polish chrome parts with a soft, dry cloth.

You can also use special **chrome cleaner**. Chrome cleaners will help remove surface grime and stains from chrome surfaces.

Note

To prevent scratching chrome surfaces:

- Do not use an abrasive care product on chrome.
- Do not clean or polish chrome parts that are dirty or dusty or clean or polish them in a sandy or dusty environment. ◀

Cleaning alloy wheels

Every two weeks

– Wash salt and brake dust off alloy wheels.

– Use an acid free detergent to clean the wheels.

Every three months

– Apply a hard wax compound to the wheels.

Light alloy wheels require regular care to keep them looking nice. It is important to remove road salt and brake dust by regularly washing the wheels, otherwise the finish will dull and they will be hard to clean.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels.

Do not use vehicle polish or other abrasive products. If the protective coating is damaged, for example by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious, invisible and permanent tire damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

- **Never wash tires with a jet that sprays the water out in a direct stream even from a distance or for a very short time.**

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 8, "Braking power and braking distance". ◀**

Chassis

The underbody of the vehicle is coated to help protect it from corrosion and damage.

The undercoating could be damaged during normal use. We recommend that the undercoating on the vehicle and the protective coatings on the suspension be inspected, and repaired if necessary, before and after the winter season.

Repair work and additional undercoating should be carried out only by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The exhaust system gets very hot when the vehicle is driven and can cause fire resulting in serious personal injury.

- **Never apply additional undercoating or rust proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields.** ◀

Cleaning the engine compartment

Be especially careful when cleaning the engine compartment!

Anti-corrosion treatment

The engine compartment is treated at the factory to help prevent corrosion ⇒page 34.

Good corrosion protection is particularly important in the winter where road salt is used. To prevent salt damage, the entire engine compartment should be thoroughly cleaned before and after the salting period.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer has the right cleaners and preservatives and the necessary equipment to apply them correctly. We recommend having this work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Corrosion protection is usually removed when the engine compartment is cleaned with grease solvents. Whenever the engine is cleaned, make sure that corrosion protection is applied to all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34 before working in the engine compartment.**

For the sake of environment

Fuel, grease and oil deposits can run off when the engine is washed. The polluted waste water must pass through an oil separator before disposal. Have the engine cleaned only by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or other qualified workshop that has the necessary equipment to protect the environment. ◀

Care of the vehicle interior

Cleaning plastic parts and the instrument panel

– Use a clean, damp cloth to clean plastic parts and the instrument panel.

– If this does not work, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

⚠ WARNING

Using solvents on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never clean the instrument panel and the surfaces above airbag modules with cleaning products containing solvents.**
- **Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash causing injury.**

Note

Cleaning products that contain solvents will damage plastic materials. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with wooden interior trim

Cleaning wooden trim

– Clean the wooden trim with a clean moist cloth.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a *gentle* soap solution.

Note

Cleaning products that contain solvents will damage plastic materials. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with fabric trim and cloth seat covers

Cleaning cloth seat covers and fabric trim

Cloth seat covers and fabric trim on the doors, headliner etc. can be cleaned with special cleaners or with dry foam and a soft brush. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with leather seat covers

Cleaning leather

Normal cleaning

– Moisten a cotton or woolen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

Removing stubborn dirt

– Stubborn dirt can be removed using cloth moistened with a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap: two tablespoons diluted in one quart (liter) of water).

– Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams ▶

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

Leather care

– The leather should be treated regularly (about twice a year) with a special leather-care product.

– Apply these products very sparingly.

– Then wipe off any excess with a soft, dry cloth.

Because of the high quality leather used in your vehicle, its natural properties have certain sensitivity to grease and dirt, etc. A degree of care is required in everyday use and when maintaining leather.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the vehicle is left standing in the sun for long periods, protect the leather against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. However, slight color variations in high-quality natural leather are normal.

Note

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by experts that have special knowledge and experience with leather cleaning. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Alcantara seat covers

Cleaning Alcantara®

Removing dust and dirt

– Moisten a cloth and wipe down the seat covers.

Removing stains

– Moisten a cloth with lukewarm water.

– Dab at the stain. Start at the outside and work inward.

Do not use leather cleaning products on Alcantara seat covers.

You may use a suitable shampoo on dust and dirt.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the car is left standing in the sun for long periods, the leather should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. However, slight color variations will arise in normal use.

Note

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on Alcantara®.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company. ◀

Cleaning safety belts

A dirty safety belt can prevent a safety belt from working properly.

Keep safety belts clean and check all safety belts for damage regularly.

Cleaning safety belts

– Carefully pull the dirty safety belt out of the retractor and leave it spooled out.

– Clean the dirty safety belts with a *gentle* soap solution.

– Let the safety belt fabric dry.

– **Do not roll up the safety belt until it is completely dry.**

The automatic belt will not be able to roll back properly if there is dirt on the belt.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged safety belts reduce the overall effectiveness of the safety belts and increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Damaged safety belts must be replaced, they cannot be repaired.**
- **Never use chemical cleaning agents, solvents or any substance that may damage or weaken the safety belt webbing or any other parts that make up the seat belt. Never let the belts come into contact with corrosive fluids.**
- **Immediately replace damaged safety belts with the correct replacement belts provided by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt does not have visible damage.**
- **Check the condition of all safety belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, hardware, retractor or buckle of any of the safety belts is damaged, the belt must immediately be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Never attempt to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.**
- **Be sure to read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts."**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Note

After cleaning the safety belts, always allow them to dry completely before letting them roll up into the retractor to prevent the retractor from being damaged. ◀

Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications

Accessories and parts

Always consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer before purchasing accessories and parts for your vehicle.

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety.

Please consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer for advice before installing accessories, replacement parts or other equipment.

Authorized Volkswagen dealers have the latest information from the manufacturer and can recommend accessories and parts that are suitable for your vehicle and personal requirements. They can also help answer questions you might have regarding official regulations.

We recommend you only use approved **Volkswagen accessories** and **genuine Volkswagen parts**®. These parts and accessories have been evaluated by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. The Volkswagen dealerships have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed properly.

Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for any after-market non-Volkswagen parts used, even if these parts have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official certificate or seal of approval.

⚠ WARNING

Improper vehicle equipment or modifications can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **In the interest of safety, we urge you to use only authorized Volkswagen accessories and genuine Volkswagen parts® that have been designed to be used on your vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly.

- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself.**
- **Objects on or near the surfaces where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.**
- **Be sure to read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."** ◀

Repairs and technical modifications

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to the manufacturer's specifications

Unauthorized modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions ⇒⚠. Electronic components are linked together in networks and other systems may be negatively affected by improper modifications or improperly installed accessories. This can seriously impair safety and lead to excessive wear of components.

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

We recommend that all necessary work be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer using genuine Volkswagen parts®.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly performed modifications or other work that is not properly performed on your vehicle can cause malfunctions leading to accidents and serious personal injury.

- **Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle. Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly.

- **Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.**
- **Be sure to read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."** ◀

Cellular phones and CB radios

You will need an outside antenna for cellular phones and CB radios

Volkswagen has approved your vehicle for use with cellular phones and CB radios providing the following conditions:

- correct installation of outside antenna,
- transmitting power is no more than a maximum of 10 watts.

An outside antenna is needed to give the equipment its optimal range and to prevent interference with electronics in the vehicle.

If you want to use a cellular phone or a CB radio with a transmitting power greater than 10 watts, first check with a authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Cellular phones and CB radios should be installed only by a qualified workshop or by your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Carefully follow the operating instructions for your cellular telephone or CB radio.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always concentrate on your driving, traffic and the road. Driver distraction causes accidents!**
- **Always set volume levels so that you can clearly hear horns, sirens and other warning sounds outside the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Using a cellular telephone or CB radio inside the vehicle without having a separate outside antenna can be dangerous to your health and that of your passengers because the electromagnetic radiation energy that these devices emit may be above established limits.**
- **Never attach anything, including accessories (for example cup holders or telephone brackets) to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone.**
- **Objects on or near the surfaces where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury if the airbag deploys ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."**

Note

Improper installation of cellular telephones, CB radios or other electronic components can cause other vehicle systems to malfunction. The most common causes of faults are:

- no external antenna,
- incorrectly installed external antenna,
- transmitting power in excess of 10 watts. ◀

Checking and Filling

Filling the tank

The fuel filler flap opens from inside the vehicle. The fuel tank holds 14.5 gallons (55 liters).



Fig. 1 Detail of the driver door: the fuel filler flap release button

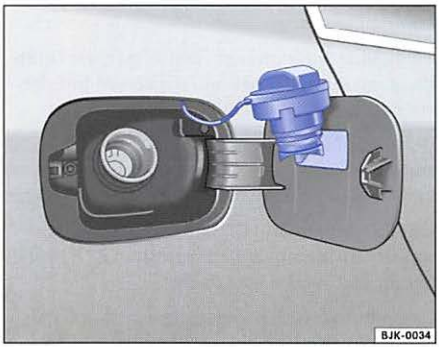


Fig. 2 Open fuel filler flap with filler cap attached to the flap

Opening the fuel filler flap

– Pull the switch ⛽ in the driver door back ⇒fig. 1. The fuel filler flap is released.

– Open the fuel filler flap and turn the tank cap counter-clockwise.

– Hook the filler cap to the top of the filler flap ⇒fig. 2.

Closing the fuel filler flap

– Screw on the fuel filler neck clockwise until you hear it click into position.

– Always make sure the filler cap is screwed on all the way.

– Close the fuel filler flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

The fuel filler flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right rear quarter panel.

When the text **Please refuel!** appears in the instrument cluster, there are still about 1.8 gallons (7 liters) of gas in the tank. A warning chime will also sound.

An indicator light (if available) in the instrument cluster will come on if the fuel filler cap is not properly closed ⇒booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment."

The automatic filler nozzle should switch itself off when the tank is "full". Do not try to put in more gas after the pump stops. Topping off the tank in this way will fill the expansion chamber in the gas tank and causes the fuel to overflow when the temperature rises.

The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap. For more information on fuel ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical data."

Special indications for diesel engines

Your diesel vehicle has a filler neck for a standard sized fuel nozzle. Only fuel the vehicle using a standard sized fuel nozzle. Some standard filler nozzles have a spring that prevents the nozzle from reaching completely inside the vehicle's fuel filler neck. However, it is possible to insert the nozzle up to where the spring begins, and ▶

the vehicle can be refueled. On filler nozzles with a spring, keep your hand on the nozzle when refueling to make sure the nozzle does not come out of the vehicle's fuel filler neck. ⇒

High capacity fuel nozzles are common to stations servicing large commercial vehicles. They will not fit into your diesel's standard sized fuel nozzle and should not be used.

⚠ WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

- **Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.**
- **Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.**
- **Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.**
- **Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.**
- **For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.**
- **If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:**
  - **Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
  - **Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.**
- **If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.**
- **Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.**
- **Always observe local and state / provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.**
- **Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).**

Note

- Remove fuel spills from the paint immediately to prevent paint damage.
- Never run the tank completely dry. An irregular gas supply could cause misfiring. As a result, unburned gas could get into the catalytic converter and cause damage.
- When traveling across country, you may come across diesel fuel nozzles that are even wider than the fuel filler opening on your vehicle. These fuel nozzles were designed for large trucks and generally also have much higher flow rates than nozzles designed for passenger vehicles. They will not fit into your diesel's standard sized fuel nozzle and must not be used.

For the sake of environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause fuel to over flow and pollute the environment particularly when it gets hot outside.

Tips

Remember to refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel, especially in remote areas. ◀

Fuel supply

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Gasoline

The correct gasoline grades are listed on a sticker inside the fuel filler flap.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by pre-ignition. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI (CLC) or RON (ROZ).

Gasolines most commonly used in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

- Premium Grade: 91 – 96 AKI
- Regular Grade: 87 – 90 AKI

Unleaded gasoline

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

Gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether; commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol):

- Anti-knock index must be 87 or higher,
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol,
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol):

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher,
- Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE:

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher,
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasolines are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
- Do not use leaded gasoline! Using leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to reduce exhaust emissions.
- Methanol fuels that do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the criteria specified above.
- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications above, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified above are not the responsibility of Volkswagen and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.

For the sake of environment

Just one tank full of leaded gas will seriously reduce the efficiency of the catalytic converter.

Tips

If you notice a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Gasoline additives

Gasoline additives improve the quality of the gasoline.

Gasoline quality influences engine behavior, efficiency, performance and service life. For this reason you should always use good quality gasoline containing additives. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good quality gasoline with additives is not available, or if engine problems arise, additives may be added to the gasoline.

You can also buy gasoline additives separately and add them to the gasoline yourself if you have problems starting or if the engine does not run smoothly.

Not all gasoline additives are effective. We recommend you use only genuine Volkswagen gas additives for gasoline engines. These additives are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer. You will also receive information on how to use them.

Do not mix other gas additives with the gas. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a Diesel engine

Diesel fuel

Always use Diesel fuel No. 2 only.

Service stations offering Diesel fuel are generally located on truck routes or major highways. Directories of Diesel fuel stations are usually available at Diesel fuel stations.

Some states in the USA require permits to purchase Diesel fuel. Check with your State Motor Vehicle Department.

Diesel fuel may not be available outside the USA and Canada. Be sure to check before traveling to other countries.

Winter operation

At temperatures below 20° F (-7° C), Diesel fuel No. 2 loses its fluidity due to wax separation, which may clog the fuel filter or tank filter and keep the engine from running.

To help in preventing such conditions, the fuel filter in your vehicle is automatically preheated.

Preheating the fuel filter makes operation of your vehicle possible with Diesel fuel No. 2 down to -10° F (-24° C).

If you expect temperatures below 5° F (-15° C) ask your fuel dealer whether their Diesel fuel No. 2 is sufficiently winterized for the prevailing temperatures.

If not winterized or insufficiently winterized Diesel fuel has already thickened to the extent that the engine will not start, it can be rectified by leaving the vehicle standing for some time in a heated shelter.

It is normal that the engine noise level (dieseling) is louder during the warm-up period in winter. It is also normal that whitish-blue smoke may be emitted from the tailpipe after starting and during warm-up. The amount of smoke depends on the outside temperature. ▶

Do not let your Diesel engine idle unnecessarily after a cold start. Driving off slowly will shorten the warm-up period.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use "starting assist fluids". They may be potentially explosive or cause a "runaway" engine condition. This could result in serious engine damage and personal injury.**
- **Do not use fuel line antifreeze offered for gasoline engines.**

Note

- Your Diesel engine has been specifically designed to operate on Diesel fuel only. Therefore, never use home heating oil or regular gasoline. The properties of these fuels may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system and to the engine. This could lead to additional expense and will also affect your warranty.
- If Diesel fuel should get on any rubber hose, it must be wiped off immediately. Then wash the contaminated hose portion with soap and warm water. Do not allow Diesel fuel to remain on connecting hoses. They may develop leaks and cause serious damage. ◀

Working in the engine compartment

Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment

Special care must be taken when working on the engine or on components in the engine compartment.

Before starting any work on the engine or in the engine compartment:

1. Move the selector lever to **P** (Park).
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Wait for the engine to cool down.
5. Keep children and others away from the vehicle.
6. Open the engine hood ⇒page 36.

All service fluids, spark plugs, batteries etc. are constantly being developed and improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers are kept up-to-date by the manufacturer. For this reason we recommend that you have these replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. Please read the notes below. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area ⇒⚠.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.**

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- **Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.

- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools! If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified dealership. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- Never open the engine hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the engine hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the engine hood:
  - Remove the key from the ignition.
  - Apply the parking brake firmly and put the selector in P (Park).
  - Keep children and others away from the vehicle.
- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can result in serious personal injury. Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly - even when the engine has been switched off for a longer period of time and the key has been removed from the ignition.
- Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. A hot engine will heat the coolant and put it under pressure. Removing a cap that is under pressure can result in serious personal injury and/or burns.
- Always protect face, hands and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never spill fluids on hot engine parts or hot exhaust system. Spilled fluids can cause a fire!
- Never short-circuit the electrical system, especially where the jumper cables are attached - The batteries could explode!
- Never leave any objects in the engine compartment, for example cleaning rags and tools. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions and even fires.
- Never work under the vehicle unless you have safely secured the vehicle from moving. If you must work under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, the wheels are blocked from moving and the key is not in the ignition.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if you have to work underneath it. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not strong enough for this purpose and can collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you have to perform a check or repair when the engine is running, there are more risks from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, generator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always use extreme care:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Always make sure that jewelry, loose clothing and long hair do not get caught in rotating engine parts. Before starting any work remove jewelry, tie back and cover hair, and do not wear clothing that can hang down and get caught in moving engine parts.
  - Always use extreme caution if the accelerator pedal has to be depressed to perform a check. The vehicle could move suddenly, even if the parking brake is applied.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Always disconnect the batteries. Make sure the vehicle is unlocked when disconnecting the batteries, or the alarm will go off.
  - Never smoke.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

– Never work near heaters, water heaters of other open flames.

– Always have an approved fire extinguisher nearby.

- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started:

– never touch ignition cables,

– never touch other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system,

– never touch the gas discharged (Xenon) headlights wiring.

Note

When changing or topping off service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Using incorrect fluids will result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!

For the sake of environment

Service fluid leaks are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. ◀

Opening the engine hood

The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.

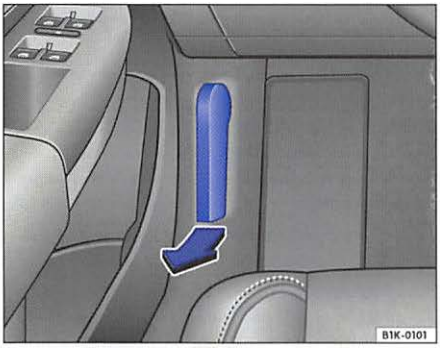


Fig. 3 Detail of the footwell: the release lever for the engine hood is located in the footwell on the driver side

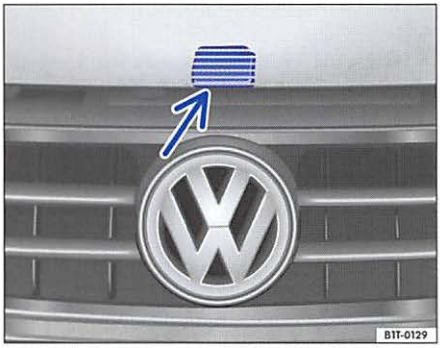


Fig. 4 Detail of the radiator grill: release lever for opening the engine hood

Before you open the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wiper arms are folded-up against the windshield so that the hood will not be damaged when the hood is opened.

– Pull the release lever underneath the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 3. The engine hood is released from its latch by a spring mechanism ⇒⚠.

– Lift the engine hood up at the release lever ⇒fig. 4(arrow) and open the hood until it is held up by the gas-filled strut.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ◀

Closing the engine hood

– Pull the engine hood down until the pressure from the strut is reduced.

– Then let the engine hood fall and latch in place - *do not press down!* ⇒⚠.

If the engine hood does not close properly, open it again and close it properly. When the engine hood is properly closed, you can see that it fits flush with the other body parts.

⚠ WARNING

If the engine hood is not closed properly, it could fly up and block your view while driving causing a crash and serious personal injuries.

- **After closing the engine hood, always check that the safety latch has properly engaged. The engine hood must be flush with the surrounding body parts.**
- **If you ever notice that the engine hood latch is not properly secured when the vehicle is moving, stop at once and close it.**
- **Never let anyone get in the way of the engine hood when closing it.** ◀

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

Your engine was factory filled with an all-season high quality engine oil with a viscosity grade of SAE 5W-40. You can use this oil over all temperature ranges for normal driving.

If you need to add oil between oil changes, use high quality synthetic-based oil with correct specifications. If engine oil viscosity grade SAE 5W-40 is not available, you can also use SAE 5W-30.

To assure that the oil you use is of the highest quality required by your vehicle, the following terms must appear on the oil container singly or in combination with other designations:

Gasoline engine

- VW 500 00, VW 505 01 or VW 502 00
- ACEA A3

Diesel engine

- VW 505 01 ⇒page 41, "Important information for vehicles with Diesel engine when adding or changing engine oil"

General recommendations

If SAE 5W-40 or 5W-30 viscosity grade oil is not available in your area, be sure to always use a viscosity grade suitable for the climate and seasonal conditions that exist where the vehicle is operated. Always make sure that the oil meets the quality standards listed above. ◀

Engine oil consumption

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines use a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically engines which have a break-in period, use more oil during the break-in period than they do after the break-in period, when oil consumption has stabilized.

Volkswagen recommends that you use the type of oil that meets the specifications described ⇒page 37, "Engine oil specifications".

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality of the oil as well as its viscosity, the RPM's (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the outside temperature, the road conditions as well as the amount of oil dilution by condensation water or fuel residue and by the oxidation level of the oil. As engines wear, oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn engine parts may become necessary.

Because of all of these variables, it is not possible to specify a standard or "normal" rate of oil consumption. **For that reason, we urge you to check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably every time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**

The oil pressure light is not an indicator of low engine oil level. If the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving (above 1500 engine RPM) a buzzer will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal, but the light continues to flash, do not continue to operate the vehicle. Engine damage may occur.

If you believe your engine uses excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer so that the cause of your concern can be properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Volkswagen dealer has instructions how to measure oil consumption accurately.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

ⓘ Note

- The engine in your vehicle depends on oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts. Therefore the engine oil must be checked regularly and kept at the required level.
- Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked every time you refuel.
- Lack of engine oil may cause severe engine damage.
- The "oil pressure warning light" is not an oil level indicator. ◀

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil dipstick indicates the level of the oil.

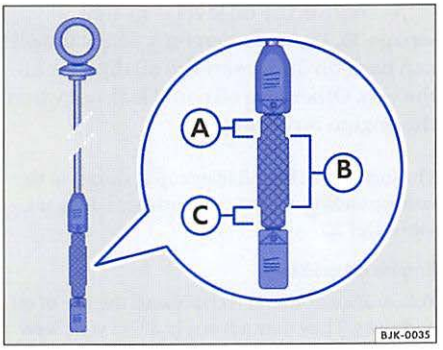


Fig. 5 Engine oil dipstick with engine oil level marks

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34, "Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment".

– Stop the engine and wait a few minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.

– Raise the engine hood ⇒page 36.

– Pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean with a rag.

– Reinsert dipstick; push it all the way in.

– Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

– After checking the oil level, please make sure that the dipstick is pushed back in all the way.

The position of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Ⓐ You **must not** add oil.

Ⓑ You **can** add oil. The oil level may go into the A range, but not above the A range.

Ⓒ You **must** add oil. After adding oil, make sure that the oil level is somewhere within the B range.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

If the engine oil level is above level ⇒fig. 5 Ⓐ, do not start the engine - this could damage the catalytic converter and the engine! Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. ◀

Adding engine oil

Top off gradually with small amounts of oil.

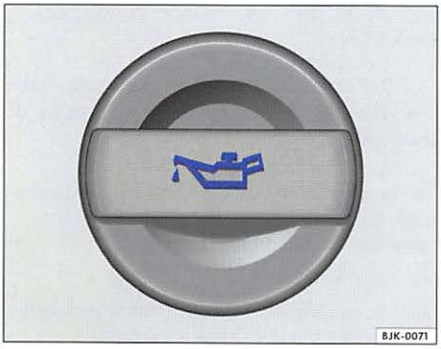


Fig. 6 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34, "Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment".

– Turn off the engine.

– Unscrew the oil cap only ⇒fig. 6from the cylinder head cover. You will see the oil can symbol on top of the oil cap. If you are not sure, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance.

– Top off oil in small amounts (not more than a half quart/liter at a time), using the correct oil.

– To avoid filling too much oil, wait a while and check the oil level before adding more.

– As soon as the oil level is in area ⇒page 39, fig. 5 Ⓑ, carefully screw the oil cap back on and insert the oil dipstick all the way. Otherwise oil could leak out when the engine is running.

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒booklet 3.3.

Engine oil additives

Volkswagen does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Spilled oil is a fire hazard.

- **The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running.**

Note

If the oil level is above level ⇒page 39, fig. 5 Ⓐ, do not start the engine - this could damage the catalytic converter and the engine! See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

For the sake of environment

Do not let the oil level get above area Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere through the exhaust system. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a Diesel engine

Important information for vehicles with Diesel engine when adding or changing engine oil

On vehicles with a Diesel engine always use engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 when adding or changing engine oil.

Vehicles with Diesel engines require and **must always** use special engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard **505 01**.

Never use any other kind of engine oil in your vehicle, not even to top off the oil level.

At the time of printing, we are aware that Castrol® produces engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01. This oil may not yet be available throughout North America. Other oil manufacturers may offer engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 at this time or some future date.

Please be sure to consult with your authorized Volkswagen dealer for information and availability of the proper engine oil for your vehicle's Diesel engine and for the latest technical information.

Because this special engine oil may not be available when need it, we strongly recommend that you always carry with you extra quart (liter) of oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01, in case you have to top off oil while on the road.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to use engine oil for your Diesel engine that expressly conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 can cause engine failure on the highway that can cause a crash and serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never use any amount of engine oil in the Diesel engine that does not conform to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01.**
- **Always carry with you an extra quart (liter) of engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 in case you must top off the oil while on the road.**

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored items can become airborne missiles, flying through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always store extra quart (liter) of engine oil for your Diesel engine in its original oil container that is securely closed in the luggage compartment. Make sure the container is securely stored and mounted.**

Note

- If you use engine oil that does not expressly conform to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01, very serious and very expensive damage to your vehicle's engine will occur. Engine damage caused by using the wrong engine oil is not covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty.
- Not all commercially available oils conform to this very rigid Volkswagen oil quality standard even though they may be synthetic-based and have the same viscosity. ◀

Changing the engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals listed in the Maintenance Booklet.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Maintenance booklet ⇒booklet 1.1.

This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when you have your oil changed, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or mostly under stop-and-go traffic conditions, or when you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing point for long periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

If you must change the engine oil in your vehicle:

- **Always wear eye protection.**
- **To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil let the engine cool down to the touch.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.**
- **Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.**
- **Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.**

For the sake of environment

- Before changing the oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Never dump it on garden soil, in wooded areas, into streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.
- Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. ◀

Coolant

Coolant specifications

Coolant is a mixture of water and at least 40% coolant additive.

The cooling system must be filled with a mixture of water and at least 40 % of Volkswagen coolant additive G 12 or an additive with the specification TT-VW 774 F (purple in color).

This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -13° F (-25° C) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents from scalding and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

The concentration of coolant must *always* be at least 40% - even if frost protection is not required.

If greater frost protection is needed in very cold climates, the proportion of the antifreeze additive G 12 can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additives must not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection. It would also reduce the cooling effect. A mixture with 60% coolant additive will give frost protection to about -40° F (-40° C).

⚠ WARNING

Coolant is poisonous!

- **Always keep the coolant in its original container stored in a safe place.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep drained coolant out of the reach of children.**
- **The coolant additive G 12 must be added in sufficient quantities to give enough anti-freeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.**
- **At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work and vehicle occupants could be without protection at sub-freezing temperatures!**

ⓘ Note

- Other additives may give considerably inferior corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion in the cooling system can lead to a loss of coolant, causing serious damage to the engine.
- The coolant additive G 12 (purple) can be mixed with the additive G 12 (pink) or with the additive G 11. G 12 can be recognized in the expansion tank because it is purple. The coolant G 12 has been mixed with a different coolant to the ones named above if the fluid in the expansion tank is brown! The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case! Serious functional problems or engine damage could be caused otherwise! ◀

Checking the coolant level and topping off

The correct coolant level is important for correct functioning of the engine cooling system.



Fig. 7 In the engine compartment: coolant expansion tank

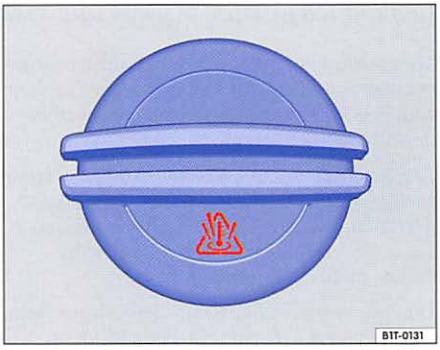


Fig. 8 In the engine compartment: cap of coolant expansion tank

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34, "Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment". If the coolant level drops too low, the warning text **STOP Check coolant Owner's manual!** is displayed in the instrument cluster and the engine coolant level/temperature warning light lights up.

Opening the coolant expansion tank

– Switch off the engine and allow it to cool.

– To prevent scalding, cover the cap ⇒fig. 8on the expansion tank with a thick cloth and carefully unscrew the cap ⇒⚠.

Checking coolant level

– Look into the open coolant expansion tank and read off the coolant level.

– If the level is below the "MIN" mark, top off with coolant.

Topping off coolant

– Only use **new** coolant.

– Do not fill above the upper mark.

Closing the coolant expansion tank

– Reinstall the cap *tightly*.

The position of the coolant expansion tank is shown in the corresponding engine compartment overview ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical data."

Make sure that the coolant meets the required specifications ⇒page 43. Do not use a different type of additive if coolant additive G 12 is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by topping off with the specified additive ⇒page 43.

Always top off with *new* coolant.

Do not fill above the upper mark. Otherwise the excessive coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot.

The coolant additive G 12 (purple) may be mixed with G 12 (pink) and also with G 11.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

- When mixed with other additives the color of G 12 will change to brown. If this happens, immediately change the coolant. Otherwise it will result in engine damage!
- If a lot of coolant has been lost, wait for the engine to *cool down* before topping off with cold coolant to help prevent damage to the engine. Large coolant losses are a sign of leaks in the cooling system. Have the cooling system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop to reduce the risk of engine damage.
- Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ◀

Washer fluid and windshield wiper blades

Topping off washer fluid

The water for cleaning the windshield should always be mixed with windshield washer fluid.

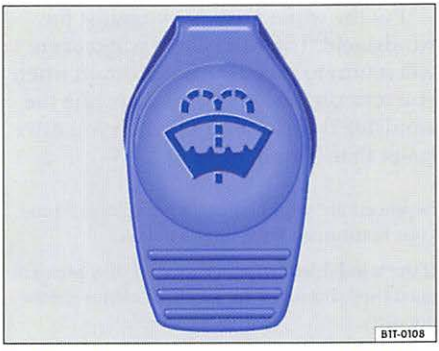


Fig. 9 In the engine compartment: cap of windshield washer fluid container

The windshield washer fluid container located in the engine compartment supplies washer fluid to both the **windshield washer and headlight washing system**. If the washer fluid level drops too low, the information text **Top up wash fluid!** is displayed in the instrument cluster and the windshield washer warning light lights up.

Stop! Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34, "Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment".

The location of the container is shown in the corresponding engine compartment overview ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Since regular water is usually not adequate for cleaning the windshield, add a cleaning solution to the water. Please follow the dilution instructions on the package.

WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

Do not use engine coolant, anti-freeze or any other solutions that can damage the vehicle paint. ◀

Changing windshield wiper blades

Damaged wiper blades must be replaced immediately.

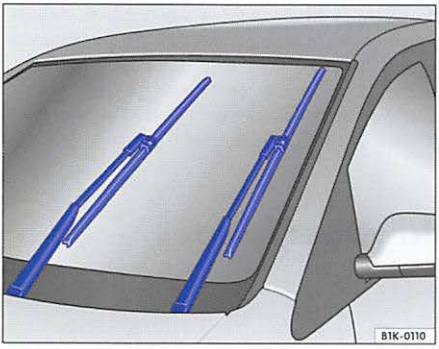


Fig. 10 Windshiel wiper blades in "Service position"

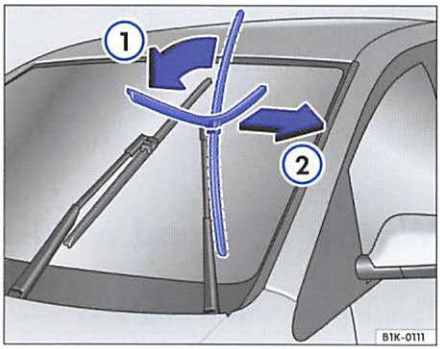


Fig. 11 Changing windshield wiper blades

Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. Change them when worn.

Changing windshield wiper blades

– Switch the ignition on briefly and switch it back off.

– Within 10 seconds of switching off the ignition, push the windshield wiper lever down to the brief wiping position. The windshield wipers will then move up and stop in the "Service position" so that you can easily access the wiper blades ⇒fig. 10.

– Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield glass. Do not pull the arm by the blade.

– Turn the wiper blade in a counterclockwise direction to the left ⇒fig. 11 ① and then pull it off ②.

– Install a new wiper blade **of the same length and type** onto the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade clockwise.

– Put the wiper arms back against the windshield. The windshield wiper arms will return to their original position when you turn on the ignition and operate the windshield wiper lever or when you drive faster than 3 mph (6km/h).

Replacement wiper blades are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

If the windshield wipers rub, or if they are damaged they should be replaced, or cleaned if they are dirty.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windshield wiper arms may be incorrect and should be checked and adjusted if necessary by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades will reduce visibility and increase the risk of accident leading to serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

- **Always clean the windshield wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **Always make sure to change the wiper blades once or twice a year.**

Note

- Damaged or dirty windshield wipers can scratch the windshield.
- Never use gasoline, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. This could damage the windshield wiper blades.
- Never move the windshield wiper or windshield wiper arm manually - this could cause damage!
- To prevent damage to the wiping system, always loosen blades frozen to the glass before operating the wipers. ◀

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid reservoir has a black cap.

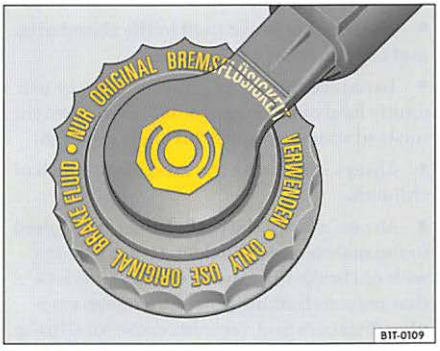


Fig. 12 In the engine compartment: cap of the brake fluid reservoir

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34, "Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment".

– Read off the fluid level at the transparent brake fluid reservoir. It should always be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks.

The location of the brake fluid reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment overview ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical Data." The brake fluid reservoir has a black cap ⇒fig. 12.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used and as the brake pads are automatically adjusted as they wear down.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the "MIN" mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. If the brake fluid level drops too low, the warning text **STOP. Brake fluid stop vehicle!** is displayed in the instrument cluster and the brake system warning light lights up. If this happens, immediately take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealership, or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ◀

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid must be changed every two years

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Stop! Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34, "Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment".

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time, it will absorb water from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. Too much water in the brake fluid considerably reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid. Very heavy use of the brakes with old brake fluid may cause vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.

For this reason the brake fluid must be replaced every two years.

Only use brake fluid with the specification US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4. The brake fluid must be new.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Brake failure can result from old or incorrect brake fluid.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 116.**
- **Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer to make sure that you are using the correct brake fluid.**
- **The correct brake fluid is also listed on the label on the brake fluid reservoir.**

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous.

- **Always store brake fluid in the closed original containers in a safe place.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**
- **Always keep brake fluid out of the reach of children.**
- **Always change the brake fluids as required in the maintenance booklet. Heavy braking with old brake fluid may cause a vapor lock that reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.**

Note

Brake fluid can damage the paint. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paint immediately.

For the sake of environment

Brake fluid must be drained and disposed of in the proper manner observing environmental regulations. ◀

Vehicle battery

Location of battery

The battery is maintenance-free is checked during the inspection service.

Warning notes on handling batteries

	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, open lights and smoking are prohibited!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is under charge.
	Always keep children away from acid and batteries!

⚠ WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can result in serious acid burns, fires or electrical shock. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system.

- Before working on the electrical system, always switch off the ignition and all consumers and disconnect the negative (–) cable from the batteries. When a light bulb is changed, always switch off the light.
- Turn off the anti-theft alarm by unlocking the vehicle before you disconnect the batteries to prevent the alarm from going on.
- Always keep children away from acid and batteries.
- Always wear eye protection. Never let battery acid or lead particles contact your eyes, skin and clothing.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive and can cause damage to unprotected skin and blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries, as this could spill acid through the vents and burn you.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- When disconnecting the batteries from the vehicle electrical system, always disconnect the negative cable (–) first and then the positive cable (+).
- Always avoid fires, sparks, open lights and smoking. Always avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short-circuit the battery poles. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- Always switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the batteries. Reconnect the plus cable (+) first and then the negative cable (–). Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause fire.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Never charge a frozen battery, or one that has thawed. This could result in explosions and chemical burns! Always replace a battery that has frozen. A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures around 32° F (0° C).
- Always make sure that the vent hose is connected to the batteries.
- Never use damaged batteries – they can explode! Immediately replace damaged batteries.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and seek medical attention immediately. If you ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling. ▶

Note

- Do not disconnect the batteries if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Do not expose the batteries to direct sunlight for long periods of time, ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in the cold for a long time, protect the batteries from frost. They will be damaged if they "freeze". ◀

Checking the electrolyte level

The electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries.

– Open the engine hood and open the battery cover at the front.

– Check the color display in the round window at the top of the battery.

– If there are air bubbles in the window, tap the window gently until they disperse.

The position of the battery is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒booklet 3.3.

The round window ("magic eye") on the top of the battery changes color, depending on the charge level and electrolyte level of the battery.

If the color in the window is **colorless or bright yellow**, the electrolyte level of the battery is too low. Have the battery checked by a qualified dealership..

The colors green and black are used by the workshop to diagnose the battery. ◀

Charging and replacing vehicle batteries

All work with the vehicle battery requires special knowledge.

Have the batteries checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop between regular maintenance intervals if you often drive short distances or if the vehicle is not driven for long periods.

If the battery has discharged and you have problems starting the vehicle, the battery might be damaged. If this happens, we recommend you have the vehicle battery checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer where it will be properly recharged or replaced.

Charging vehicle batteries

The charging of the vehicle batteries should be left to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop, because your vehicle is equipped with special batteries that must be charged in a controlled environment.

Replacing a battery

The batteries have been specially developed for their locations and they have special safety features.

Genuine Volkswagen batteries meet the maintenance, performance and safety specifications for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always use only maintenance-free or cycle-free, leak-proof batteries with the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.**
- **Before starting any work on the batteries, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒⚠ in "Location of battery" on page 49.** ▶

For the sake of environment

Batteries contain toxic substances including sulfuric acid and lead. They must be disposed appropriately and not with ordinary garbage.

Tips

When the battery is reconnected, the warning light for the Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP), Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) may light up and stay on. It will go out if you drive briefly in a straight line at a speed of 15 - 20 km/h. ◀

Tires and wheels

General notes

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle.

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are, however, one of the most important parts of a vehicle, particularly considering the comparatively small patch of rubber on each tire that assures that all-important contact between you, your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining the correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, avoiding damage from road hazards and regularly inspecting tires for damage including cuts, slashes irregular wear and overall condition are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure including tread separation and blowouts.

Avoiding damage

If you have to drive over a curb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as close as possible at a right angle to the curb.

Always keep chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires.

Inspect the tires regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.

Storing tires

Mark tires when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you to be able to mount them correctly when you reinstall them.

When removed, the wheels or tires should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

Store tires in a vertical position if they are not mounted on rims, in a horizontal position if they are mounted on rims.

New tires

New tires have to be broken in ⇒⚠.

The tread depth of new tires may vary, according to the type and make of tire and the tread pattern.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires has been damaged. The tires must be checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, that point in the direction the tire is designed to rotate. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary so that these tires can develop their optimum characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning resistance. For more information ⇒page 73, "Unidirectional tires".

⚠ WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking ability.

- **New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).

- Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of control, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.
- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.
- If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage. ◀

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight,
(b) Accessory weight,
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight. ▶

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇒page 52, "Cold tire inflation pressure".

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h). These ratings are listed in the table below ⇒page 62. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds.

Tire pressure monitoring system[1)]

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Tread wear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇒page 59, "Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)" for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: tread wear, traction and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number." It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two num- ▶

1) Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

bers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 1801 mean that the tire was produced in the 18th week of 2001. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity as listed on the label attached to the open edge of the driver's door.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with table below ⇒page 54) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front.
5	3	2 in front, 1 in back seat.

Cold tire inflation pressure

Tire pressure affects the overall handling, performance and safety of a vehicle.

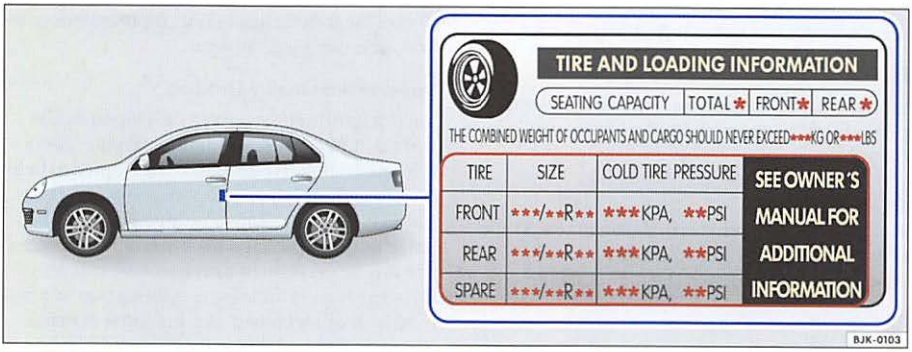


Fig. 13 Approximate location of the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door and example of a tire pressure label

Tire pressure generally refers to the amount of air in a tire that it needs it to do its job and safely carry the combined load of the entire vehicle and its contents. Tire pressure is measured in kilopascals (kPa), the international measuring unit and in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure is based in part on the vehicle's design and load limit – the greatest amount of weight that the vehicle can carry safely and the tire size. The proper tire pressure is frequently referred to as the "recommended cold tire inflation pressure." Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up because of internal friction when it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold." It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. There-

fore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

Maintaining proper tire pressure is one of the most important things you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure. Underinflated tires are a major cause of sudden tire failure. Keeping tires at the right pressure is also important for safe and responsive vehicle handling, traction, braking and load carrying. **Tire pressures are particularly important when the vehicle is being driven at higher speeds, and then especially when heavily loaded even within the permissible load-carrying capacities approved for your vehicle.**

The recommended tire pressures for your Volkswagen depend on the kind or tires on your vehicle and the number of passengers and/or amount of luggage you will be transporting.

The tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door on your Volkswagen lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

See the illustration ⇒page 54, fig. 13 for the location of the label on the open edge of the driver's door (color of the actual label and exact location on the vehicle will vary slightly).

The table below lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the Volkswagen models covered by your Owner's Literature at the vehicle's maximum capacity weight and the tire sizes installed on the respective models as original equipment, or as a factory option.

Carline	Engine	Tire	Tire pressure front		Tire pressure rear	
			PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa
Jetta	**1.9l / 74 kW TDI**	195/65 R 15 91 H	34	234	34	234
	1.9l / 74 kW TDI	205/55 R 16 91 H	34	234	34	234
	1.9l / 74 kW TDI	225/45 R 17 91 H	34	234	34	234
Jetta	**2.0l / 147 kWTFSI**	205/55 R 16 91 H	35	240	35	240
	2.0l / 147 kW TFSI	225/45 R 17 91 H	35	240	35	240
	2.0l / 147 kW TFSI	255/40 R 18 92 Y	35	240	35	240
Jetta	**2.5l / 110 kW**	195/65 R 15 91 H	34	234	34	234
	2.5l / 110 kW	205/55 R 16 91 H	34	234	34	234
	2.5l / 110 kW	225/45 R 17 91 H	34	234	34	234
xl = reinforced						

Because technical changes may be made to vehicle equipment during the model year, always compare the tire size designation on the tire pressure label on your vehicle with the tires on your vehicle. Make sure that the tire size information on the vehicle label is the same as the size of the tires on the vehicle is especially important if the vehicle belongs to someone else or you bought the vehicle with different rims/tires ▶

or you bought the vehicle as a previously owned vehicle.

Remember, your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR"). The Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label on the driver's door latch pillar. The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the tire pressure label ⇒page 54, fig. 13.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead to a serious or fatal accident.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.** ◀

Checking tire pressure

The correct tire pressure for the tires originally installed on your vehicle is listed on the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door.

The recommended tire pressures on the tire pressure label are in the table ⇒page 54, "Cold tire inflation pressure". This means that the pressure must be checked and adjusted when the tire has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds during the previous three hours. Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up as a result of internal friction as it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold."

It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "Cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations ⇒page 54. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the new, original equipment tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For the location of the label ⇒page 54, fig. 13.

Most tires lose air naturally over time. They can also lose some air if you drive over a pothole or hit a curb while parking. It is usually not possible to see whether the radial tires used today are underinflated just by looking at them.

Therefore, be sure to check tire pressures at least once a month and always before going on a long trip. Make sure to take the number of people and the amount of luggage into account when adjusting tire pressure for a trip – even one that you would not consider to be "long." See ⇒page 58. ▶

"Tires and vehicle load limits" for more important information.

Vehicles that have full hub caps have valve extenders instead of dust caps. To check tire pressure or add air, you do not need to remove the extender. Be sure to reinstall valve dust caps after checking or adjusting tire pressure.

Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking and adjusting inflation pressures. Check all of the tires and be sure not to forget the spare tire. If the pressure in any tire is too high when the tire is "cold," let air our of the tire slowly with the edge of the tire gauge and keep checking the pressure until you reach the pressure that is correct for the load (passengers and luggage) and kind of driving you plan to do.

If the pressure in any tire is too low, note the difference between the pressure in the cold tire and the pressure you need and add the air that you need to reach the correct pressure for the vehicle load (passengers and luggage) for the tires on your vehicle as listed on the on your vehicle and in this manual and the kind of driving you plan to do.

Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle

It is important to check the tire pressure when the tires are cold.

Vehicle without TPMS[2)]

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door.
- Place the air pressure gauge on the dust caps - there is no need to remove them.
- The tire pressures should only be checked when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.

Vehicle with TPMS[2)]

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door.
- Turn the valve stem cap counter-clockwise to remove it from the tire valve.
- Place the air pressure gauge on the valve.
- The tire pressures should only be checked when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.
- Reinstall the valve stem cap on the valve.

When should I check the tire pressure?

The correct tire pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and always before starting a journey. Do not forget to check the tire pressure on the spare wheel

When should I adjust the tire pressures?

Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying. After changing a wheel **or** replacing wheels you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition on vehicles with TPMS, you should specify new tire pressures ⇒booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)."

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can result in a sudden tire failure loss of control, collision, serious personal injury and even death.

- **Always fill tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.**
- **Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure tire failure and loss of control.**
- **Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.**
- **If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**

Note

Driving without valve stem caps can cause damage to the tire valves and sensors on vehi- ▶

2) Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

cles with tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)[2]. To prevent this, always make sure that factory installed valve stem caps on all wheels are securely mounted on the valve.

For the sake of environment

Your car will have a higher fuel consumption and unnecessary exhaust emissions with underinflated tires. ◀

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 Kg) for each passenger at a designation seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label on the driver's door latch pillar Your Jetta has 5 seating positions, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear for total seating capacity of 5. Each seating position has a safety belt ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first."

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the label ⇒page 54, fig. 13.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ◀**

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" from the sticker ⇒page 54, fig. 13.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds ⇒page 54, fig. 13.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

– Check the tire sidewall (⇒page 61, fig. 16) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire. ◀

Tire service life

The service life of tires depends on a lot of different things including proper installation and balancing, correct tire pressure and driving style.



Fig. 14 Tire tread: tread wear indicators (TWI)

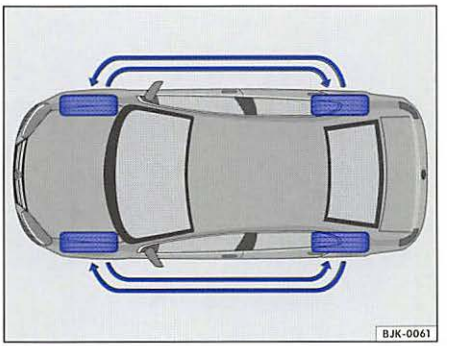


Fig. 15 Rotating tires for more even wear

Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high "wear indicators" ⇒fig. 14 running across the tread. Depending on the make, there ▶

will be six to eight of them evenly placed around the tire. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. Worn tires must be replaced. Different figures may apply in other countries ⇒⚠.

Tire pressure

Incorrect tire pressure causes premature wear and can cause sudden tire blow-out. For this reason, tire pressure must be checked at least once a month ⇒page 56.

Driving style

Driving fast around curves, heavy acceleration and hard braking increase tire wear.

Rotating tires for more even wear

If the front tires are worn considerably more than the rear ones, rotate them as shown ⇒page 59, fig. 15. All the tires will then last for about the same amount of time.

All four tires should have the same amount of wear. All four wheels must have the same rolling circumference.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various situations during everyday driving can cause them to become unbalanced, resulting in vibrations you can usually feel through the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels must be rebalanced to avoid excessive wear on steering, suspension and tires. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tire is installed.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment can cause excessive tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tires show excessive wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Sudden tire failure can lead to loss of control, a crash and serious personal injury!

- **Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators.**
- **Worn tires are a safety hazard, they do not grip well on wet roads and increase your risk of "hydroplaning" and loss of control.**
- **Always keep chemicals that can cause tire damage, such as grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid away from tires.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.** ◀

New tires and replacing tires and wheels

New tires and wheels have to be broken in.

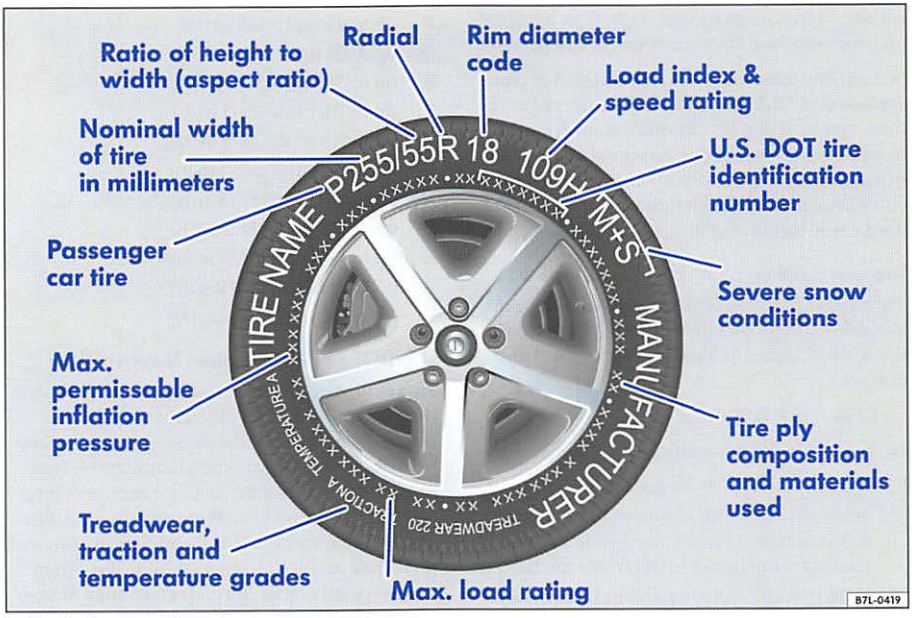


Fig. 16 Tire specification codes on the sidewall of a tire

The tires and rims are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and can make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated ⇒⚠.

We recommend that all work on tires and wheels be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. They are familiar with recommended procedures and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tires.

Authorized Volkswagen dealers have the necessary information about technical requirements for installing or changing tires and rims.

Replacing tires and wheels

Tires should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (for example both front tires or both rear tires together).

On vehicle with TPMS[3] read and heed the information ⇒page 63, "Replacing tires or rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS[3]".

Always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications as the tires approved for your vehicle by VOLKSWAGEN. Replacement tires must always have the same load rating specification as the original equipment or approved optional tires listed in the table ⇒page 54.

VOLKSWAGEN-approved tires are specially matched to your vehicle and its load limits, and can contribute to the important roadholding, driving characteristics, and safety of the vehicle. The table (⇒page 54) lists specifications of the ▶

[3] Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

tires approved for the Volkswagen models covered by your Owner's Literature.

The tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door (⇒page 54, fig. 13) lists the specifications of the original equipment tires installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires ⇒page 61, fig. 16. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics, the quality grade of the tire and also provides a tire identification number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Tire specifications

Knowledge of tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial tires have the tire specifications marked on the sidewall, for example:

P255 / 55 R 18 109 H xl

This contains the following information:

P Indicates the tire is for passenger cars

255 Nominal tire width in mm of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire

55 Height/width ratio in percent (aspect ratio)

R Tire construction: Rradial

18 Rim diameter code (in inches)

109 Load rating code

H Speed rating letter code

xl Indicates that the tire is "Reinforced" (heavy-duty tires)

M+S (or "M/S") Indicates that the tire has some mud and snow capability

The tires could also have the information of direction of rotation ⇒page 51, "Unidirectional tires".

Tire manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tire sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel):

"DOT ... 4503 ... " means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 45th week of 2003.

Speed Rating Letter Code

The speed rating letter code on the wheels indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒⚠ in "Winter tires" on page 65.

P up to 93 mph (150 km/h)

Q up to 99 mph (158 km/h)

R up to 106 mph (170 km/h)

S up to 110 mph (180 km/h)

T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)

U up to 124 mph (200 km/h)

H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)

V up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[4)]

Z up to 150 mph (240 km/h)[4)]

W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[4)]

Y up to 186 mph (298 km/h)[4)]

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number." It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 1801 mean that the tire was produced in the 18th week of 2001. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire ply composition and materials used

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

Maximum Load Rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Tread wear, traction and temperature grades ⇒page 64, "Uniform tire quality grading". ▶

[4)] For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters "ZR."

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

Replacing tires or rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS[3)]

The air valve on all four tires (not on the spare tire) is equipped with a sensor, which constantly monitors the air pressure inside the tire, and then transmits this information to the TPMS[3)]. If you are going to replace the wheel rims on your vehicle, make sure the new rims also have these sensors. The sensors must be compatible with the TPMS system on your vehicle.

If you install rims, which do not have the sensors, or have sensors which are not compatible, then the TPMS will not work properly. In this case, the TPMS would not be able to monitor the tire pressure or warn you if it is necessary.

- Whenever you change sensors, you have to install new valves.
- Always drive with the valve stem caps securely mounted. We recommend using factory installed valve stem caps. Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer if you lost valve stem caps.

The installation of replacement tires with steel cord body plies in the tire sidewall may cause malfunction of the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), and is not recommended (cord material information is molded on the tire sidewall).

Always check your TPMS indicator after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle. If the TPMS indicator is on, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS system, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **Using incorrect or unmatched tires and / or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.**
- **Always use tires, rims and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.**
- **If the spare tire is not the same as the tires that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tires - only use the spare tire for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as safely possible.**
- **Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.**
- **Overloading tires cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.**
- **Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.**
- **For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model.**
- **If you install wheel trim discs on the vehicle wheels, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not blocked. Reduced airflow to the brakes can them to overheat, increasing stopping distances and causing a collision.**

Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can hold true for wheels of the same vehicle type.

- If the spare tire is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare tire for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with the tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

Note

On vehicles with TPMS[3]:

- When installing new tires, be careful not to damage the valves or sensors.
- Never drive without the valve stem cap. The valves and sensors could get damaged.
- If the sensors must be replaced, then the valve must likewise be replaced at the same time.

For the sake of environment

Dispose of old tires in accordance with the local requirements. ◀

Uniform tire quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇒page 61, fig. 16.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction AA, Temperature A.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇒⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇒⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ◀

Winter tires

Winter tires can improve vehicle handling on snow and ice. At temperatures below 45° F (7° C) we recommend changing to winter tires.

In some heavy snow areas, local governments may require true winter or "snow" tires, those with very deeply cut tread. These tires should only be used in pairs and be installed on all four wheels. Make sure you purchase snow tires that are the same size and construction type as the other tires on your vehicle.

Summer tires provide less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tires (snow tires) must be fitted on all four wheels.

If you want to use the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)[5], compatible sensors must be installed on all four winter tires ⇒page 63.

Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for permitted **winter tire sizes**. Use only radial winter tires.

Winter tires lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm (0.157 inch).

Only drive with winter tires under winter conditions. Summer tires handle better when there is no snow or ice on the roads and the temperature is above 45° F (7° C).

If you have a flat tire, see notes on spare wheel ⇒page 61, "New tires and replacing tires and wheels".

Please always remember that winter tires may have a lower speed rating than the tires originally installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. Please see ⇒page 53, "Speed rating (letter code)" for a listing of the speed rating letter codes and the maximum speed at which the tires can be driven.

The speed rating letter code (⇒page 53) is on the side wall of the tire ⇒page 61, fig. 16.

⚠ WARNING

Winter tires have maximum speed limits that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed. Always know the maximum speed before driving off. Never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific winter tires. This will cause damage to the tires leading to an accident and serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

⚠ WARNING

Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle are developed can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control and serious personal injury.

- **Winter tires have maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.**
- **Never drive faster than the speed for which the winter or other tires installed on your vehicle are rated.**

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Never let the good acceleration of the winter tires and all-wheel drive tempt you into taking extra risks. Always remember:

- **When braking, an all-wheel drive vehicle handles in the same way as a front drive vehicle.**
- **Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy and slippery roads, even winter tires cannot help under black ice conditions.**

For the sake of environment

Use summer tires when weather conditions permit. They are quieter, do not wear as quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ◀

[5] Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

Snow chains – individualize for each vehicle

You can use snow chains only to the front wheels, and only to certain tire sizes. Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer on which tire sizes snow chains can be used.

The snow chains must have low-profile links and must not be thicker than 15 mm, including the lock.

Remove wheel center covers and trim discs before putting snow chains on your vehicle ⇒. For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains for your vehicle or installing them incorrectly can increase the risk of loss of control leading to serious personal injury.

- **Snow chains are available in different sizes. Always make sure to follow the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**

Note

- Remove snow chains before driving on roads not covered with snow to avoid damaging tires and wearing the snow chains down unnecessarily.
- Snow chains, which come into direct contact with the wheel rim, can scratch or damage it. Therefore, make sure that the snow chains are suitably covered. ◀

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque.

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the factory installed rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different vehicle - even if it is the same model ⇒page 27.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.

- **Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened.**
- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.**
- **Only use wheel bolts that belong to the wheel.**
- **Never use different wheels bolts on your vehicle.**
- **Always maintain the correct tightening torque for the wheel bolts to reduce the risk of a wheel loss. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they can loosen and come out when the vehicle is moving. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged and the wheel can become loose.**

Note

The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 88 ft/lbs (120 Nm). After changing a wheel, the torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench – preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

What do I do now?

Vehicle tools and spare wheel

Vehicle tool kit

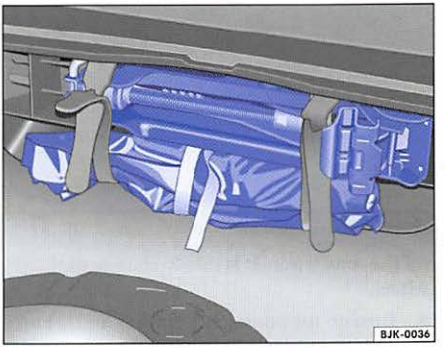


Fig. 17 Vehicle tool kit bag and jack location at the rear of the luggage compartment

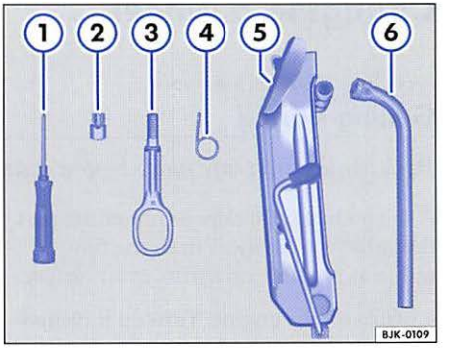


Fig. 18 Vehicle tool kit. Some of the items shown come only with certain models.

To have acces to the vehicle tool and the vehicle jack it is necessary to remove the spare wheel.

The tool kit contains the following items ⇒fig. 18:

① The screwdriver is in the lug wrench and its blade is reversible.
② Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
③ Towing eye, removable
④ Wire hook for pulling off the center cover and the wheel bolt caps
⑤ Jack for changing a wheel. Before you put the jack back into its location make sure it is completely retracted.
⑥ Lug wrench for wheel bolts

Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

We recommend you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle tool kit at all times. The anti-theft wheel bolt **code number** is stamped on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if it is lost. Note the code number of the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place - but not in your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened wheel bolts can become loose, causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.

- **Never tighten the wheel bolts with a hex socket in the screwdriver handle because you will not be able to tighten the bolts to the required torque.**
- **Always use the lug wrench and tighten the wheel bolts securely.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause serious personal injury.

- **Never use the factory supplied jack for this model to lift other vehicles or any other heavy objects.**
- **Your vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels on your vehicle only, not for working underneath it. If you have to work underneath the vehicle, always use safety stands to support the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always properly secure the vehicle jack and tool kit in the luggage compartment. Loose items in the vehicle can fly around the inside of the vehicle during hard braking or in a crash causing serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Before you raise your vehicle with the jack, always read and heed all WARNINGS . ◀

Changing a wheel

Applies to vehicles: with spare wheel

Getting started

Park vehicle in a safe place before changing a wheel.

– If you have a flat tire or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible on a firm, even surface.

– Turn off the engine. Turn on the emergency flasher.

– Apply the parking brake firmly **and** engage a gear or put the selector in **P**.

– All passengers must leave the vehicle. They should wait in a safe place (for example behind a guard rail or other safety barrier).

– Block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed with a suitable object. .

– If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.

– Remove the spare wheel and the vehicle tools from the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel, especially on the side of the road, can be dangerous. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to change the wheel.
- Turn on the emergency flasher and set up another warning device about 27 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Always make sure that the ground is level and firm, if necessary use a sturdy board under the jack.
- When one wheel is lifted off the ground putting the selector lever in P will not prevent sudden vehicle movement.
- Always apply the parking brake firmly and engage the selector lever in P to help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and slipping off the jack.
- Always block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed with both folding chocks or similar objects.
- If you are towing a trailer, always unhitch it from your vehicle before starting to change the wheel.
- Always use a jack that has been approved by the manufacturer for your vehicle.
- Never use other jacks, even if they have been approved for use on other Volkswagen models. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with hubcaps

Removing the hubcaps

Remove the hubcaps to access the wheel bolts.



Fig. 19 Changing a wheel: removing the hubcap

– Take the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit.

– Insert the hook into a hole in the cover ⇒fig. 19.

– Pull off the cover. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with wheel bolt caps

Removing the caps from the wheel bolts

The caps must be removed from the wheel bolts before the wheel bolts are unscrewed.



Fig. 20 Detail of wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

– Take the wire hook from the vehicle tools.

– Insert the hook through the opening in the cap ⇒fig. 20.

– Use the wire hook to remove the caps.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the wheel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with spare wheel

Removing the spare wheel

The spare wheel is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment



Fig. 21 Under the floor panel: spare wheel secured with a plastic nut.

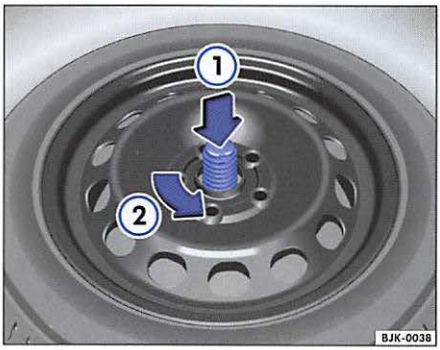


Fig. 22 Under the floor panel: plastic screw for securing the plastic nut.

Removing the spare wheel

– Lift the floor panel and hang it on the rubber seal around the luggage compartment opening.

– Unscrew the black plastic nut securing the spare wheel by turning it in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 21and remove it.

– Press down on the plastic screw ⇒fig. 22 ① in the center of the spare wheel and turn it counterclockwise in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 22 ② and remove.

– Take out the spare wheel. **Stowing the flat tire.**

– Lift the floor panel and hang it on the rubber seal around the luggage compartment opening.

– Place the flat tire in the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment.

– Take the plastic screw, place it in the center of the flat tire press it down and turn it clockwise.

– Secure the flat tire with the black plastic nut.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it has worn down to the wear indicators.**
- **If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.**
- **The spare tire must always be secured with the wheel bolts provided by the factory.**
- **After installing the spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible ⇒page 56.**
- **On some vehicles, the spare tire may be smaller than the original tire. The smaller spare tire is identified with a sticker and the words "50 mph" or "80 km/h". These words identify the maximum permissible speed for driving with this tire.**

ⓘ Note

Make sure that the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, are stored safely in the luggage compartment. ◀

Loosening the wheel bolts

Use the special adapter to loosen the anti-theft wheel bolts. The adapter is in the vehicle tool kit.

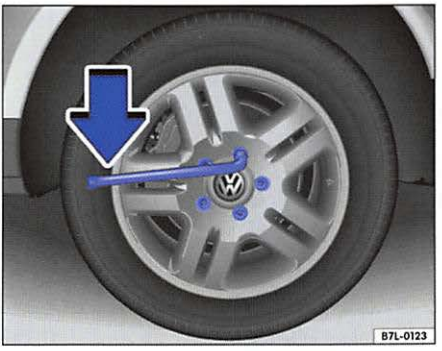


Fig. 23 Changing the wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

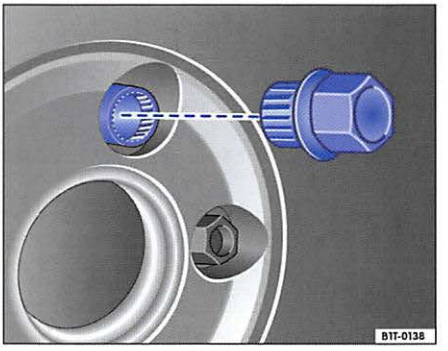


Fig. 24 Changing a wheel: anti-theft wheel bolt and adapter

Loosening wheel bolts

– Slide the **lug wrench** as far as possible over the wheel bolt.

– Hold the end of the lug wrench ⇒fig. 23 and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn counter-clockwise ⇒⚠.

Loosening anti-theft wheel bolts

– Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒fig. 24.

– Slide the adapter as far as possible onto the anti-theft wheel bolt.

– Slide the lug wrench as far as possible over the adapter.

– Hold the end of the lug wrench and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn counter-clockwise.

Loosening wheel bolts

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by carefully pushing down the end of the wrench with your foot.

⚠ WARNING

- **Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.**
- **Only use the lug wrench that is supplied with the vehicle to loosen the wheel bolts.** ◀

Raising the vehicle

Raise the vehicle only on the appropriate jack points for the vehicle jack.

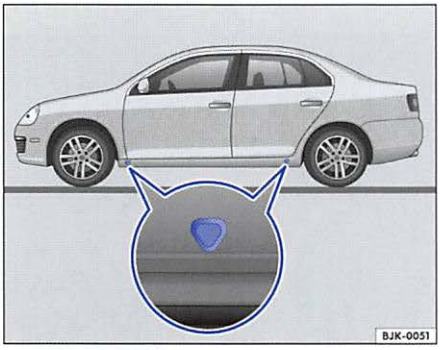


Fig. 25 The jack points for the vehicle jack



Fig. 26 Jack at left rear

Do not jack up the vehicle until all the wheel bolts on the wheel being changed have been loosened ⇒page 71

Jacking up the vehicle

1. Locate the jack point ⇒fig. 25 (arrow) ⇒⚠ closest to the wheel that has to be changed.

2. Raise the jack under the jack point until it fits under the vehicle.

3. Make sure that the stand of the jack is in full contact with the ground.

4. Adjust the jack and continue cranking up the handle until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle ⇒fig. 26 ⇒⚠.

5. Crank up the jack until the wheel is off the ground.

The jack must be positioned only at the jack points for the vehicle jack shown ⇒fig. 25. Always use the jack point closest to the wheel you are working on.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To reduce the risk of injury caused by the vehicle falling off the jack:

- **Always set up the jack on firm, level ground. Soft ground under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or something similar to prevent the jack from slipping.**
- **Always position the jack only at the jack points for the vehicle jack ⇒fig. 25.**
- **Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grasps the vertical rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle ⇒fig. 26.**
- **If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle before raising the vehicle. Always apply the trailer brakes firmly and make sure the trailer cannot move unintentionally.**
- **Always keep children at a safe distance while using the vehicle jack and also make sure there are no persons under the vehicle. Children at play could knock the vehicle off the jack or hide under a vehicle.**
- **Never support your body weight on the vehicle when it is up on the jack.**
- **Never allow anyone to stay in the vehicle when raising the vehicle with the jack or when it is up on the jack.**

▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never let anyone place any part of their body underneath the vehicle when supported by the jack.
- Never support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and collapse suddenly.
- Never start the engine when you have raised the vehicle on the jack. The engine vibrations and vehicle movements could knock the vehicle off the jack. ◀

Changing a wheel



Fig. 27 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolts

Removing the wheel

– Using the hex socket in the screw driver ⇒fig. 27, unscrew the wheel bolts previously loosened about one turn and put it on a clean surface.

– Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.

– Take off the wheel.

– Place the flat tire in the luggage compartment.

Mounting the spare wheel

– Mount the spare wheel.

– Install the wheel bolts and tighten them *lightly* using the hex socket in the screw driver.

– Lower the vehicle on the jack.

– Tighten the wheel bolts firmly using the lug wrench. Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence, for example, tighten the top bolt and then the opposite bolt closest to the ground and continue tightening the bolts until all have been firmly and securely tightened. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or counter-clockwise sequence.

Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires must be correctly mounted all around.

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, which point in the direction of the rotation. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary in order for these tires to develop their optimal characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, please drive carefully since the tire no longer possesses its optimal characteristics in this situation. This is particularly important in wet conditions. In order to fully exploit the benefits of unidirectional tires again, you should immediately replace or change the tire in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury:

- Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information** **⇒page 66.**

Note

- The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 88 ft/lbs (120 Nm). The torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench - preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced before you have the torque checked or have the bolts tightened to the proper torque.
- Have the damaged tire replaced with a tire of the same brand, specifications and tread pattern. ◀

After changing a wheel

– Properly secure the vehicle jack and tool kit in the luggage compartment .

– Properly secure the flat tire in the luggage compartment.

– If you are towing a trailer, hitch the trailer to your vehicle securely again.

– Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible ⇒page 73 .

– Have the damaged tire replaced with a tire of the same brand, specifications and tread pattern.

Note

- The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 88 ft/lbs (120 Nm). The torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench - preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and hard to turn, they must be replaced before you have the torque checked or have the bolts tightened to the proper torque. ◀

Emergency closing or opening

Locking the passenger's door and rear doors manually

If the remote key or the central locking malfunctions, the doors can be locked or unlocked manually.

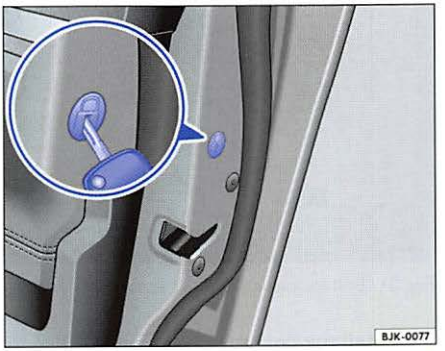


Fig. 28 Emergency lock (covered by weatherstrip) in the edge of the left rear door



Fig. 29 Using the emergency key to lock the vehicle

Locking the passenger's door and the rear doors

– Open the door.

– Pull back the weatherstrip on the edge of the door that is identified by a lock ⇒fig. 28 using the master key.

– Insert the master key into the vertical slot and push it forward ⇒fig. 29 -arrow-

– Reattach the weatherstrip.

– Close the door completely.

– Check whether the door is locked.

– Repeat the procedure at the other doors.

– Have the vehicle inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer workshop.

⚠ WARNING

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to lock all doors in an emergency. Turn on the emergency flasher to warn approaching traffic.
- Never close a door without first making sure that it is safe to do so. You can injure yourself or other people. Always make certain that no one is in the way of the door that is being closed.
- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.

Tips

You can unlock the passenger's door and the rear doors from the inside again if you pull the door opening lever once. Pulling on the opening lever a second time opens the door ◀

Applies to vehicles: with power roof

Emergency closing of power roof

The power sunroof can be closed manually if there is a defect.

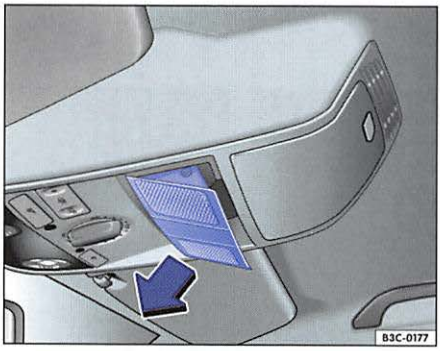


Fig. 30 In the headliner: removing cover

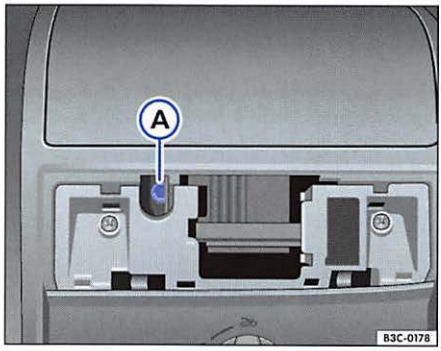


Fig. 31 Bolt for closing the power sunroof

– Remove the cover from the front edge in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 30.

– Insert a standard 4-mm Allen wrench into the socket head screw ⇒fig. 31 Ⓐ

– Turn the wrench to close the power sunroof.

– Install the cover.

⚠ WARNING

Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to close the power roof manually. Turn on the emergency flasher to warn approaching traffic. ◀

Inside emergency opening handle for the rear lid

In an emergency the trunk lid can be opened from inside the luggage compartment.

– Fold the rear seatback forward ⇒booklet 3.1 "Rear seat".

– Pull the release handle to open the rear lid from the inside of the luggage compartment.

– Return the handle to its original position after opening the rear lid.

To help prevent children and others from being trapped in the luggage compartment, your vehicle has an emergency opening lever inside the luggage compartment that glows in the dark

⚠ WARNING

A child or other person trapped in the luggage compartment of a vehicle can be seriously injured and even die

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury, especially when it is very hot or cold.
- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the ve- ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

hicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key or the power lock button. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle.

- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children. ◀

Fuses

Changing a fuse

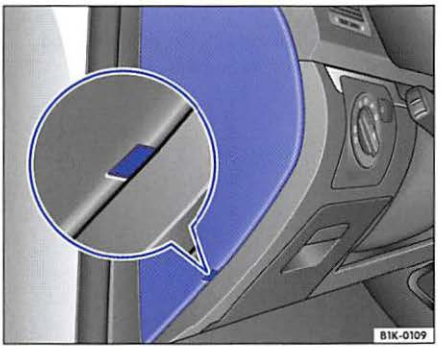


Fig. 32 Dash panel, left: cover of fuse box A

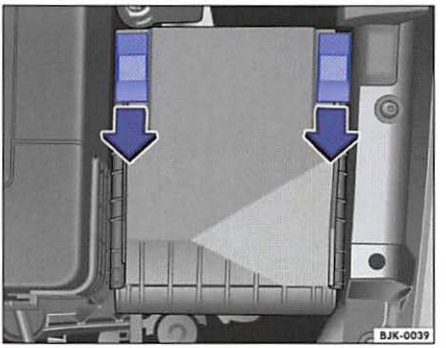


Fig. 33 In the engine compartment: cover of fuse box B

Fuse box A located in the side of the dash panel on the driver's side

– Insert a suitable flat object (e.g. a screwdriver) into the recess ⇒fig. 32and carefully pry the cover off.

Fuse box B in the engine compartment

– Open the engine hood.

– Press the release tabs ⇒fig. 33(arrows) to release the fuse box cover.

– Remove the cover.

– To **remount** the cover, place it over the fuse box and press the side tabs in the opposite direction until they latch securely.

The individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. We recommend you carry several spare fuses at all times. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers.

Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer has the most current technical information for your Volkswagen.

If you are not sure which fuse to use or to change, contact your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

Color coding of fuses

Color	Amp rating
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10

Color	Amp rating
blue	15
yellow	20
clear	25
green	30
orange	40

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong fuse and attempting to repair a fuse or using something instead of a fuse can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- **Never repair a damaged fuse.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. Always make sure the replacement fuse has the *same* amp rating as the fuse being replaced.**
- **Never replace a blown fuse with a metal object to connect the fuse contacts – not even temporarily.**

Note

- To avoid damaging the electrical system, turn off all lights and accessories and remove the ignition key before replacing a fuse.
- If a new fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified dealership as soon as possible. ◀

Fuse tables

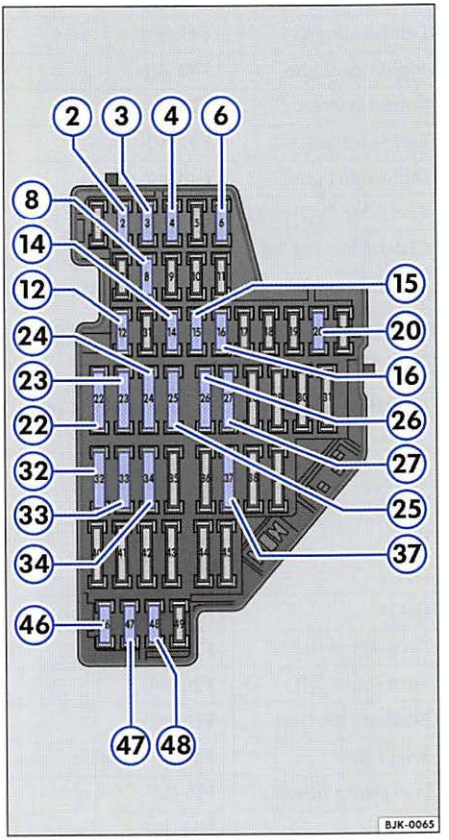


Fig. 34 Fuses in the fuse box A in the dash panel

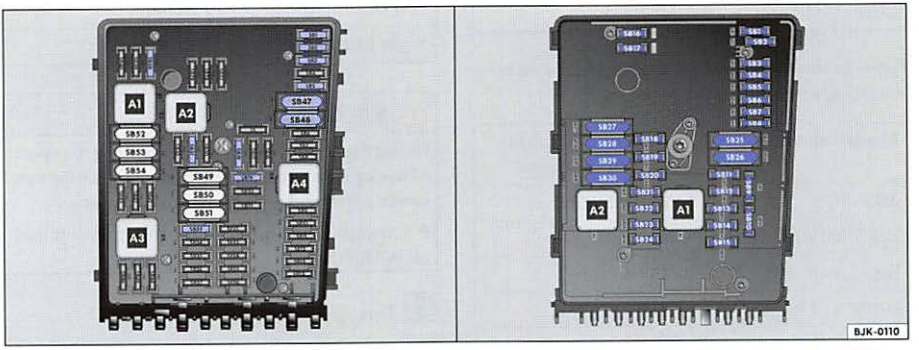


Fig. 35 Fuse box B in the engine compartment: Left vehicles with a 54 fuse box, right vehicles with a 30 fuse box

Fuses in the fuse box A in the dash panel

Electrical consumer	Fuse number (amp rating in brackets)
ABS/ESP/EDL	2 (5)
Transmission (2.5l and 1.9l engine)	14 (5)
Front power windows	23 (30)
Rear power windows	32 (30)
Fan	22 (40)
Rear window de-fogger	25 (25)
Steering, DSG*	6 (5)
Interior lights	15 (7,5)
Fuel pump	27 (15)
Airbag	3 (5)
Power roof	33 (25)
Seat heating	4 (5), 37 (30), 46 (5)
Vacant	8
Vacant	48
Vacant	20
Auxiliary heating *	16 (10), 25 (25) 47 (10)
Power outlet	26 (20)
Central locking for front doors	12 (10)
Heated washer jets	46 (5)
Lumbar support adjustment for front seats	34 (15)
Cigarette lighter	24 (25)

Fuses in the fuse box B in the engine compartment: vehicles with a 54 fuse box

Electrical consumer	Fuse number (amp rating in brackets)
ABS	F1 (30), F2 (30)
Left turn signal	F47 (40)
Right turn signal	F48 (40)
Horn	F5 (15)
DSG*	F13 (15)
Fog lights	F47 (40), F48 (40)
Radio	F19 (15)
Windshield wipers	F31 (30)
Left headlight	F47 (40)
Right headlight	F48 (40)
Sound system	F18 (30)
Left side light	F47 (40)
Right side light	F48 (40)
Fuel filler flap release	F3 (20)
Central locking for rear doors	F3 (20)

Fuses in the fuse box B in the engine compartment: vehicles with a 30 fuse box

Electrical consumer	Fuse number (amp rating in brackets)
ABS	F4 (30), F16 (30)
Windshield wipers	F1 (25)F19 (25)
Radio	F8 (15)
Horn	F17 (15)
DSG*	F5 (15)
Turn signal right	F25 (40)
Turn signal left	F26 (40)
Auxiliary heating*	F11 (20)
Telephone*	F9 (5)
Fuel pump (diesel)	F15 (5)
Fan	F24 (10)
Fog lights	F25 (40)F26 (40)
Left headlight	F26 (40)
Right headlight	F25 (40)

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong fuse and attempting to repair a fuse or using something instead of a fuse can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- **Always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS .**

Tips

The tables show the fuse locations for the most important consumers. The right-hand columns ▶

contain the insert location, the figures in brackets indicate the ampere rating for the fuse. One consumer might require several fuses (also in separate fuse boxes).

- Several consumers could run over one single fuse.
- The fuse box in the dash panel has space for replacement fuses.
- There are other fuses in the vehicle. These should be changed by a qualified dealership. ◀

Changing a light bulb

Changing light bulbs

Light bulbs should be changed by a qualified technician only.

Light bulbs should be changed only by qualified technicians. In many cases changing a light bulb involves removing other parts of the vehicle to get to the burnt-out light bulb, particularly those in the front of the vehicle that can only be reached through the engine compartment.

We recommend that light bulbs only be changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

Before changing a light bulb, you must switch off the light (light switch in O position), and the turn signal lever must be in the neutral position.

Always replace burnt-out light bulbs with identical light bulbs with same specifications. The specifications are printed on the light bulb, either on the glass bulb or on the metal base. Always make sure that the color of the new bulbs is the same as the replaced ones.

It is advisable to always carry a box of replacement light bulbs in your vehicle at all times. The box should contain at least those light bulbs that are important for traffic safety. See your Volkswagen dealer for recommended light bulbs.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Gas discharge lamps (Xenon) get power from a high voltage source that can cause serious personal injury and even death if handled improperly. Always have a qualified technician replace burnt gas discharge lamps.**
- **H7 light bulbs are under high pressure and can explode if handled improperly.**
- **Always have a qualified technician replace burnt-out light bulbs, especially gas discharge lamps (Xenon) and H7 light bulbs.**

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the headlight unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct tool and light bulbs.

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**

ⓘ Note

- Do not touch glass bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints can cloud the outer surface of the bulb when heated, thus affecting the reflection, and thus reducing the power of illumination.
- A bulb can only be replaced by a bulb of the same type. The model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself. ◀

Changing the headlights and front turn signal bulbs

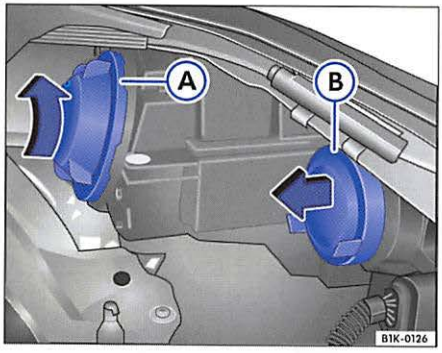


Fig. 36 Cover A for low beam, cover B for high beam and position lamp

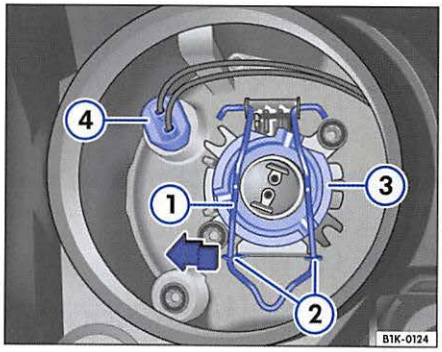


Fig. 37 In the headlight: high beam bulb 3 and position lamp bulb 4

Changing the low beam headlight bulb

– Switch the headlights off.

– Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Open the engine hood.

– Turn the cover ⇒fig. 36arrow Ⓐ to the right and remove.

– Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.

– Pull the defective bulb out of the holder and install a new bulb.

– Reinstall the bulb holder by turning into the right.

– Replace the cover by turning it to the left.

Changing the high beam light bulb

– Switch the headlights off.

– Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Open the engine hood.

– Pull the rubber cover off ⇒fig. 36arrow Ⓑ.

– Remove the connector ③.

– Move the wire retainer ⇒page 82, fig. 37 ① toward the front of the vehicle and then push it in the direction of the arrow out of the retaining lugs ②.

– Fold the wire hook up.

– Remove the bulb holder from the headlight.

– Change the bulb.

– Place the bulb holder back in the headlight. Make sure the retaining lugs ② are at the bottom.

– Fold the wire hook down and engage it in the opposite direction shown by the arrow in the retaining lugs ②. Gently pull on the wire hook to check it has engaged securely.

– Connect the connector ③ to the bulb holder.

Changing a side light bulb

– Remove the bulb holder ⇒page 82, fig. 37 ④ from the headlight.

– Change the bulb.

– Place the bulb holder insert back in the headlight. Make sure the holder is properly inserted.

– Push the cover ⇒page 82, fig. 36 Ⓑ onto the headlight.

If you are uncertain about how to replace a defective bulb, see you authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Replacing the turn signal light bulb

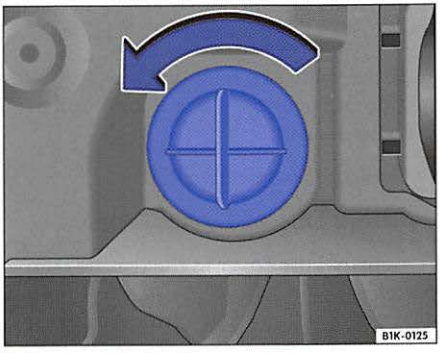


Fig. 38 Bulb holder for the turn signal

The bulb holder for the turn signal is located underneath the headlight/position lamp.

– Switch the light off.

– Switch off the ignition.

– Open the engine hood.

– Turn the bulb holder as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow ⇒fig. 38.

– Remove the bulb holder from the headlight.

– Change the bulb.

– Replace the bulb holder in the headlight and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow.

If you are uncertain about how to replace a defective bulb, see you authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Changing the bulb for the brake light or rear turn signal

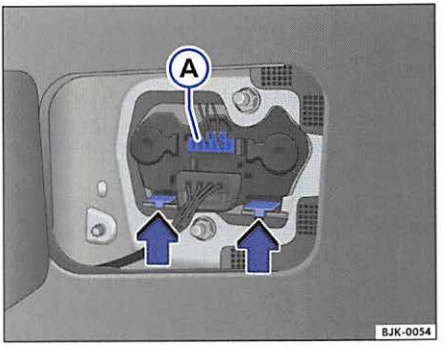


Fig. 39 Brake light and rear turn signal bulb holder unit

Changing the bulb

– Open the rear lid.

– Locate the cover in the luggage compartment trim panel to access the bulb holder and open it.

– Disconnect connector ⇒fig. 39 Ⓐ.

– Press the release tabs ⇒fig. 39(arrows) and pull the bulb holder out.

– Replace the defective bulb.

– Reinstall the bulb holder securely.

– Reconnect the connector Ⓐ.

– Reinstall the cover in the trim panel. ▶

If you are uncertain about how to replace a defective bulb, see you authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Changing the bulb for the back-up light

The bulbs are located in the rear lid.

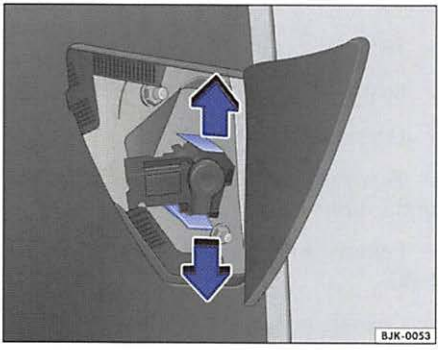


Fig. 40 Back-up bulb holder

– Open the rear lid.

– Locate the cover in the rear lid trim panel to access the bulb holder and open it.

– Expand the two retaining tabs in the direction of the arrows ⇒fig. 40and pull the bulb holder out.

– Replace the defective bulb.

– Reinstall the bulb holder securely.

– Reinstall the cover in the rear lid trim panel.

If you are uncertain about how to replace a defective bulb, see you authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

Jump starting

Jumper cables

The jumper cables must have sufficient wire cross section.

If the engine does not start because the battery is discharged, your vehicle's battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jumper cables

The wire cross section must be at least 0.038 in^2 (25 mm^2) for gasoline engines and at least 0.054 in^2 (35 mm^2) for diesel engines.

Note

- Do not let the vehicles touch each other, otherwise current could flow as soon as the plus (+) terminals are connected. If necessary, use longer jumper cables.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ◀

How to jump start

First connect the plus terminals and then the minus terminals

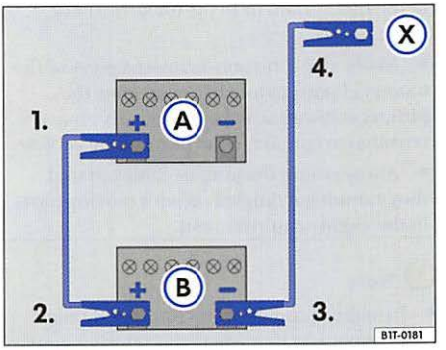


Fig. 41 How to connect the jumper cables

In the ⇒fig. 41 Ⓐ is the discharged battery and Ⓑ is the charged battery.

Attaching the jumper cables

– Switch off the ignition on both vehicles

1. Connect one end of the red jumper to the positive ⇒fig. 41 ⊕ terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery Ⓐ.

2. Connect the other end of the red jumper lead to the positive terminal ⊕ of the battery supplying the electricity Ⓑ.

3. Connect one end of the black jumper lead to the negative terminal ⊖ on the battery supplying the electricity Ⓑ.

4. Connect the other end of the black jumper lead Ⓧ to a solid metal component which is bolted on to the engine block, or onto the engine block itself of the vehicle with the discharged battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery Ⓐ.

5. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

6. Start the engine of the vehicle providing assistance with the booster battery and let it run at idle speed.

7. Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery and wait one or two minutes until the engine is running smoothly.

Removing the jump leads

8. Before you remove the jumper cables, switch off the headlights (if they are switched on).

9. Turn on the heater blower and rear window defroster in the vehicle with the discharged battery. This helps minimize voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.

10. When the engine is running, disconnect the jumper cable in reverse order as described above.

Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start, turn off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about 30 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒page 34. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump starting a vehicle with a dead can cause a battery to explode leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always make sure that the battery providing assistance has the same voltage as the discharged battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see battery label).
- Never jump start a vehicle with a frozen battery. If a battery is or has been frozen, replace it.
- Batteries give off explosive hydrogen gas. Always keep fire, sparks, open flame and smoking materials away from batteries.
- Never short out the battery poles by connecting the positive ⊕ and negative ⊖ poles with each other.
- Always follow the jumper cables' manufacturer's instructions.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. The hydrogen gas from the battery is explosive.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never attach the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch. Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Always route the jumper cables so that they cannot get tangled up with moving parts in the engine compartment.

Note

- Installing jumper cables improperly can cause expensive damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Do not let the vehicles touch each other. Otherwise current could flow between the vehicles as soon as the plus (+) terminals are connected. ◀

Towing

Towing eye at the front of the vehicle

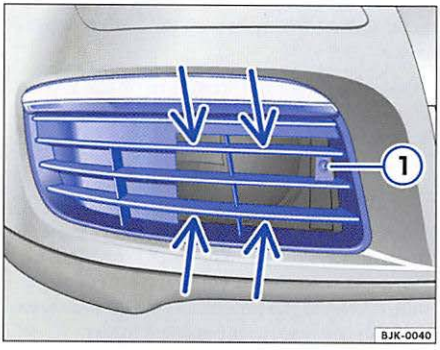


Fig. 42 Right front section: removing the cover

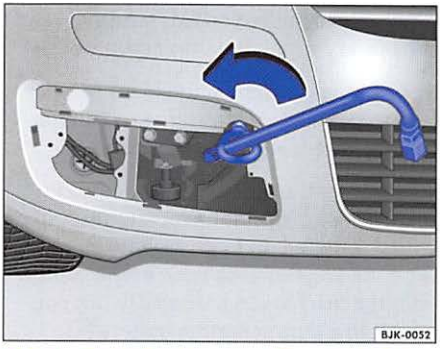


Fig. 43 The front right section of the vehicle: fitting the towing eye

Installing the towing eye

– Take the towing eye , the wrench and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒page 67.

– Remove the screw ⇒fig. 42 ① using the screwdriver. ▶

– Press the cover together using both hands in the direction of the arrows ⇒fig. 42 and pull the cover off.

– Screw the towing eye into the threaded hole, turning *counter-clockwise* as far as it will go ⇒fig. 43.

– Use the wrench for leverage to tighten the towing eye. ◀

Towing eye at the rear of the vehicle

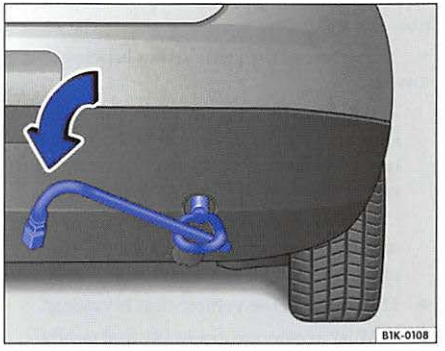


Fig. 44 Rear towing eye

Installing the towing eye

– Take the towing eye , the wrench and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒page 67.

– Pull the cover down and leave it hanging on the vehicle

– Remove the cover on the threaded hole.

– Screw the towing eye into the threaded hole, turning *counter-clockwise* as far as it will go ⇒fig. 44.

– Use the wrench for leverage to tighten the towing eye. ◀

General notes

Whenever possible tow with the front wheels off ground

Always observe the following if you use a tow-rope:

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

– Turn on the emergency flasher.

– Drive slowly at first until the tow-rope is taut. Then accelerate gradually.

– Press the accelerator slowly.

– Remember that the brake booster and power steering are not working in the vehicle you are towing. Brake earlier and more gently than you would normally ⇒⚠.

– Do not drive faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) and further than 30 miles (50 km).

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

– Turn on the emergency flasher.

– Move the selector lever or gearshift lever to the neutral position (N)

– Make sure that the tow-rope is taut at all times ⇒⚠.

Tow-rope or tow-bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow-bar. Only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar.

A tow-rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. Use a tow-rope made of synthetic fiber or similar elastic material. ▶

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing eyes provided.

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the techniques required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not try to tow another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking. Also ensure that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers and washers work properly.

Keep in mind that the brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. You will have to apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you would normally.

Also the power steering does not work when the engine is not running. You will need more force to steer than you would normally.

Towing vehicles with an automatic transmission

- Move the selector lever to N.
- Do not drive faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow further than 30 miles (50 km).
- If a tow truck is used, the vehicle must be towed with all wheels off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Towing a vehicle changes the way your vehicle handles and brakes. To help reduce the risk of an accident leading to serious personal injury, note the following:

- **The driver of the vehicle that is being towed:**
  - **Will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder than normal because the brake booster is not active. Always be alert not to rear-end the towing vehicle.**
  - **Will have to use considerably more force to turn the steering wheel, because the power steering is not active.**
- **The driver of the vehicle that is towing:**
  - **Must accelerate gradually and gentle, avoid jerking movements.**
  - **Must brake earlier and more gentle than you would normally.** ◀

When can your vehicle not be towed?

Your vehicle may not be towed under the following conditions:

- If the transmission malfunctions and there is no transmission fluid.
- If the vehicle electrical system is not functioning because the steering will lock up.
- If you have to drive further than 30 miles (50 km).
- If the front or rear axle is lifted off the ground because you damage the drive gear.

In these cases the vehicle must be transported on a car carrier or trailer.

⚠ WARNING

If you still tow your vehicle under these conditions, you could cause an accident or cause damage to the vehicle. This will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

ⓘ Note

Do not tow your vehicle behind a recreational vehicle. The Automatic transmission can be severely damaged. This can happen even if the selector lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

ⓘ Note

- If there is no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, the vehicle should be moved with a car carrier.
- If the front or rear axle is lifted off the ground, this will serious damage the drive gear.
- If the vehicle has to be towed more than 30 miles (50 km), all wheels must be raised to tow the vehicle. The vehicle should be moved with a car carrier.
- If the vehicle has no electrical power, the steering wheel will be locked. The vehicle must ▶

then be towed with all wheels raised. The vehicle should be moved with a car carrier. ◀

Lifting the vehicle

Vehicle lifting points

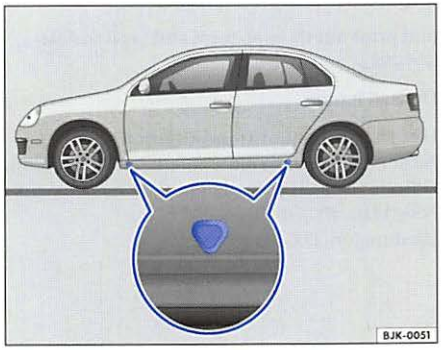


Fig. 45 Lifting points for lifting with the floor jack

Your vehicle may only be lifted by a floor jack at the points shown in the illustration ⇒fig. 45..

Using the vehicle jack to lift the vehicle ⇒page 72.

To prevent damage to the underbody of the vehicle when lifting the vehicle, **rubber pads** must be used.

Before driving onto a floor jack, you must check to make sure that there is enough clearance between low parts of the vehicle and the floor jack.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly lifting your vehicle with a floor jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack and cause serious personal injury:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always lift your vehicle only at the designated lift points shown in the illustrations.**
- **Never allow anyone to stay in the vehicle when it is being lifted or when it is off the ground.**
- **Not using the designated lift points can cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack when heavy parts such as the engine or transmission are removed.**
- **If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.**
- **Always make sure that the weight of the vehicle is not heavier than the lifting capacity of the floor jack being used.**
- **Never start the engine when you have raised the vehicle on the floor jack. The engine vibrations and vehicle movements could knock the vehicle off the floor jack.**

ⓘ Note

- Lifting your vehicle at any points other than the designated lifting points can cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on to a hoist, make sure there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and bottom of the vehicle. ◀

Consumer Information

Applicable to U.S.A. only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, injury, or death, you should inform the NHTSA immediately. You should also notify Volkswagen of America, Inc. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

Address of NHTSA

Tel.: 1-888-DASH-2-DOT (1-888-327-4236)

From 8:00 AM to 10:00 PM EST, Monday through Friday

Or have a look at:

http://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/ivoq/

and print out the web form and fax it to (202) 366-7882

Or mail it to:

U.S. Department of Transportation,
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration,
Office of Defects Investigation,
NSA-10.01, 400 7th Street, SW
Washington, D.C. 20 590. ◀

Applicable to Canada only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, injury, or death, you should inform Transport Canada immediately, You should also notify Volkswagen Canada, Inc.

Address of Transport Canada

To contact Transport Canada, you may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Phone: 1-800-333-0510 (only from Canada)

Phone: (613) 998-8616 (Ottawa region)

or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa ON
K1B 3V9 ◀

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the Unites States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

- Unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
- Fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
- Service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
- Replacement parts may not be readily available.

Note

Volkswagen cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability. ◀

Volkswagen Service Repair Manuals

Volkswagen Official Factory service and repair manuals are published as soon as possible after model introduction.

Service and Repair manuals are available from:

Robert Bentley, Inc.

Phone: 1-800-423-4595

From 8:30 AM to 5:00 PM EST, Monday through Thursday.

From 8:30 AM to 5:30 PM EST, Friday

www.bentleypublishers.com

To order service manuals and other Volkswagen Service literature contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

1-800-544-8021

From 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM EST, Monday through Friday.

www.vw.ddsltd.com ◀

Alphabetical index

A

ABS 3
Accessories
  What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? 27
Address of NHTSA 90
Address of Transport Canada 90
After changing a wheel 74
Alcantara
  Cleaning 25
Alloy wheels
  Cleaning 21
All-wheel drive
  Winter tires 65
Anti-freeze 43
Anti-lock brake system
  What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 3
Anti-theft wheel bolts 71
Auto Safety Hotline 90
Automatic car washes 17

B

BAS 2
Battery
  Charging 50
  How often should I replace my engine battery? 50
  Important information to know before disconnect the battery 49
  Replacing 50
  What you must do after reconnect the battery 49
  Winter conditions 49, 50
Battery acid level
  Checking 50
Bonnet 36
Brake assist system 2
Brake booster 2
Brake fluid
  Changing 48
  How often should the brake fluid be changed? 48
  What is the correct brake fluid level? . 47
  What kind of brake fluid should I use? 48
Brake pads 8
Brake servo 8
Brake system 47
Brakes 8
  How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 8
  What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 3
Braking distance 8
Break-in period
  Engine 7
  What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? 7
Breaking in
  Brake pads 7
  Tires 7
Breaking in tires 7
Bulb change 81
Bumper
  Cleaning 18

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 34, 49
Car washes 17
Catalytic converter 10
CB radio 29
Cell phone 29
Cellular phone 29
Changing a bulb 81
Changing a wheel 73
Changing brake pads 7
Changing windshield wiper blades 46
Chassis 22
Checking engine oil level 39
Checking tire pressure 56
Chrome
  Cleaning 21

Cleaning
Alloy wheels 21
Automatic car wash 17
Bumper 18
chassis 22
Cloth seat covers 23
Engine compartment 22
Exterior 17
Fabric trim 23
Instrument panel 23
Leather 23
Outside mirrors 19
Plastic parts 23
Safety belts 26
Washing the vehicle 17
Windows 19
Windshield 19
Windshield wiper blades 20
Wooden trim 23
Cleaning and protection 16
Cloth seat covers
Cleaning 23
Code number
For anti-theft wheel bolts 67
Cold tire inflation pressure 54
Coolant 43
Level 44
Loss 44
Crash recorders 6

D

Determining correct load limit 59
Diesel engine
Adding engine oil 41
Changing engine oil 41
Engine oil 41
Engine oil specifications 37
Diesel fuel 33
Winter operation 33
Differential lock 4
Driver Steering Recommendation 3
Driving economically 14
Driving outside of the U.S.A. or Canada
Precautions 91
Driving with respect for the environment 14

E

EDL 4
Electrolyte level
Checking 50
Electronic differential lock 4
Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)
How it works 5
Engine
Break-in 7
Engine compartment
Cleaning 22
Precautions you should take when working inside the engine compartment 34
Working in the engine compartment 34
Engine coolant 43
Additives 43
Can I add plain water to the engine coolant? 44
Coolant losses 45
Engine hood 36
How do I unlock the engine hood? 36
Engine oil 37
Adding 40
Additives 40
Checking level 39
Consumption 38
Diesel engine 41
Dipstick 39
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? 38
Oil change 42
Specifications 37
Specifications Diesel engine 37, 41
Specifications gasoline engine 37
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? 37
When should I check the engine oil level? 38
Where is the oil dipstick 39
Environment
Avoiding pollution 18, 31
Cleaning the engine compartment 22
Driving economically 14
Vehicle care products 16
ESP 5
Event Data Recorder 6
External aerial 29

F

Fabric trim
Cleaning 23
Fuse box 79
Fuses 77

G

Gaskets 20
Gasoline 32
Blends 32
Containing alcohol 32
Octane rating 32
Petrol 32
Premium 32
Regular 32
Unleaded 32
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? 32
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? 32
Winter or summer tips 32
Gasoline additives 33
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 52

H

How could I damage the catalytic converter? 10
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? 38
How do I unlock the engine hood? 36
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 8
How often should I check my tire pressures? 57
How often should I replace my engine battery? 50
How often should I wax my car? 19
How often should the brake fluid be changed? 48
Hubcaps 69
Hydroplaning 60

I

Important information for vehicles with Diesel engine when adding or changing engine oil 41
Important information to know before disconnect the battery 49
Instrument panel
Cleaning 23

J

Jack 72
Jump starting 84
Jumper cables 84

L

Leather
Cleaning 23
Lifting platform 89
Lifting the vehicle 89
Light change 81
Lock cylinders 21
Locks 21

M

Modifications 28

N

New tires and wheels 61
NHTSA 90
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 6

O

Oil 37
Oil change 42
Oil dipstick 39
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 91
Outside mirrors
Cleaning 19

P

Paint
Polishing 19
Waxing 19
Parking Assistance
Cleaning sensors 18

Parts 27
Plastic parts 19
  Cleaning 23
Power steering 6
Power washer 18
Premium Gasoline 32

R

Raising the vehicle with the jack 72
Rear lid
  Escape handle 76
Rear window heating
  Heating element wires 20
Refueling 30
Regular Gasoline 32
Repairs 28
Replacing
  Wheel rims 63
Replacing tires and wheels 61
Reporting safety defects
  Canada 90
  United States 90
Rims
  Replacing 63
Rubber gaskets 20

S

Safety belts
  Cleaning 26
Snow chains 66
Spares 27
Speed Rating Letter Code 62
Starting with jumper cables 84
Steps for determining correct load limit 59

T

Tank
  Filling the tank 30
  Opening the fuel filler flap 30
Technical modifications 28
Tire pressure 56
Tire pressure monitoring system
  Sensors 63
  Tires and wheels 63
  Valves 63
Tire service life 59
Tires
  Replacing 63
  Service life 59
  Speed Rating Letter Code 62
  Tire manufacturing date 62
  Tire specifications 62
  Tread depth 59
  Uniform tire quality grading 64
  Winter tires 65
Tires and vehicle load limits 58
Tires and wheels 51
  Checking tire pressure 56
  Cold tire inflation pressure 54
  Dimensions 61
  General notes 51
  Glossary of tire and loading terminology 52
  New tires and wheels 61
  Replacing 61
  Snow chains 66
  Tire pressure monitoring system 63
  Tires and vehicle load limits 58
  Wheel bolts 66
  Winter tires 65
Tools 67
Towing 86
  Four-wheel drive 86
  General notes 87
  When can your vehicle not be towed? 88
Towing eye 86
Trailer towing
  Brakes 11
  Driving tips 13
  Operating instructions 12
  Safety chains 11, 12
  Technical requirements 10
  Tire pressure 12
  Towing tips 13
  Trailer lights 11
  Trailer weight 12
Transport Canada 90
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) 59

U

Underbody sealant 22
Unidirectional tires 51, 73
Uniform tire quality grading 64

V

Vehicle
Lifting 89
Vehicle battery 49
Vehicle care
Exterior 17
Vehicle care products 16
Vehicle control modules 6
Vehicle phone 29
Vehicle tool kit 67
Volkswagen Service Repair Manuals 91

W

Warranty coverages 15
Washer fluid 45
Washing by hand 17
Washing the vehicle 17
Washing with power cleaners 18
Waxing
How often should I wax my car? 19
Wear indicator 59
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 3
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? 32
What is the correct brake fluid level? . 47
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? 7
What kind of brake fluid should I use? 48
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? 37
What should I do after changing a wheel? 57, 74
What should I do after replacing wheels? 57
What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? 27
What should I do if I want to modify my vehicle? 28
What should I do if I want to repair my vehicle? 28
What should I do if the brake warning light comes on? 47
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? 32
What you must do after reconnect the battery 49
Wheel bolt caps 69
Wheel bolts 71
Torque 66
Wheel changing 68
Wheels 51
Checking tire pressure 56
Cold tire inflation pressure 54
General notes 51
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 52
New tires and wheels 61
Tires and vehicle load limits 58
When can your vehicle not be towed? 88
When should I adjust the tire pressures? 57
When should I check the engine oil level? 38
When should I check the tire pressures? 57
When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 31
Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? 56
Where is the oil dipstick 39
Windows
Cleaning 19
Windshield
Cleaning 19
Windshield wash 45
Windshield wiper blades
Cleaning 20
Windshield wipers
Changing blades 46
Winter tires 65
All-wheel drive 65
Wooden trim
Cleaning 23
Working in the engine compartment 34

Afterword

Volkswagen works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen de México.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen de México. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Mexico

© 2005 Volkswagen de Mexico, S.A. de C. V.

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

3.2 Tips and Advice | Jetta
Print status: 04.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.551.JKR.21 | englisch Nordamerika 05.2005



3.3 Technical Data

Jetta

Model year 2006

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially impor-tant when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** contents showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to vehicles with Diesel engine".

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

General notes 2

What you need to know 2
How are the figures measured? 3

Technical data 5

2.5L gasoline engine 5
2.0L gasoline engine 7
1.9L diesel engine 9

General notes

What you need to know

Abbreviations used in this booklet

Abbreviation	Meaning
kW	Kilowatt (engine power)
hp	Horse power (engine power)
rpm	Revolutions per minute (engine speed)
Nm	Newton meters (unit of engine torque)
lb-ft	Foot pounds (unit of engine torque)
in.	Inch
qts.	Quarts
CID	Cubic inch displacement
lbs.	Pounds
kg	Kilogram

Vehicle Identification

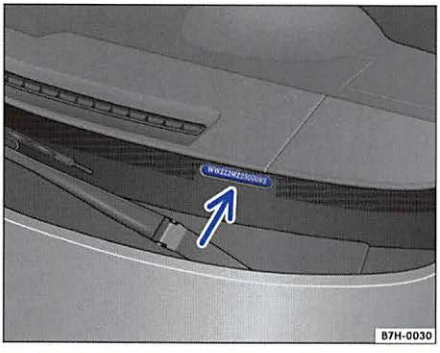


Fig. 1 View from the outside through the windshield on the driver's side: Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the instrument panel on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇒fig. 1.

The safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Fed-eral Motor Vehicle Safety Standards, which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left front door jamb.

It shows the month and the year of production and the vehicle identification number.

The high voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located on the lock carrier ⇒⚠.

The spark ignition system meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regu-lations.

The vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is located on the left side of the rear panel in the luggage compartment or under the carpeting on the luggage compartment floor. The label contains the following information:

- Vehicle Identification No.
- Type code number / designation Engine output in kilowatts
- Engine and transmission code letter / Paint no. / Interior
- Optional equipment numbers

You can also find vehicle data in your Maintenance booklet.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all warnings ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ◀

How are the figures measured?

Weights

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left front door jamb.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which combines passenger (150 lbs / 68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight.

Luggage carrying capacity is not increased by the use of a roof rack, unless the passenger capacity is reduced accordingly.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weight ratings can result in accidents leading to serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let the actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible weights. Also never let their combination exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**
- **Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.**
- **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.**

ⓘ Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Always observe local regulations. ◀

Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is 165 lbs (75 kg).

Only use the roof rack system specifically designed, tested and approved by Volkswagen.

The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry.

Distribute the load evenly and do not exceed the Permissible Roof Weight (including the weight of the roof rack system) or the Gross Vehicle weight.

For more details see ⇒booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safe driving" and ⇒booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy bulky loads on the roof will change the way the vehicle handles by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity, changing its aerodynamics and the way it reacts to side winds.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a more negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Always adapt your driving and speed to what you are carrying on the roof as well as to road, traffic, weather and wind conditions.**
- **Always avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.**
- **Always make sure that loads are properly distributed and that heavier items are in the front..**
- **Never exceed the maximum roof load for the vehicle, maximum axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight.**

Note

The height of your vehicle is changed by the installation of the roof carrier and the load secured on it. Bear this in mind when driving through garage doors or low underpasses – there is danger of damage to the vehicle. ◀

Dimensions

The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

Note

- Please be careful when parking your vehicle in areas with parking barriers or curbs. Parking barriers and curbs vary in height. They could damage your bumper and related components when the front of your vehicle moves over a barrier or a curb that is too high. To avoid damage to your car you should stop and park the car without touching the parking barrier or curb.
- When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, or over curbs etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be very close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them.

Tips

The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries. ◀

Technical data

2.5L gasoline engine

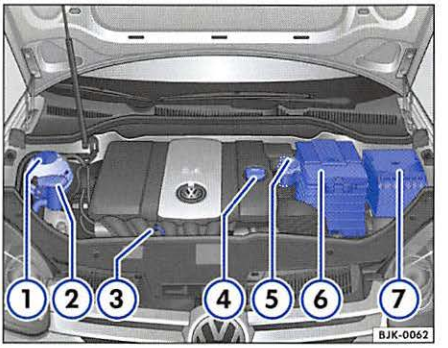


Fig. 2 Engine compartment overview

① Engine coolant expansion tank
② Windshield washer fluid container
③ Engine oil dipstick
④ Engine oil filler cap
⑤ Brake fluid reservoir
⑥ Vehicle battery
⑦ Fuse box

Details on how to connect jumper cables to the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal or on how to check and top up service fluids for the components listed above are provided in ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice."

Further explanations, tips and restrictions on the technical data ⇒page 2, "What you need to know".

Engine data	
Maximum output SAE net	150 hp at 5,000 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net	228 Nm at 3,750 rpm / 168 ft.lbs. at 3,750 rpm
No. of cylinders	5
Displacement	151.3 in^3 / 2,480 cm^3
Stroke	3.65 in / 92.8 mm
Bore	3.25 in / 82.5 mm
Compression ratio	9.5:1
Fuel	Premium
The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap. For maximum engine performance, unleaded Premium is recommended ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Capacities	
Fuel tank (Reserve, included in fuel tank capacity)	14.5 gal. / 55liters (1.9 gal. / 7.0 liters)
Windshield washer fluid container	approx. 3.2 qts. / 3.0 liters
Windshield washer fluid container (with headlight washer)	approx. 5.2 qts. / 5.0 liters

Capacities	
Engine oil (with oil filter)	approx. 6.3 qts. / 6.0 liters
The engine oil level should be checked while topping up. **Do not overfill** ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Maximum Vehicle Weights	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Automatic	Manual	Automatic	Manual
Total permissible weight	4,343	4,277	1,970	1,940
Maximum payload	1,105	1,094	501	496
Maximum front axle load	2,337	2,271	1,060	1,030
Maximum rear axle load	2,116		960	
Maximum roof weight	165		75	
The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry.				

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights	lbs.	kg.
Trailer with brakes	1,500	680
Trailer without brakes	1,500	680
Tongue load	200	91
The tongue load increases the weight of the rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry. Always read and heed further information about trailer towing ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Trailer towing.". The maximum tongue load is only applicable if the two holes on the outer, vertical wall of the main chassis beam were used when installing the trailer hitch.		

Dimensions[a)]	
Wheelbase	101.4 in. / 2,578 mm
Length	178.8 in. / 4,544 mm
Width	78.2 in. / 1,987 mm
Height (unloaded)	57.5 in. / 1,463 mm
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	35.7 ft. / 10.9 meters
Track front	60.03 in. / 1,533 mm
Track rear	59.7 in. / 1,517 mm
Ground clearance (loaded)	5.4 in. / 136 mm

a) Slight differences to these figures are possible, depending on wheel and tire size fitted and the level selected

2.0L gasoline engine

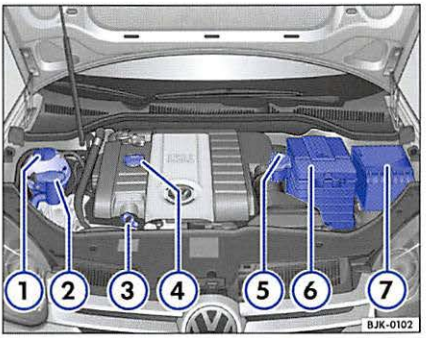


Fig. 3 Engine compartment overview

① Engine coolant expansion tank
② Windshield washer fluid container
③ Engine oil dipstick
④ Engine oil filler cap
⑤ Brake fluid reservoir
⑥ Vehicle battery
⑦ Fuse box

Details on how to connect jumper cables to the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal or on how to check and top up service fluids for the components listed above are provided in ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice."

Further explanations, tips and restrictions on the technical data ⇒page 2, "What you need to know".

Engine data	
Maximum output SAE net	200 hp at 5,700 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net	280 Nm at 2,000 rpm / 207 ft.lbs. at 2,000 rpm
No. of cylinders	4
Displacement	121 in^3 / 1,984 cm^3
Stroke	3.65 in / 92.8 mm
Bore	3.25 in / 82.5 mm
Compression ratio	10.5:1
Fuel	Premium
The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap. For maximum engine performance, unleaded Premium is recommended ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Capacities	
Fuel tank (Reserve, included in fuel tank capacity)	14.5 gal. / 55liters (1.9 gal. / 7.0 liters)
Windshield washer fluid container	approx. 3.2 qts. / 3.0 liters
Windshield washer fluid container (with headlight washer)	approx. 5.2 qts. / 5.0 liters
Engine oil (with oil filter)	approx. 5.8 qts. / 5.5 liters
The engine oil level should be checked while topping up. **Do not overfill** ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Maximum Vehicle Weights	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Automatic	Manual	Automatic	Manual
Total permissible weight	4,343	4,299	1,970	1,950
Maximum payload	1,052		477	
Maximum front axle load	2,337	2,293	1,060	1,040
Maximum rear axle load	2,116		960	
Maximum roof weight	165		75	
The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry.				

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Automatic	Manual	Automatic	Manual
Trailer with brakes	1,000	2,000	454	907
Trailer without brakes	1,000	1,650	454	748
Tongue load	200		91	
The tongue load increases the weight of the rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry. Always read and heed further information about trailer towing ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Trailer towing.". The maximum tongue load is only applicable if the two holes on the outer, vertical wall of the main chassis beam were used when installing the trailer hitch.				

Dimensions[a)]	
Wheelbase	101.4 in. / 2,578 mm
Length	178.8 in. / 4,544 mm
Width	78.2 in. / 1,987 mm
Height (unloaded)	57.5 in. / 1,463 mm
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	35.7 ft. / 10.9 meters
Track front	60.3 in. / 1,533 mm
Track rear	59.7 in. / 1,517 mm
Ground clearance (loaded)	5.4 in. / 136 mm

a) Slight differences to these figures are possible, depending on wheel and tire size fitted and the level selected

1.9L diesel engine

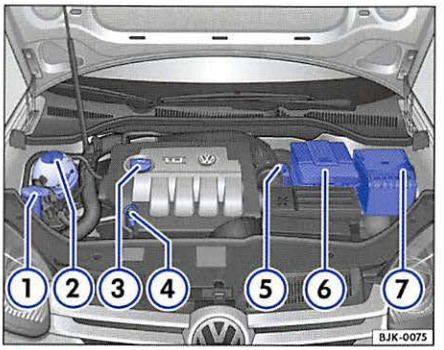


Fig. 4 Engine compartment overview

① Windshield washer fluid container
② Engine coolant expansion tank
③ Engine oil filler cap
④ Engine oil dipstick
⑤ Brake fluid reservoir
⑥ Vehicle battery
⑦ Fuse box

Details on how to connect jumper cables to the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal or on how to check and top up service fluids for the components listed above are provided in ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice."

Further explanations, tips and restrictions are provided in ⇒booklet 3.3 "Technical Data".

Engine data	
Maximum output SAE net	100 hp at 4,000 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net	250 Nm at 1,800-2,400 rpm / 184 ft.lbs. at 1,800-2,400 rpm
No. of cylinders	4
Displacement	115.7 in^3 / 1,896 cm^3
Stroke	3.76 in / 95.5 mm
Bore	3.13 in / 79.5 mm
Compression ratio	18.5:1
Fuel	Diesel
The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap. **Diesel No.2** is recommended ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Capacities	
Fuel tank (Reserve, included in fuel tank capacity)	14.5 gal. / 55 liters (1.9 gal. / 7.0 liters)
Windshield washer fluid container	approx. 3.2 qts. / 3.0 liters
Windshield washer fluid container (with headlight washer)	approx. 5.2 qts. / 5.0 liters
Engine oil (with oil filter)	approx. 5.1qts. / 4.8 liters
The engine oil level should be checked while topping up. **Do not overfill** ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Maximum Vehicle Weights	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Automatic	Manual	Automatic	Manual
Total permissible weight	4,299	4,255	1,950	1,930
Maximum payload	1,105		501	
Maximum front axle load	2,293	2,249	1,040	1,020
Maximum rear axle load	2,116		960	
Maximum roof weight	165		75	
The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry.				

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights	lbs.	kg.
Trailer with brakes	1,000	454
Trailer without brakes	1,000	454
Tongue load	200	91
The tongue load increases the weight of the rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry. Always read and heed further information about trailer towing ⇒booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Trailer towing.". The maximum tongue load is only applicable if the two holes on the outer, vertical wall of the main chassis beam were used when installing the trailer hitch.		

Dimensions[a)]	
Wheelbase	101.4 in. / 2,578 mm
Length	178.8 in. / 4,544 mm
Width	72.8 in. / 1,987 mm
Height (unloaded)	57.5 in. / 1,463 mm
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	35.7 ft. / 10.9 meters
Track front	60.3 in. / 1,533 mm
Track rear	59.7 in. / 1,517 mm
Ground clearance (loaded)	5.4 in. / 136 mm

a) Slight differences to these figures are possible, depending on wheel and tire size fitted and the level selected

Afterword

Volkswagen works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen de México.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen de México. Subject to altera-tion and amendment.

Printed in Mexico

© Volkswagen de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

3.3 Technical Data | Jetta
Print status: 04.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.551.JKT.21 | englisch Nordamerika 05.2005



3.4 Premium Sound System

Jetta

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain more information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. The contents of this booklet correspond to the equipment options on your vehicle.

Illustrations may vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to USA Models only".

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Quick overview 2
Controls 2
Important information 5

Radio / CD 7
Radio 7
Satellite Digital Radio Service 13
CD 19
MP3 25
CD changer 32
Anti-Theft Coding 34
Warranty and Technical description 35

Alphabetical index 37

Quick overview

Controls

This overview is to assist you in familiarizing yourself with the controls.



Fig. 1 Sound System without SDARS

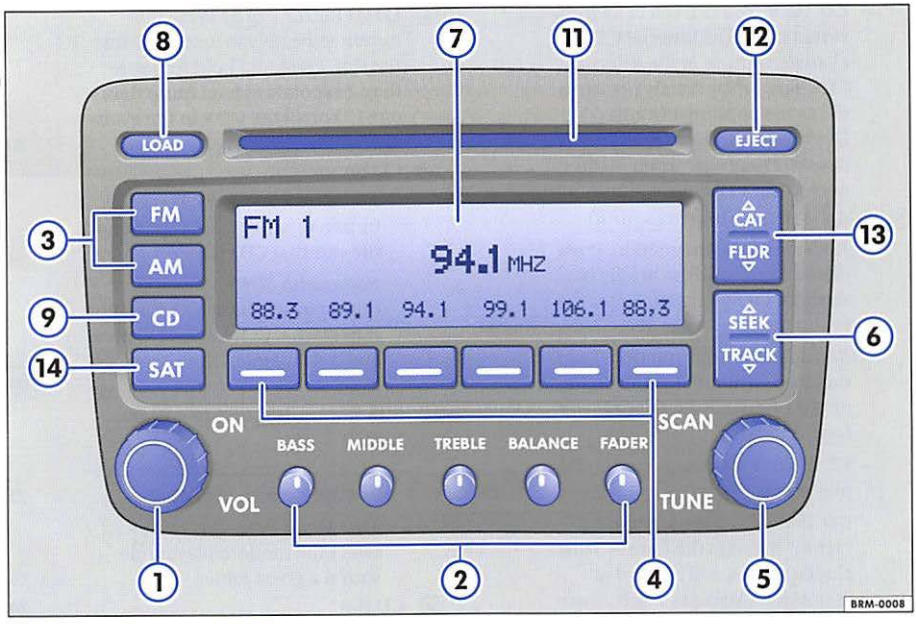


Fig. 2 Sound System with SDRS

① On/Off switch (press) and volume control (turn). The mode that was in use before the unit was last turned off - radio or CD - will automatically come back on again when you turn on the unit. If the unit is silent when turned on and the word **SAFE** appears in the display, then you must re-enter the safety code. 34

② Sound Setting Buttons 12

- Bass Control [BASS]: Turn the knob ⇒ page 2, fig. 1 ⑤ to adjust the bass as desired..
- Middle Control [MIDDLE]: Turn the knob ⇒ page 2, fig. 1 ⑤ to adjust the middle frequencies as desired.
- Treble Control [TREBLE]: Turn the knob⇒ page 2, fig. 1 ⑤ to adjust the treble as desired.
- Balance Control [BALANCE]: Turn the knob ⑤ to adjust the desired balance between the left and right speakers.
- Fader Control [FADER]: Turn the knob⇒ page 2, fig. 1 ⑤ to adjust the desired balance between the front and rear speakers.

③ Band Setting Buttons 9

- FM Button [FM]: Press this button to select the FM band, to switch to the second set of presets or to the FM AUTO set of presets. Press and hold to store automatically the 6 FM best quality stations in FM AUTO.
- AM Button [AM]: Press this button to select the AM band or to switch to the AM AUTO set of presets. Press and hold to store automatically the 6 AM best quality stations in AM AUTO.

④ Station Preset buttons:

- *Radio Mode:* Press these buttons to preset one radio stations on each of them in each of the five bands AM1, AM AUTO, FM1, FM2 and FM AUTO or when using the satellite mode.. ..... 16 ▶

- *CD Mode:* You can select an individual CD in the internal CD changer trays or in the external CD changer* by briefly pressing the corresponding buttons ④. Use these buttons to select a tray in the CD changer when loading or ejecting a CD.

⑤ SCAN/TUNE button SCAN/TUNE
- *Radio Mode:* Scan function. Press this button shortly to briefly play stations. Press longer to enter the set up mode. 11
- *Radio Mode:* Tune function. Turn the knob to manually tune to the next numerically higher or lower frequency.
- *CD Mode:* Press button to briefly play tracks. 23
- *CD Mode:* Turn the knob to "scroll" through the tracks. Turn clockwise to scroll upward or counterclockwise to scroll downward.
- *MP3 Mode:* Press button to briefly play tracks. 27
- *MP3 Mode:* Turn the knob to "scroll" through the tracks within a given folder Turn clockwise to scroll upward or counterclockwise to scroll downward.

⑥ SEEK/TRACK button SEEK/TRACK.
- *Radio Mode:* Press button △ to seek higher frequency. 11
- *Radio Mode:* Press button ▽ to seek lower frequency.
- *CD Mode:* Press button △ to "scroll" through the tracks upward *or* press and hold the button to fast forward. 23
- *CD Mode:* Press button ▽ to "scroll" through the tracks downward *or* press and hold the button to fast rewind.

⑦ Display
- Radio mode 12
- CD mode 24
- MP3 mode 29
- Satellite Digital Radio Service .. 13

⑧ LOAD Button LOAD: Press this button to be able to load a CD into the slot. Press and hold for more than 2 seconds to load more than one CD or all the CD's in the available slots. 20

⑨ CD Button CD
- *Radio without SDRS:* Press this button to select the CD player or the external CD changer*. 21
- *Radio with SDRS:* Press this button to select the CD player or the external CD changer* *or* press and hold for more than 2 seconds to select the MIX mode. 21

⑩ MIX Button MIX (radios without SDRS)
- *CD Mode:* Press this button to select the random play mode. ... 21
- *MP3 Mode:* Press this button to select the random play mode within a given folder. 26

⑪ CD slot 20

⑫ EJECT Button EJECT: Press this button to eject a CD. Press longer to eject more than one CD or all the CD's inside the slots.. 20

⑬ *Radio without SDRS:* MP3/FLDR Button MP3/FLDR Button or *Radio with SDRS:* CAT/FLDR Button CAT/FLDR Button
- *Radio without SDRS:* Press this button to select play lists or folders when playing a CD with MP3 files. 25
- *Radio with SDRS:* Press this button to select play lists or folders when playing a CD with MP3 files or to select the desired category when using the satellite mode 25

⑭ SAT button SAT: Press this button to select the satellite mode. 14

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- **Never let yourself be distracted by setting, adjusting or using the Sound System.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Use the Sound System only if road, traffic and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always set volume levels so that you can clearly hear horns, sirens and other warning sounds outside the vehicle. ◀

Important information

Operating the Sound System while driving

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver.

The wide range of sophisticated equipment details of modern car radios offer not only a vast source of entertainment, but also important information regarding traffic updates, road conditions, weather reports, etc.

But remember, you should only operate the radio system with its numerous features when the traffic situation really allows ⇒ ⚠ in "Controls" on page 2.

For example, changing CDs or reading song titles on a CD case or in the radio display when driving is often the cause of auto accidents.

You should also set the volume of your radio system so that you can hear signals from other drivers at any time.

Convenience radio coding

For technical reasons, the convenience radio coding is not available for all vehicle models.

In the past, it used to be that you had to manually recode the radio whenever the unit was removed from the vehicle (for example, if the unit was removed to be repaired), or whenever the vehicle battery was disconnected (for example, if you brought your vehicle in to the dealership for service and it was necessary to disconnect the battery). In either case, the power supply to the unit was cut off.

That has all changed with the new convenience radio coding function: Once the code number has been entered, it will then synchronize itself with "its" vehicle!

If the power supply has been interrupted, the radio will automatically check to see if it is still in "its" vehicle after the ignition has been switched on. If this happen, the radio will be ready for use after just a few seconds.

It is therefore no longer necessary to disengage the electronic lock manually!

If the radio has been installed in another vehicle, however, the electronic lock will have to be disengaged manually.

If **SAFE** appears in the display after switching the radio on, it can then only be operated again after entering the correct code - ⇒ page 34.

External CD changer[1)]

You also have the option of installing a Genuine Volkswagen CD Changer. Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer about this option.

The CD changer is installed in the front armrest compartment. It is "remote controlled" by the radio unit. It allows you to load up to 6 CDs. See ⇒ page 32 for further information.

Volkswagen dealers have all the information concerning installing the CD changer.

Tips

- Please note that items marked with an asterisk (*) may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer to see if the feature or item applies to your model.
- The radio code number and the radio serial number can be found on the "Radio Card" at the beginning of the Owner`s Literature. ▶

1) Available as a factory installed option, or your authorized Volkswagen dealer can install the optional CD changer for you. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer if this option is available for your model.

- It is very important that you keep this "Radio Card" in a safe place - never keep it in the vehicle. Only then the radio is useless to thieves! ◀

Radio / CD

Radio

ON/OFF Button

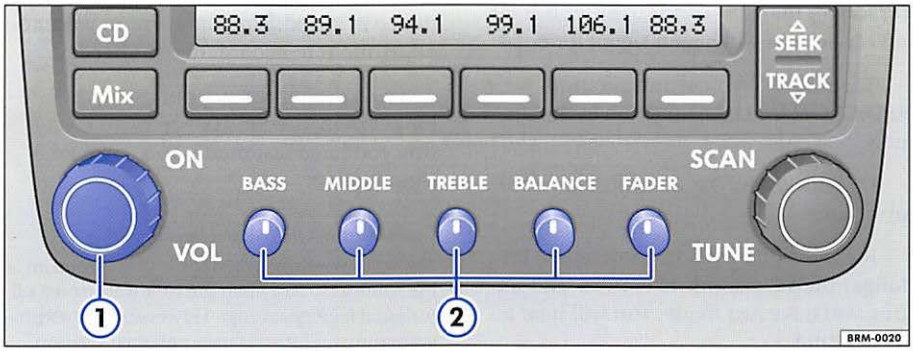


Fig. 3 Radio buttons

Press the knob ⇒ fig. 3 ① to turn the unit on / off.

Whatever was playing when the unit was last turned off - radio or CD - will automatically come back on when the unit is turned on again.

The following settings will be saved whenever you turn off the system:

- Radio: the frequency (radio station or channel) setting.
- Internal CD changer: the selected CD track.

When you turn on the unit again, the radio or the CD player will come on depending on which on you were last listening to when you turned the unit off.

The unit turns off automatically when you remove the key from the ignition lock.

The radio can be turned on while the ignition key is removed by simply pressing the knob ①. The unit will turn off again automatically after about 1 hour. This procedure can be repeated as often as desired.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- **Never let yourself be distracted by setting, adjusting or using the Audio System.**
- **Use the Audio System only if road, traffic and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.**
- **Always set volume levels so that you can clearly hear horns, sirens and other warning sounds outside the vehicle.**

Tips

If the radio does not emit any sound when it is switched on and the word **SAFE** appears in the display, then the unit is electronically locked up. See page ⇒ page 34. ◀

Volume Knob

Volume Control

– Turn the rotary knob ⇒ page 7, fig. 3 ① to adjust the volume.

Setting Custom Turn-On Volume Level

– Press and hold the SCAN/TUNE button ⑤ for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You will hear a signal tone.

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE button until **SELECT ON VOLUME** appears in the display.

– Use the knob ① to set the desired turn-on volume.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you have just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Setting the Speed Volume Control (SVC)

– Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You will hear a signal tone.

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE button until **SPEED DEP. VOLUME** appears in the display.

– In the lower part of the display the words **OFF** and the numbers **1**, **2** and **3** will appear. By using the station preset buttons ④ below these words select the volume level you want. **1** for a minimum volume adjustment in accordance to speed.**2** for a medium volume adjustemtn in accordance to speed.**3** for a maximum volume adjustment in accordance to speed.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you have just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Custom Turn-On Volume Level

The volume setting when the unit is turned on is the same as it was when the unit was turned off (original factory setting). However, you can program the unit for your own personal turn-on volume level.

Speed Volume Control (SVC)

The Speed Volume Control automatically adjusts the volume in accordance with road speed.

Tips

- If you do not confirm the setting you have just made, the unit will automatically return to the normal operation mode after about 15 seconds. Your custom turn-on volume will not be stored.
- If the custom turn-on volume that you stored is louder than the turn-off volume level, the unit will use the turn-off volume the next time it is turned on.
- If the audio volume level is louder than the turn-on volume that you stored and the unit is turned off, the unit will use the stored level the next time it is turned on. ◀

Band Setting Buttons FM / AM



Fig. 4 Band Setting Buttons

Your unit has three sets of FM (FM = Frequency Modulation) presets and two sets of AM (AM = Amplitude Modulation) presets. Using the Autostore feature, you can store the 6 best quality available stations on the second and third set of presets for the AM or FM bands respectively. The strongest will be memorized in the station preset buttons, in order of frequency.

Selecting an FM preset FM

– Press the FM button ⇒ fig. 4 ③ to select FM1, FM2 or FM AUTO. Either **FM1**, **FM2** or **FM AUTO** appears in the display.

Selecting an AM preset AM

– Press the AM button ③ to select AM1 or AM AUTO. Either **AM1** or **AM AUTO** appears in the display.

Storing 6 radio stations

– Select AM or FM.

– Press either the FM or AM button for approximately 2 seconds. The word **STORE** will appear in the display. The 6 stations with the strongest signals on the chosen band are automatically stored either in FM3 or AM2.

– Press either the FM or AM button to select the FM AUTO or AM AUTO presets. **FM AUTO** or **AM AUTO** will appear in display.

Tips

If there are fewer than 6 radio stations in the area with a strong broadcasting signal, the remaining presets will appear like _ _ _ in the display. ◀

Station Preset Buttons

You can preset one radio station on each of the six buttons in each of the five bands AM1, AM AUTO, FM1, FM2 and FM AUTO.

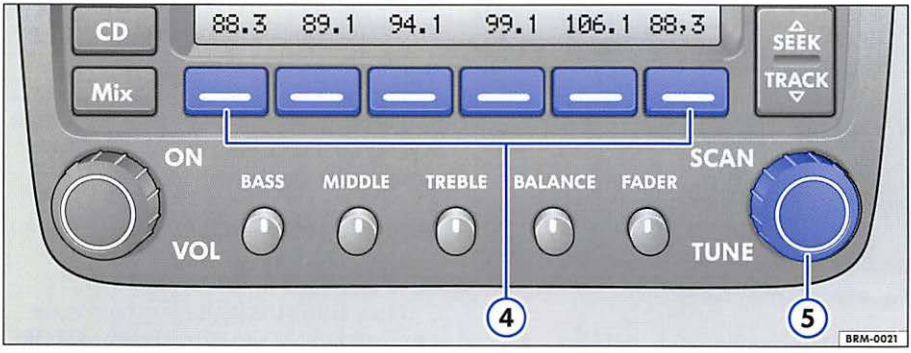


Fig. 5 Station Preset Buttons and SCAN/TUNE Knob

To preset AM1 / AM AUTO and FM1 / FM2 / FM AUTO:

- Select the desired band / preset group - ⇒ page 9, fig. 4 ③.
- Tune to the desired radio station - ⇒ fig. 5 ④ and ⑤.
- Hold down the preset button on which you want to save the station until you hear an audible signal and the program is muted - the station is now preset on this button. The frequency of the preset station will appear underscored in the display.
- To listen to the station you just stored, press this button briefly.

Tips

When selecting a radio station to listen to, give the button a quick tap. Do not hold it down! If you do, you will unintentionally store a new frequency (radio station) on this button. ◀

SCAN/TUNE Button

Automatic Tuning (SCAN)

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button ⇒ page 10, fig. 5 ⑤ briefly to scan upward to the next higher frequency. Scanning stops at the next good quality station received. After about 10 seconds, the radio will scan to the next station. **SCAN** will appear in the display after you press this button.

Manual Radio Station search (TUNE)

– Turn the knob ④ clockwise to tune upwards.

– Turn the knob counterclockwise to tune downwards.

Preset scan

– Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You will hear a signal tone.

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob, until **SELECT SCAN AM/FM** appears in the display.

– In the lower part of the display the words **STATIONS** and **PRESETS** will appear. By using the station preset buttons ④ below these words select the type of scan operation you want.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you have just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Automatic Tuning (SCAN)

If you press the button during the 10 second "hold" period, the radio will "latch" on to the station currently being received.

The scan function stops automatically after one loop of the entire range of frequencies.

Preset scan

It is possible for you to select between a scan operation through the entire range of frequencies or just through the stations memorized in the station preset buttons.

Manual Radio Station search (TUNE)

The settings will be changed in small increments (FM 0.2 MHz-, AM 10 KHz). ◀

SEEK/TRACK Button △ / ▽

Use the SEEK/TRACK rocker button to seek the next higher or lower frequency (radio station).

Automatic seek

– Press △ (⇒ page 3, fig. 2 ⑥) to search to the next higher frequency (radio station).

– Press ▽ to search to the next lower frequency (radio station).

– Once a station has been found, briefly pressing ▽ or △ again will cause the seek operation to be repeated.

Controlled seek

– Press and hold △ or ▽ to tune to a desired frequency.

– Simply release △ or ▽ just before you reach the desired frequency. The seek function will then stop at the next station that offers acceptable reception ◀

What you will see in the display when you are listening to the radio

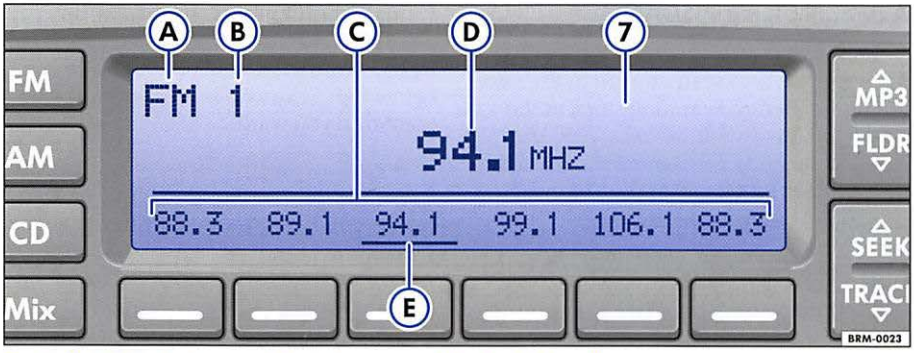


Fig. 6 This is the display you will see when you are listening to the radio

Ⓐ Bands
- **FM1**, **FM2**, **FM AUTO**, **AM1** and **AM AUTO**.

Ⓑ Selected set of presets

Ⓒ Station Preset Buttons
- The memorized frequency is displayed. The selected frequency is indicated by an undescore.

Ⓓ Frequency Display
- FM Band **94.1 MHz**
- AM-Band **980 KHz**

Ⓔ Selected frequency
- If the selected frequency is already memorized in one of the preset buttons, it will be underscored. ◀

Buttons for adjusting the sound quality

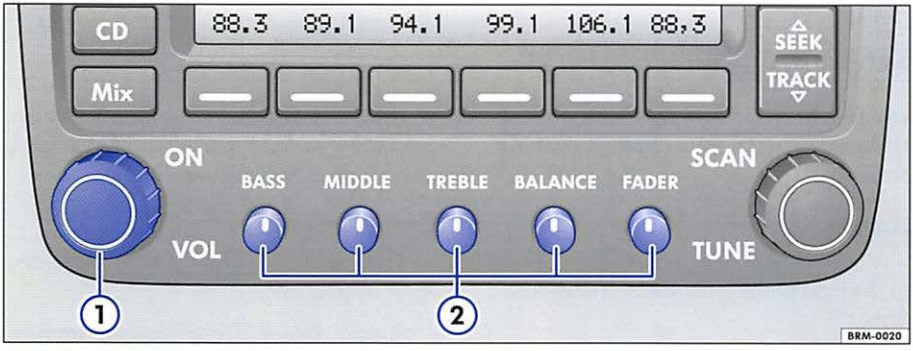


Fig. 7 Sound setting Buttons

You can adjust the sound quality when you play the radio or the CD.

Bass Control [BASS]

– Turn the rotary knob ⇒ page 2, fig. 1 ② to set the bass.

Middle Control [MIDDLE]

– Turn the rotary knob ② to set the desired midrange tones. ▶

Treble Control TREBLE

– Turn the rotary knob (2) to set the desired treble.

Balance Control BALANCE

– Turn the rotary knob (2) to set the desired balance between the left and right speakers.

Fader Control FADER

– Turn the rotary knob (2) to set the desired balance between the front and rear speakers. ◀

Satellite Digital Radio Service

What you should know about Satellite Radio

Satellite Radio provides you with a digital audio programming at the touch of a button. By using satellites, Satellite Radio provides static and distortion free sound with a choice of more than 100 channels of diverse programming, including music, news, sports and talk. The adjustment of the audio functions (volume, tone, balance, etc.) and selection of the desired audio channel are made by using the controls on the vehicle radio.

Different kinds of information (e.g. name of the category and channel) may appear in the display when receiving a satellite signal.

How the system works

Control of system functions is achieved by the radio. The Satellite Radio signals are received by the vehicle antenna and are routed to the receiver unit, which is conveniently mounted in the vehicle trunk. The signals are then decoded and converted to a proper format to feed the radio unit.

Satellite radio providers

Volkswagen offers two satellite radio providers:

- *XM Satellite Radio*
- *Sirius Satellite Radio*

Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for more information about the service each provider offers. ◀

Activate your Satellite Radio Service



Fig. 8 SAT Button



Fig. 9 XM preview mode

The satellite function can be enabled at your authorized Volkswagen dealership. We recommend you see your authorized Volkswagen dealer for complete activation and service details.

When you press the SAT button (⇒ fig. 8 ⑭) for the first time, **PREVIEW** ⇒ fig. 9 will appear in the display and you will hear several instructions you have to follow to enable the satellite function. The provider telephone number will also be displayed. In the illustration above you can see the information displayed for the XM provider.

You will be able to select the preview mode at any time, if subscribed to XM provider, by selecting channel **001** and channel 184 if you are subscribed to Sirius provider.

Depending on the provider several channels may be offered for free when in the preview mode.

In order to have the service enabled at your provider, you need the ID number of the tuner. ◀

ID number



Fig. 10 XM ID number in detailed display



Fig. 11 Sirius ID number in detailed display

▶

To show the ID number in the display

– **Before** enabling, press the SAT button ⇒ page 14, fig. 8 ⑭. The ID number will appear in the display.

– After enabling, turn the SCAN/TUNE button (⇒ page 10, fig. 5 ⑤) until channel **000** is displayed

XM ID number[2)]

This number is an eight character alphanumeric number. First, the message **RADIO ID** will appear in the display, then the eight-character ID number. The display will alternate automatically after a few seconds.

Sirius ID number[3)]

This number is an twelve character alphanumeric number. First **SID** and the first four characters of the ID number will appear in the display, then the remaining eight characters will be displayed. Also the provider telephone number will be displayed. The display will alternate automatically after a few seconds.

Display selection

It is possible to select between a basic SAT display and a more detailed one. If the basic SAT display is selected information (such as song and artist name) will not be displayed. See page ⇒ page 18. ◀

SAT button



Fig. 12 SAT button

Select the satellite mode

– Press the SAT button ⇒ fig. 12 ⑭ to select the satellite mode or to select any of the three memory bands available.

Storing a channel

– In SAT mode, three memory bands with six storage positions are available. Press the SAT button to select each memory band. The selected band is indicated in the display.

– While in the desired channel, hold down the station preset button ⇒ page 10, fig. 5 ④ on which you want to save the station until you hear an audible signal and the radio sound is muted. The channel is now preset on this button. The preset station will appear underscored in the display.

– To recall the channel you just stored, press this button briefly.

XM 1, **XM 2** or **XM 3** will appear in the display to show you the memory band if you are subscribed to XM provider.

SR 1, **SR 2** or **SR 3** will appear in the display to show you the memory band if you are subscribed to Sirius provider.

Tips

When selecting stations, only press the button briefly. If you hold it down for some time, the currently displayed frequency will be stored on this button. ◀

---

2) XM and its corresponding logos are trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.

3) Sirius and related marks are trademarks of Sirius Radio Inc.

Selecting a category



Fig. 13 CAT/FLDR Button

The selection of program categories depends on what your provider offers.

– Press CAT/FLDR button ⇒ fig. 13 (15) to select the desired category (△ select upwards or ▽ select downwards).

Tips

- The channel with the lowest frequency is selected when shifting through categories.
- When selecting categories only the category name will appear in the display. After a few seconds the available channel information will appear in the display. ◀

Selecting channels

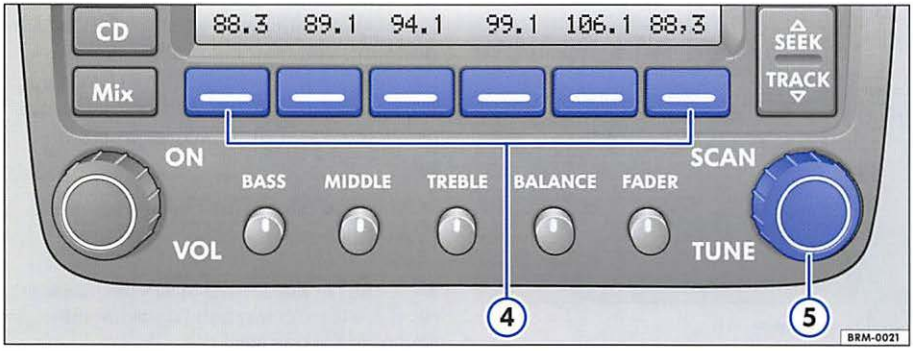


Fig. 14 Preset Buttons and SCAN/TUNE Knob

The channels can be selected with both SCAN/TUNE or SEEK/TRACK buttons.

SCAN/TUNE button

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE button (⇒ fig. 14 (5)) to manually select a channel in all categories.

– Turn clockwise to search upwards *or* turn counterclockwise to search downwards. First the currently selected channel appears in the display. Then the name of the channel will be displayed.

SEEK/TRACK button

– Use the SEEK/TRACK button (⇒ page 3, fig. 2 (6)) to automatically search the next higher or lower channel within a given category.

– △ searches upwards or ▽ searches downwards. Tap on the rocker switch repeatedly to select individual channels. The currently selected channel number appears in the display. Then the name of the channel will be displayed. ▶

Automatic channel selection

– Briefly press the SCAN/TUNE button to start automatic scanning to the next channel within a given category. After about 10 seconds, scanning will resume and go to the next channel. **SCAN** appears in the display and the channel available information will be displayed.

– To stop scanning, press the SCAN/TUNE button briefly during the 10 second "hold" time.

– The scan function stops automatically after one loop of the available channels in the preset memories or in the category if the operation is not manually stopped. If a different category is to be scanned, first select that category manually and then press SCAN/TUNE.

Preset scan

– It is possible for you to select between a scan operation through the entire range of channels within a given category or just those memorized in the station preset buttons. Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You'll hear a signal tone.

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob, until **SELECT SCAN SAT** appears in the display.

– In the lower part of the display the words **CHANNELS** and **PRESETS** will appear. By using the station preset buttons (4) below these words select the type of scan operation you want.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you've just made. You'll hear a signal tone. The preset scan function stops automatically after one loop of the available channels in the preset memories if the operation is not manually stopped.

Tips

- The category name to which each channel belongs will appear in the display.
- When selecting channels only the channel and category names will appear in the display. After a few seconds the available channel information will appear in the display.
- Non selectable channels are automatically passed over when searching channels and are not shown in the display. It depends on your provider whether the channel is covered.
- If the channel found is already saved on a station button, the corresponding channel number will be underscored in the display.
- When category **ALL** is selected the SEEK/TRACK button will search channels in all categories.
- If category**ALL** is selected the next available channel will be selected when using the SEEK/TRACK button, regardless if it belongs to a different category. ◀

SAT display selection

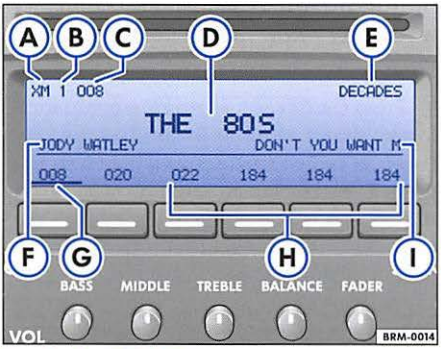


Fig. 15 Detailed SAT display

It is possible to select between a basic SAT display and a more detailed one. If the basic SAT display is selected the available channel information (such as song and artist name) will not be displayed.

– Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button (⇒ page 16, fig. 14 ⑤) for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You'll hear a signal tone.

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob , until **SELECT SAT DISPLAY** appears in the display.

– In the lower part of the display the words **BASIC** and **DETAIL** will appear. By using the station preset buttons ⇒ page 16, fig. 14 ④ select either the basic or detail display.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you have just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Information displayed

Ⓐ Satellite service provider
Ⓑ Memory band
Ⓒ Channel number
Ⓓ Channel name
Ⓔ Category name
Ⓕ Artist name
- The information will be displayed if available and if the detailed display is selected. No text scroll is available.

Ⓖ Selected channel
- If the selected channel is already memorized in one of the preset buttons, it will be underscored.

Ⓗ Channels memorized in the station preset buttons for the selected memory band
Ⓘ Song name
- The information will be displayed if available and if the detailed display is selected. No text scroll is available.

Tips

- The information displayed is variable and depends on the channel selected, the channel category or on the provider.
- If no information is available ___ will appear in the display.
- The accuracy of the information shown is responsibility of the satellite service provider. ◀

System information

The following system messages can be displayed:

XM Messages	
System messages	*Meaning*
ANTENNA	No antenna is connected to the tuner, or there are loose plug contacts on the antenna cable
UPDATING	Your system is being updated
NO SIGNAL	The SAT tuner is presently not receiving any satellite signal
LOADING	Your provider is sending information which the system is currently storing
OFF AIR	The station selected has shut down its program (e.g. children's channel at night)
NO SAT RADIO	No connection can be established to the SAT tuner No SAT tuner exists
Sirius Messages	
ANTENNA	No antenna is connected to the tuner, or there are loose plug contacts on the antenna cable
LINKING	Your system is receiving signal

CD

Taking care of your audio CDs

To assure a sound reproduction of the highest quality, quality, make sure your CDs are clean and free of scratches or any other type of damage.

Cleaning your CDs

For routine cleaning, wipe the playing surface with a clean, soft, lint-free cloth from the center of the disc to the outer edge. If the surface is heavily soiled, dampen a clean soft cloth in a solution of mild neutral commercial detergent before cleaning the disc.

Note

- Never use fluids such as benzene, paint thinner or record cleaners, otherwise you may damage the CD surface! Preventative measures for laser units.
- When inserting a CD into the slot, make sure *the printed side is facing up.* Then, gently insert the CD into the slot until it is pulled in automatically by the player. Never force the CD into the CD slot!
- If you are going to make your own CDs, do not stick an adhesive label on the CD itself. The heat generated by the CD player can loosen the adhesive label, which then coud come off and jam up the unit. This could result in a costly repair. Use a marker to label your CDs instead.
- Always store CDs in their cases when you are not listening to them.
- Keep the CD away from heat or out of direct sunlight.
- Avoid getting fingerprints on the CD.

Tips

Always hold the CD either by the center or by the outer edge with the printed side facing up. ◀

LOAD button

The internal CD changer is operated easily and conveniently using the controls on the radio. It allows you to load up to six CD's.



Fig. 16 CD buttons

Only use standard 12 cm (4.72 inch) CDs. Shape CDs or CDs or 8 cm (3.15 inch) CDs can not be played.

Loading one CD

– Press briefly the LOAD button ⇒ fig. 16 ⑧. **SELECT FREE SLOT** will appear in the display.

– Select the slot by pressing one of the station preset buttons ⇒ page 16, fig. 14 ④. **INSERT CD** will appear in the display once the radio unit is ready to load a CD.

– Insert the CD with the printed side facing up. **LOADING CD** will appear in the display.

Loading two or more CDs

– Press briefly the LOAD button for more than two seconds. **INSERT CD** will appear in the display once the radio unit is ready to load the CDs.

– Insert the CDs one by one when **INSERT CD** appears in the display.

Tips

- Make sure all the CDs are inserted with the printed side facing up.
- If no CD slot is selected after pressing the LOAD button, the radio unit will automatically select the next empty tray.
- If less than six CDs are inserted the unit will begin playing the last CD inserted.
- Once the CD or the last CD is inserted **CHECKING CD** will appear in the display before the unit begins playing the CD.
- If no CD is inserted after pressing the LOAD button or after selecting the slot, the radio unit will return to the previous mode after a few seconds.
- If all the CD slots are full it will not be possible to insert a new CD. **NO FREE SLOT** will appear in the display. ◀

CD button

– Press the CD button (⇒ page 20, fig. 16 ⑨) when you want to listen to the CD player or to select an external CD changer* if available.

Tips

- If no disc is loaded in the internal CD changer you will hear an audible signal, and **NO CD** will appear in the display.
- If no disc is loaded in the internal CD changer but there is a disc loaded in the external CD changer*, the external CD changer mode will be selected.
- If neither a disc is loaded in the internal CD changer nor the external CD changer is available you will hear an audible signal, and **NO CD** will appear in the display. ◀

Mix Mode button

When you select MIX, the CD tracks will be played in random order.

Radios without SRDS: Playing tracks in random order

– Press the MIX button (⇒ page 20, fig. 16 ⑩) for more than 2 seconds. **MIX-CD** appears in the display. Press the MIX button again to stop the random play operation.

Radios with SRDS: Playing tracks in random order

– Press the CD button for more than 2 seconds (⇒ page 20, fig. 16 ⑨). **MIX-CD** appears in the display. Press the CD button again for more than 2 seconds again to stop the random play operation.

Select the type of random play mode

– Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button ⇒ page 16, fig. 14 ⑤ for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You will hear a signal tone.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button briefly, until **SELECT MIX MODE** appears in the display.

– In the lower part of the display the words **FLDR, CD, MAG** will appear. By using the station preset buttons ⇒ page 16, fig. 14 ④ below these words select the type of scan operation you want.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you have just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Type of random play mode

- FLDR ⇒ page 25
- CD -the random play mode occurs only through the tracks of the current disc, **MIX-CD** appears in the display.
- MAG - the random play mode occurs through all the inserted discs in the internal CD changer or in the external CD changer* if available. **MIX-MAG** appears in the display. ◀

EJECT button and CD slot

Insert the CD with the printed side facing up!

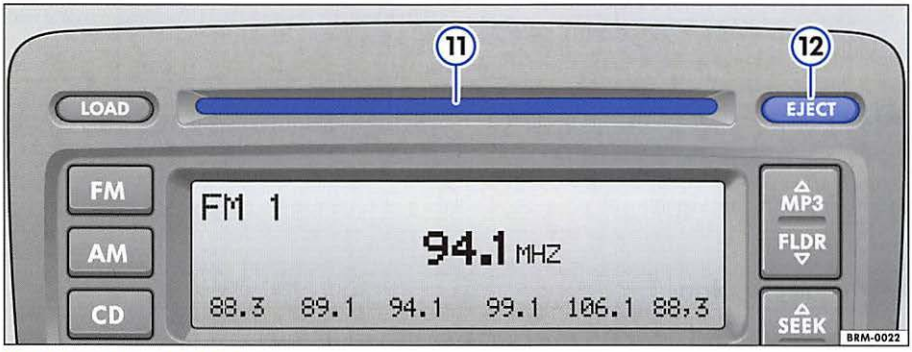


Fig. 17 CD slot and EJECT button

By pressing the EJECT button you will be able to eject one or more CDs out of their tray regardless if the radio unit is ON or OFF.

Ejecting one CD

– Press briefly the EJECT button ⇒ fig. 17 ⑫. **SELECT CD** will appear in the display.

– Select the CD to be ejected by pressing one of the station preset buttons ⇒ page 16, fig. 14 ④. The selected CD will be ejected and **EJECTING CD** will appear in the display.

Ejecting more than one CDs

– Press and hold the EJECT button for more than two seconds. **EJECT ALL, EJECTING** will appear in the display.

– Remove the CD's one after the other. If a CD is not removed from the slot in the next 10 seconds, it will be reinserted automatically to prevent damage and the eject mode will be stopped.

CD slot

Before inserting a CD you must press LOAD button ⇒ page 20.

Tips

If after pressing the EJECT button no CD is selected, the radio unit will return to the previous mode after a few seconds. ◀

Selecting CDs and tracks

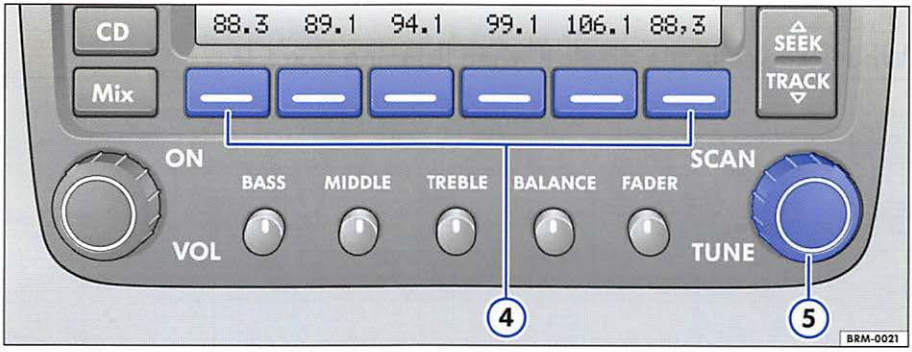


Fig. 18 Selection buttons and SCAN/TUNE button

Selecting an individual CD

– You can select each CD in the internal CD changer and the external CD changer* by briefly pressing the selection buttons ⇒ fig. 18 ④.

Automatic track selection

– Briefly press the SCAN/TUNE button to start automatic scanning to the next track. After 10 seconds, scanning will resume and go to the next track. **SCAN** appears in the display.

– To stop scanning, press the SCAN button briefly during the 10 second "hold" time.

Selecting tracks

– Press briefly the SEEK/TRACK button ⇒ page 3, fig. 2 ⑥ to skip upward (△) or downward (▽) through the tracks *or* turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob. Turning clockwise skip upward and turning counterclockwise scroll downward.

"Scroll" through the same track (Fast Forward/Fast Review)

– Press and hold the SEEK/TRACK button ⇒ page 3, fig. 2 ⑥ to scroll upward (△) or downward (▽) trough the same track. The track elapsed time appears in the upper left corner of the display.

– Release the button to stop scrolling through the track.

Selecting an individual CD

- The currently selected CD will appear in the display - **CD1** . . . **CD6**.
- If there are no CDs neither in the internal CD changer nor in the external CD changer*, you will hear a audible signal and NO CD will appear in the display.
- If an external CD changer ist available, but no CD is inserted you will hear an audible signal an **EXT NO CD** will appear in the display.

Automatic track selection

The scan function stops automatically after one loop of the tracks in the CD if the operation is not manually stopped by pressing SCAN button again.

Selecting tracks

- The currently selected track appears in the display: **TRACK 01** . . . **TRACK 02** . . . **TRACK 03** etc.

• Briefly pressing the ▽ button while a track is playing (more than 2 seconds play) will cause the unit to "jump" back to the beginning of the track and resume playing from there. ◀

What you see in the display when listening to a CD



Fig. 19 Display when listening to a CD

Ⓐ Track elapsed time
Ⓑ CDs inside the internal CD-changer trays or CDs in the external CD changer* trays
Ⓒ Which CD track is currently being played
Ⓓ The CD being reproduced
– The selected CD is indicated by an underscore.
Ⓔ Empty tray ◀

Error displays when using the CD-Player

The following error messages can be displayed:

NO CD

No disc in the CD changer.

PLEASE CHECK CD

There is a problem with the inserted CD. The CD is automatically ejected.

FAIL

The CD is dirty, scratched or inserted upside down. The CD is automatically ejected. If the problem persists after reloading the CD the next CD available will be reproduced and error message **FAIL** will appear in the corresponding CD slot in the display.

ROM

A CD ROM has been inserted into the internal or external CD-Changer. The CD is ejected.

HARDWARE ERROR

The CD changer mechanism is malfunctioning.

NO EXTERNAL CD

No disc in the external CD changer is available.

Tips

If the unit still malfunctions, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

MP3

MP3 player operation

The internal CD-Changer also allows you to play CD-Rs containing MP3 data. However, the reflectivity rate must be 60 % or higher.

Different kinds of information (e.g. name of the song and artist) may appear in the display during MP3 player operation

Only use standard 12 cm (4.72 inch) CDs. The shaped CDs or 8 cm (3.15 inch) CDs can not be played.

Tips

- The unit can only play either discs containing audio or MP3 data. If a CD containing both audio and MP3 data is inserted, an error message will appear in the display and the CD will be automatically ejected..
- The external CD changer* can not play discs containing MP3 files. ◀

Folder and play list search Buttons △ / ▽

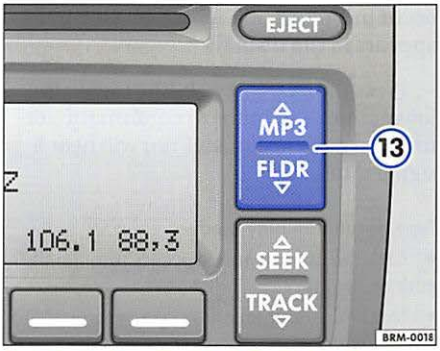


Fig. 20 Radios without Satellite Digital Radio Service



Fig. 21 Radios with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Radios without SDRS: MP3/FLDR button

– Press MP3/FLDR button ⇒ fig. 20 (13) to select the desired folder or play list (△ to scroll upward or ▽ to scroll downward through the folders or play lists).

Radios with SDRS: CAT/FLDR button

– Press CAT/FLDR button ⇒ fig. 21 (13) to select the desired folder or play list (△ to scroll upward or ▽ to scroll downward through the folders or play lists).

Tips

If only tracks are available in the CD with MP3 data (no folders or play lists), this button will have no function. ◀

Mix Mode button

The MIX mode causes the tracks in the disc to be played in random order.



Fig. 22 CD buttons

Radios without SRDS: Playing tracks in random order

– Press the MIX button ⇒ fig. 22 ⑩. **MIX CD** appears in the display. Press the MIX button again to stop the random play operation.

Radios with SRDS: Playing tracks in random order

– Press the CD button ⑥. **MIX CD** appears in the display. Press the CD button again to stop the random play operation.

Select the type of random play mode

– Press the CD button ⑨ for more than 2 seconds, **MIX CD** appears in the display. Press the CD button again for more than 2 seconds to stop the random play operation.

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob, until **SELECT MIX MODE** appears in the display.

– Turn the lower part of the display the words **FLDR**, **CD**, **MAG** will appear. By using the station preset buttons ⇒ page 23, fig. 18 ④ below these words select **FLDR**. The random play mode will now occur in a particular folder. **MIX-FOLDER** appears in the display.

– Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you have just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Type of random play mode

- CD - the random mode occurs through the entire CD
- MAG - the random mode occurs through different folders of the same CD.
- FLDR - the random mode occurs through the current folder or play list. ◀

Track selecting

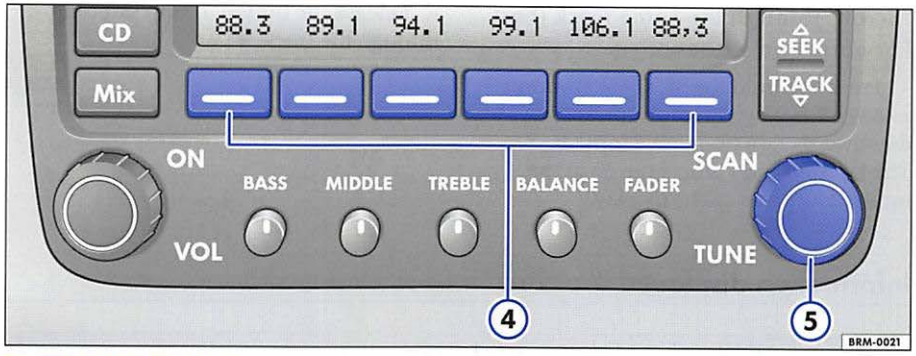


Fig. 23 SCAN/TUNE button

Automatic track selection

– Briefly press the SCAN/TUNE button ⇒ fig. 23 (5) to start automatic scanning to the next track within the current folder or play list. After 10 seconds, scanning will resume and go to the next track. **SCAN** appears in the display and the file information available will be scrolled in the display.

– To stop scanning, press the SCAN/TUNE button briefly during the 10 second "hold" time.

Selecting tracks

– You can "skip" through the tracks within a given folder. Press briefly the SEEK/TRACK ⇒ page 3, fig. 2 (6) button (△ to skip upward or ▽ to scroll downward *or*

– Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob . Turning clockwise scroll upwards and turning counterclockwise scroll downwards. The currently selected track appears in the display: **TITLE 001** . . . **TITLE 002** . . . **TITLE 003** etc.

Tips

- Briefly pressing the ▽ button while a track is playing (more than 2 seconds play) will cause the unit to "jump" back to the beginning of the track and resume playing from there.
- When the last file in the folder has been reached and the △ button is pressed or the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob is turned clockwise, the unit will "jump" to the first file in the same folder.
- When the first file in the folder has been reached and the ▽ button is pressed twice or the SCAN/TUNE button is turned counterclockwise, the unit will "jump" to the last file in the same folder.
- When the SEEK/TRACK button is pressed or the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob is turned the file available file information will be scrolled if the text scroll is enabled. Once the scroll action has been completed the first 32 characters of the file information will remain in the display. ◀

Track search Buttons

"Scroll" through the same track (Fast Forward/Fast Review)

– Press and hold the SEEK/TRACK button ⇒ page 3, fig. 2 ⑥ to scroll upwards (△) or downwards (▽) trough the same track. The track elapsed time appears in the upper left corner of the display.

– Release the button to stop skipping through the track. ◀

Information displayed

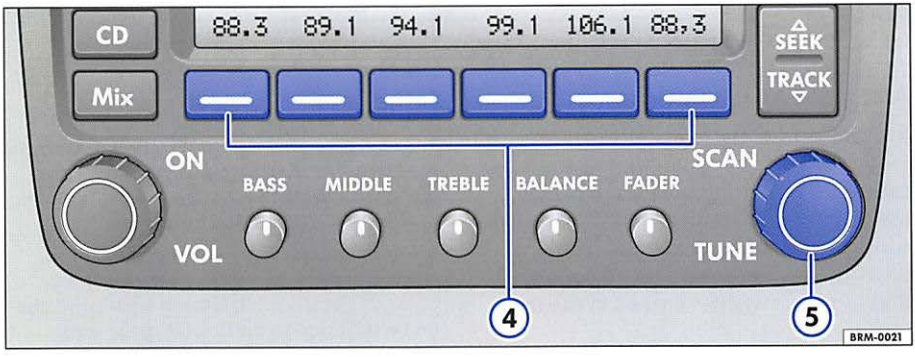


Fig. 24 SCAN/TUNE button

MP3 display selection

It is possible to select between a basic MP3 display and a more detailed one. If the basic MP3 display is selected the file information (such as song and artist name) will not be displayed.

- Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button ⇒ fig. 24 ⑤ for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You will hear a signal tone.
- Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob, until **SELECT MP3 DISPLAY** appears in the display.
- In the lower part of the display the words **BASIC** and **DETAIL** will appear. By using the station preset buttons ④ select either the basic or detail display.
- Press the **SCAN/TUNE** button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you've just made. You will hear a signal tone.

Text scroll selection

You can decide whether the available information in the MP3 file is scrolled or not in the display.

- Press and hold down the SCAN/TUNE button for longer than 2 seconds to enter the set up mode. You will hear a signal tone.
- Turn the SCAN/TUNE rotary knob, until **SCROLLING TEXT** appears in the display.
- In the lower part of the display the words **ON** and **OFF** will appear. **OFF** is the default value. By using the station preset buttons ④ select either **ON** or **OFF**.
- Press the SCAN/TUNE button again for longer than 2 seconds to confirm the setting you've just made. You'll hear a signal tone.
- If you decide to scroll the file information the following warning will appear in the display: **CAUTION! THIS MAY CAUSE DRIVER DISTRACTION.** ▶

- By using the station preset buttons ④ select either **ACCEPT** to scroll the file information or **DECLINE** not to scroll the available file information.

File information

The file information which is available, will be scrolled or will appear in the display if the detail display has been selected. The type of information displayed depends on the following:

- If ID3 tag data is available in an MP3 file this unit can display the title (track title) and artist name. If no ID3 tag is available, the name of the folder and the name of the file will appear in the display.
- The folder and file names can be displayed like titles. Capital letters and/or numerals and "_" (underscores) are scrolled.
- A maximum of 32 characters can be displayed.
- Folder and file names using other symbols will not be displayed properly. ◀

What you see in the display when listening to a MP3 CD



Fig. 25 Detailed display when listening to a MP3 CD

Ⓐ Track elapsed time
Ⓑ Which CD title is currently being played
Ⓒ Which folder or play list is selected
- Display: **FOLDER 01**. . . **FOLDER 02** . . . **FOLDER 03** . . .etc.
- Display: **PLAYLIST 01**. . . **PLAYLIST 02** . . . **PLAYLIST 03** . . .etc.

Ⓓ CDs inside the internal CD-changer trays
Ⓔ The CD being reproduced
Ⓕ Empty tray
Ⓖ The available file information
- Only when the detailed MP3 display is selected.

Tips

If there are some tracks in the root directory **FOLDER 00** will appear in the display while the tracks are being played. ◀

Error displays when playing MP3 music with the CD player

The following error messages can be displayed:

NO CD

No disc in the CD changer.

PLEASE CHECK CD

There is a problem with the inserted CD. The CD is automatically ejected.

ROM

A CD ROM has been inserted into the changer. The CD is automatically ejected.

FAIL

The CD is dirty, scratched or inserted upside down. The CD is automatically ejected. If the problem persists after reloading the CD the next CD available will be reproduced and error message **FAIL** will appear in the corresponding CD slot in the display.

HARDWARE ERROR

The CD changer mechanism is malfunctioning.

Tips

If the unit still malfunctions, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance. ◀

About MP3

Except for personal enjoyment, duplicating data or distributing, transferring or copying it, whether for free or for a fee, without the permission of the copyright holder is strictly prohibited by the Copyright Act and by international treaty.

What is MP3

MP3 (MPEG audio layer 3) is a compression standard prescribed by the ISO and MEG.

MP3 files contain compressed audio data. MP3 encoding is capable of compressing the audio data at extremely high ratios, shrinking music files by as much as one-tenth their original size. The MP3 format realizes such high compression ratios by eliminating the sounds that are either inaudible to the human ear or masked by other sounds.

How to create MP3 files

The software used to create MP3 files is widely sold from various sources. For details on creating MP3 files, refer to the owner's manual for that software.

The MP3 files that can be played by this device have the file extension "MP3". Files with no extension can not be played back.

Corresponding File Systems

This unit supports discs formatted with ISO 9660. It also can play back discs in Joliet standard which conforms to ISO 9660. However, sometimes the file names, folder names, etc. are not displayed correctly.

Please take into account the following points:

- When creating a CD the burner software must be set up to burn a Mode 1 CD ROM type disc. Mode 2 CD ROM XA can not be played back.
- Multi-session discs can not be played back by this unit.
- Remember that the audio quality depends on the "sampling rate" used to create the MP3 file.
- Make sure the created disc is finalized. Your CD burner software has an option to finalize the disc.
- When naming your MP3 files, use short file names (no more than 64 characters).
- We recommend that you use only one word to name the folders (i.e. Folder_A) and that you do not repeat the same folder name throughout the CD. This could cause the radio unit not to recognize the file path.
- When creating an MP3 disc, use no more than 99 folders. Although this unit can support up to 255 folders, finding the files you want to play will be more difficult if you have used many folders. ▶

- A maximum number of 998 files (plus 1 file containing the data track) can be handled by the changer. If the sum is higher than 998 files, then playlist files are skipped. If playlist have to be skipped, then the playlist files with the oldest timestamp will be skipped.
- When creating play list files, use a program that automatically creates a play list with "*.m3u" extension. This unit will not play play lists with another extensions or that contain path information in Unicode.
- A maximum of 15 play lists can be supported.
- Using the drag-and-drop method provided by WINDOWS XP to move MP3 files to a CD for burning does not allow the user to set the appropriate Mode or ID3 tag versions to be compatible with this changer. Discs created using this method may not play in this unit.

ID3 tags

This unit supports 1D3 tag v1.

If ID3 tag data is in an MP3 file this unit can display the title (track title) and artist name.

If an MP3 file contains both an ID3 tag v1 and an ID3 tag v2 only the information contained in the ID3 tag v1 will be displayed. ◀

Order of tracks

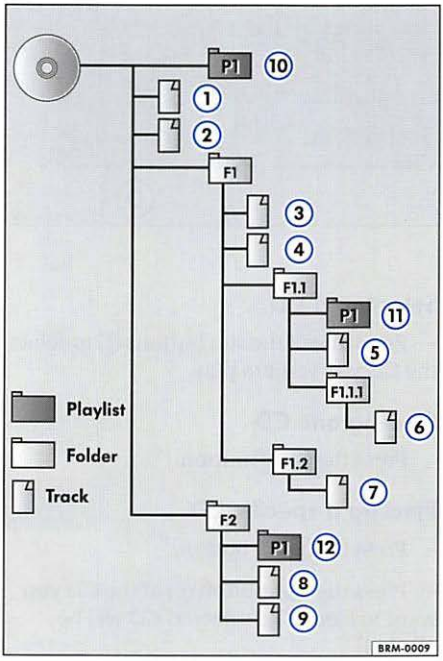


Fig. 26 Typical CD Structure

The unit plays the files inside a CD in a particular order. The illustration ⇒ fig. 26 is an example of a typical CD containing files, play lists folders and suborders.

- Playing will start with the first file under the root directory. In the example there are two files in the root (see numbers 1 and 2).
- Once the files in the root have been played, the unit will access the folders in the root in the order they appear. In the example there are two main folders in the root: F1 and F2. F1 appears first in the root, therefore the two files inside will be played immediately after the existing files under the root directory (see numbers 3 and 4 inside F1).
- Once the files in the first folder have been played, the unit will access all the suborders inside the main folder in the order they appear. In the example there are two suborders inside F1 (F1.1 and F1.2) and one suborder inside F1.1 (F1.1.1) The radio unit will first play all the tracks inside suborder F1.1 (see numbers 5), then it will access suborder F1.1.1 and it will play all files inside (see number 6). Once all the files inside suborder F1.1.1 have been played, the unit will access suborder F1.2 and it will play the files inside (see number 7). If there were some suborders inside F1.2 they will be accessed as described above.
- Once all files inside the folder (and its subfolders) which appears first in the root are played, the next folder will be accessed and the files inside will be reproduced in the previously described order. See numbers 8 and 9 inside F2 in the example.
- All play lists in the disc shall be accessed after the files in the root, folders and suborders. They ▶

will be played in the order they appear. In the example there are three play lists (see numbers 10, 11 and 12).

- The number of each folder and subfolder will appear in the display as they are accessed.
- For root directory or folders or play lists without any files in them, the radio unit shall ignore the folder or play list and automatically advance to the next folder in the hierarchy. ◀

CD changer

Applies to vehicles: with external CD changer

External CD changer in the front armrest

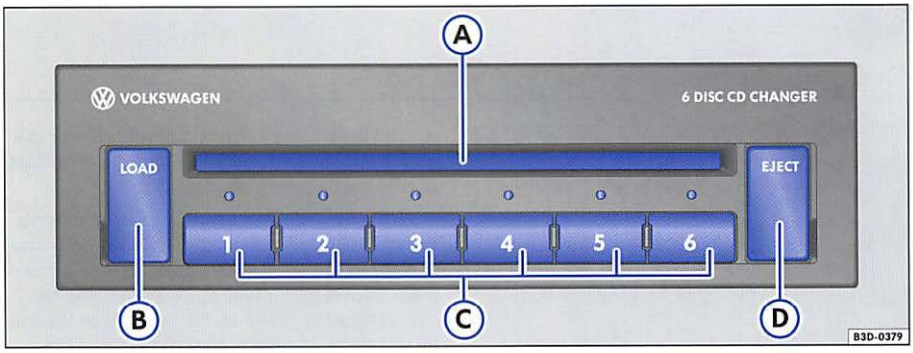


Fig. 27 External CD changer

It is possible to load up to six CDs in the external CD changer located in the front armrest.

Loading one CD

– Press the LOAD button ⇒ fig. 27 (B).

– Press one of the slot buttons (C) to select the slot. The LED above the selected button will blink slowly.

– Insert the CD into the slot (A) until the LED starts to blink quickly.

Loading two or more CD

– Press and hold the LOAD button for more than two seconds. The empty slots will be automatically prepared and can be loaded one after the other.

Selecting a CD

– Press one of the slot buttons (C) to select the CD you want to play.

Ejecting one CD

– Press the EJECT button.

Ejecting a specific CD

– Press the EJECT button.

– Press the slot button (C) of the CD you want to eject. The selected CD will be ejected.

Ejecting all the CDs

– Press and hold the EJECT button for more than two seconds. All the loaded CDs will be ejected, ▶

Tips

- When the external CD changer is selected **EXT** will appear in the radio display.
- The LEDs above the slot buttons 1 to 6 will stay on to indicate that there is a CD inside the slot.
- It is possible to reproduce CD-R and CD-RW. However the reproduction depends on the material quality of the CD.
- Always insert the CD with the printed side facing up.
- Make sure the CDs are properly installed in the CD changer. Also, make sure the CDs are removed from the slot before you close the armrest, otherwise you could damage the CDs.
- Only use standard 12 cm (4.72 inch) CDs. The shaped CDs or 8 cm (3.15 inch) CDs can not be played.
- If no CD slot is selected after pressing the LOAD button, the radio unit will automatically select the next empty tray.
- If the ejected CD is not removed from the slot in the next 15 seconds, it will be pulled back automatically into the CD slot to prevent damage and the eject mode will be stopped. ◀

Tips for operating your internal CD-Changer and external CD-Changer

To assure a sound reproduction of the highest quality, use only CDs which are clean and free of scratches or any other type of damage.

Do not use transparent CD-Ware available in the market. Use of these CDs will cause the changer to improperly load.

If you are going to make your own CDs, do not stick an adhesive label on the CD itself. The heat generated by the CD player can loosen the adhesive label, which then coud come off and and jam up the unit. This could result in a costly repair. Use a marker to label your CDs instead.

Always store CDs in their cases when you are not listening to them.

Never leave CDs in direct sunshine. ◀

Preventive measures for laser units.

Laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 - 4.

Your VOLKSWAGEN CD changer conforms to safety class 1.

The laser used in class 1 is so low and so well shielded, that no danger exists with proper usage.

Note

Never remove the cover from the unit. The unit does not contain any parts that can be serviced by the user. ◀

Anti-Theft Coding

Convenience radio coding

For technical reasons, the convenience radio coding is not available for all vehicle models.

In the past, it used to be that you had to manually recode the radio whenever the unit was removed from the vehicle (for example, if the unit was removed to be repaired), or whenever the vehicle battery was disconnected (for example, if you brought your vehicle in to the dealership for service and it was necessary to disconnect the battery). In either case, the power supply to the unit was cut off.

That has all changed with the new convenience radio coding function: Once the code number has been input in the radio, it will then synchronise itself with "its" vehicle!

If the current supply has been interrupted the radio will automatically check to see if it is still in "its" vehicle after the ignition has been switched on. If this happens, the radio will be ready for use after just a few seconds.

It is therefore no longer necessary to disengage the electronic lock manually!

If the radio has been fitted to another vehicle, however, the electronic lock will have to be disengaged manually.

Tips

- This code number, together with the unit's serial number, can be found on the "Radio Card".
- It is very important that you keep this "Radio Card" in a safe place - never keep it in the vehicle. Only then is the radio useless to thieves! ◀

Canceling the Electronic Lock

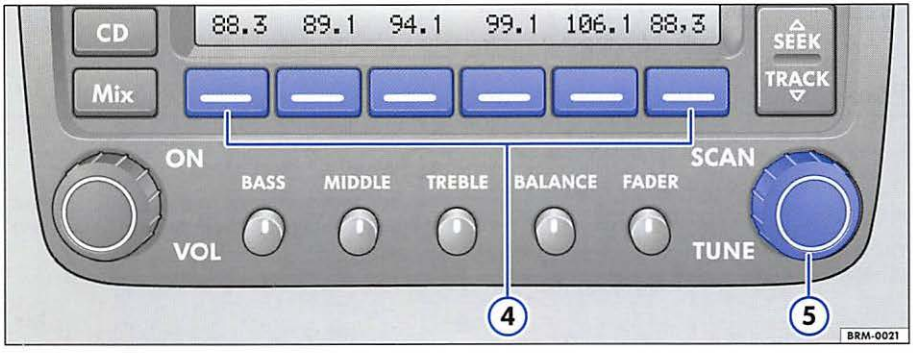


Fig. 28 Preset buttons

Perform the steps in exactly the following order:

– Turn on the radio. **SAFE** will appear in the display. After a few seconds, the number **1000** will appear in the display. ▶

– Use the radio station preset buttons 1 to 4 ⇒ page 34, fig. 28 ④ to enter the code number found on your Radio Card. Use preset button 1 to enter the first digit in the code number. Use button 2 to enter the second digit, etc. The value range for each of the 4 digits is **0** ... **9**. The digit will increase by 1 each time you tap the preset button. The number returns to **0** after **9**.

– After you finish entering the code, press the station preset button below the word **OK** in the display. It usually is the last station preset button. You will hear an audible signal.

– If you have entered the code number correctly, a radio frequency will appear in the display.

Wrong Code Number

If you have accidentally entered a wrong code number, **SAFE** will appear in the display and then the number **1000** will appear.

You can repeat the procedure again **one time**. The number of attempts will appear in the display. If you accidentally enter a wrong code number a second time **SAFE** will appear in the display.

If the wrong code number is entered again, the unit will be disabled for about 1 hour. **Leave the unit ON for this hour.** After the hour has elapsed, the number of attempts will stop being displayed and you can cancel the electronic lock once again.

Remember, the cycle is...

- 2 attempts
- one hour locked.

Tips

If you loose your Radio Card, contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer. ◀

Warranty and Technical description

Warranty, Replacement, Antenna Care

Warranty

The same warranty terms and conditions apply to the vehicle sound system as to the new vehicle itself.

Replacement

After the warranty has expired, a unit that needs to be repaired will be replaced at a reasonable price with a fully reconditioned unit. This unit will be comparable to a new unit and will be covered by a replacement parts warranty. This replacement service will not be available, however, it the unit housing is damaged or if unauthorized persons have attempted to make repairs.

Antenna Care

The antenna is designed to achieve optimal performance with the radio and is located at a position where reception is good and susceptibility to interference is low.

Vehicles equipped with antennas embedded in the windshield or backlights offer the further advantages of being completely protected from damage and wear.

No antenna care is required for vehicles equipped with roof mounted antennas. ◀

Technical description

Anti-theft protection

The unit is electronically locked whenever the power source is interrupted. It can only be returned to working condition by entering the correct code number.

Frequency ranges

FM and AM.

Band selection

Momentary-contact buttons

Displays

Frequency, band, bass, balance, treble, middle frequencies, preset button, CD functions, SDRS functions.

Illumination

The controls and display are illuminated glare-free from the interior (night driving design) - maximum brightness when driving lights are off. When the driving lights are on, the intensity is controlled together with the instrument panel intensity.

Station selection

In the radio mode, the unit automatically plays the last station selected when the unit was turned off (last station memory).

Soft Clipping*

If the volume is set to maximum, you may notice that the radio output will become distorted. The Soft Clipping function detects this distortion and will automatically adjust the volume to provide the most distortion free output.

Radio

Automatic and manual tuning. Six station preset buttons each for FM1, FM2, FM AUTO. AM1, AM AUTO, SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. Manual tuning is possible in both directions. Microprocesor-controlled stabilization of station frequencies (PLL quartz tuning).

External CD changer*

Remote controlled via radio sound system unit. Changer magazine for 6 CDs with motor-driven ejection, 6 CD selection buttons. Mix mode, automatic track scan / seek.

Sound reproduction

Stereo (radio, satellite radio, CD), adjustable treble control, bass control, middle frequencies, fader control and balance control integrated in the radio, multiple speaker system.

Max. power output

4 x 20 Watt (maximum).

Options

External CD changer. Additional information on these options is available from authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers.

Interference suppression

The automatic interference suppression circuitry integrated in the unit eliminates most outside interference in the FM band.

Specially tuned interference suppressors eliminate nearly all interference pulses from the engine and other parts of the electrical system such as the heater blower, windshield wipers and radiator fan. ◀

Alphabetical index

A

About MP3 30
Activate your Satellite Radio Service 14
Adjusting
  Speed volume control 8
AM presets 9
Antenna Care 35
Anti-Theft coding 5, 34
Anti-Theft protection 36
AS (Autostore) 9
Audio CD 19
Automatic seek 11
Automatic tuning 11
Autostore 9

B

Balance control 13
Band setting 9
Bands received 36
Bass control 12
Broadcasting mode 7
Button
  CD 21
  CD Eject 22
  Mix Mode 21, 26
  SEEK 23, 28
  Track selection (when playing a CD) 23

C

CAT Button 25
CD 19
  Taking care 19
CD care 19
CD changer 5
CD player
  Automatic scan to the next track (SCAN) 17, 23, 27
  Automatic track scanning 17, 23, 27
  CD button 21
  Display 24, 29
  Ejecting a CD 22
  Fast forward to next track 23
  Fast reverse to previous track 23
  How to select an individual CD in the magazine 23
  Loading CDs 20, 22
  Malfunction display 24
  Random Play 21, 26
  SCAN (automatic track selection) 17, 23, 27
  Selecting a CD 23
  Selecting a CD track 23
  Skipping backward to the previous CD track 23
  Skipping forward to the next CD track 23
  Tips when using 33
  Track selection button 23
  What does it mean when CD ERR appears in the display? 24
  What does it mean when HARDWARE ERROR appears in the display? 24
  What does it mean when NO DISC appears in the display? 21, 24
  What does it mean when NO EXTERNAL CD appears in the display? 24
  What does it mean when ROM appears in the display? 24
  What is the correct way to insert a CD into the slot? 20, 22
Coding 34
Controlled seek 11
Controls 2

D

Digital displays 12, 24, 29
Displays 12, 24, 29, 36

E

Electronic lock 34

External CD changer 32

F

Fader control 13
FLDR button 25
FM presets 9

I

ID number 15
Ignition lock 7
Illumination 36
Important information 5
Interference suppression 36

K

Key 7

L

LOAD button 20

M

Manual Radio Station search 11
Maximum power output 36
Middle control 12
MIX
What does it mean when MIX appears in the display when I am playing a CD? 21
What does it mean with MIX CD appears in the display when I am playing a CD? 26
Mix mode 21, 26
MP3 25
MP3 player operation 25

N

NO DISC 21, 24
NO MAGAZINE 21

O

ON / OFF 7

P

Preset buttons 10
Preset scan 11

Q

Quick overview 2

R

Radio 7
Radio Card
Where should I keep my Radio Card? 5
Radio code number 5
Replacement 35
Roof mounted antennas 35

S

SAFE - What does it mean when "SAFE" appears in the display? 5
SAT button 15
Satellite Digital Radio Service 13
Satellite Radio Digital Service
How the system works? 13
Satellite radio providers 13
SCAN function 11
SCAN/TUNE button 11
SEEK/TRACK Button 11
Selecting a category 16
Selecting a channel 16
Selecting folders 25
Selecting tracks 27
Service 35
Sirius ID Number 15
Skip through the files in the same folder 27
Skip through the same track 23, 28
Sound setting 12
Speed Volume Control (SVC)
SVC (Speed Volume Control) 8
Station buttons 10
Station selection 36
Storing a channel 15
System information 19
Sirius messages 19
XM messages 19

T

Technical description 36
CD changer 36
Radio 36
Sound reproduction 36
Tone control 12
Track search Buttons 28
Treble control 13
Turn-On Volume Level 8

V

Volume 8
Volume Control 8

W

Warranty 35

X

XM ID Number 15

Afterword

Volkswagen de México works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen de México .

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen de México. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in México

© Volkswagen de México

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.



3.4 Premium Sound System | Jetta | Art.-Nr.: 252.556.PR7.21
Print status: 08.2004 | Ausgabe: englisch Nordamerika 09.2004